

---

# University of Pretoria Yearbook 2020

---

## Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

### Welcome to the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

The hopes of South Africa rests, to a very large extent, on developments in Science, Engineering and Technology. The Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences aims to provide leadership in the fields of basic natural sciences and mathematics. It has substantial records of research achievement. High quality of undergraduate and postgraduate education is offered and involvement in a variety of community projects contribute to excellence provided by the Faculty.

### Faculty regulations and information

*The rules for the degrees published here are subject to change and may be amended after the publication of this information.*

*The General Regulations (referred to as G.1-G.56) and General Rules apply to all faculties of the University of Pretoria. It is expected of all students to familiarise themselves well with these regulations and rules as well as all faculty-specific and programme-specific regulations and information as stipulated in the online yearbook. Ignorance concerning these regulations will not be accepted as an excuse for any transgression.*

#### 1. Examinations

**Also consult General Regulations and Rules.**

##### 1.1 Examination admission and pass requirements

- a. A final mark of at least 50% is required to pass the module.
- b. Mainstream modules: A minimum semester mark of 30% is required to be admitted to the examination in a first-year, first-semester module on 100-level and a minimum semester/year mark of 40% is required for admission to the examination in all other modules.
- c. Extended BSc (Four-year programme) modules: All students in the first two semesters of the extended BSc (Four-year programme) are allowed to write the examination in that module. In the third-semester modules a minimum semester mark of 30% is required for admission to the examination.
- d. Class attendance is compulsory for all students in all modules for the full duration of all programmes. A student may be refused admission to the examination or promotion to a subsequent year of study if he/she fails to comply with the attendance requirements.
- e. In certain modules, eg those with practical components, a department may stipulate additional requirements for students to be admitted to the examination. These requirements must be published in the study guide of the module. A student may be refused admission to the examination in a module by the head of the relevant department should the student not comply with these requirements.
- f. In exceptional cases, where it is deemed appropriate, the Dean of the Faculty may excuse a student from attending all or a part of the activities in a module.

Please note: The requirements for admission to the examination is published in the study guide and the relevant department is required to inform students of the specific requirements at the beginning of each module.

##### 1.2 Subminima in examinations

A subminimum of 40% is required in the examination in each module. The year or semester mark of a module is

obtained through continuous assessment of a student's performance during the module. A student must satisfactorily complete the practical component of the module (if applicable). The method by which the year/semester mark will be obtained, is published in the study guide of the module.

### **1.3 Examinations**

The examinations for first-semester modules and the first- and second-quarter modules take place in May/June, while all other examinations (second-semester modules, third- and fourth-quarter modules and year modules) take place in October/November.

The final mark for the module is a combination of the year or semester mark and the examination mark, with the proviso that a module can only be passed if a subminimum of 40% is obtained in the examination and the practical component (if applicable) of the module has been satisfactorily completed. A final mark of at least 50% is required to pass a module. The year or semester mark must fall within a range of 40%-60% and the examination mark must fall within a range of 40%-60% of the final mark. Deviations from this rule can be approved by the Dean. The formula that is used to determine the final mark will be specified in the study guide of the module.

### **1.4 Ancillary examinations**

After completion of an examination and before the examination results are published, the examiners may decide to summon a student for an ancillary examination on particular aspects of the work in that module with a view to determining:

- whether a candidate who does not comply with the requirements to pass a module could achieve a final pass mark; or
- whether a candidate, who does not comply with the requirements for a pass with distinction, will be able to improve his or her final mark.

It is, therefore, possible that, depending on the importance a lecturer attaches to continuous evaluation, no supplementary examinations may be awarded in a certain module.

If ancillary examinations are awarded in a module, the guidelines indicating the basis for such consideration, have to be published in the study guide of the module.

### **1.5 Re-marking of examination papers (also consult the G. Regulations)**

After an examination, departments give feedback to students about the framework that was used by the examiners during the examination. The way in which feedback is given, is determined by the departmental heads. Students may apply for re-marking of an examination paper after perusal and within 14 calendar days after commencement of lectures in the next semester. The prescribed fee has to be paid. The paper will then be re-marked by an examiner appointed by the head of the department.

### **1.6 Supplementary examinations**

- a. Supplementary examinations in first-semester modules take place after the May/June examinations, while those in second-semester and year modules take place after the October/November examinations.
- b. To pass a supplementary examination, a student must obtain a minimum of 50%.
- c. The highest final percentage a student can obtain in a supplementary examination is 50%.
- d. Special supplementary examinations are not arranged for students who are unable to write the examinations at the times and venues scheduled for supplementary examinations. (Also consult the G. Regulations.)

## **2. Special examinations in the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences**

A student who requires a maximum of two modules and not more than 36 credits outstanding to comply with all the requirements for the degree, may be admitted by the Dean, on the recommendation of the head of department, to special examinations in modules failed, provided that this will enable him or her to comply with all the degree requirements. A student who has obtained a final mark of less than 40% in any one of the relevant

modules, or who has previously been admitted to a special examination, does not qualify for this concession.

### **3. Academic promotion requirements**

#### **General**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee: Admissions.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee: Admissions is final.

### **4. Recognition of excellence**

#### **Criteria for eligibility**

To qualify for the awards the following criteria must be met:

#### **(a) Dean's Merit List**

The student will be considered if she/he has passed all first-time registered modules as prescribed for a programme at each year level of study for that year (minimum 140 credits per year/88 credits for the first year of the BSc(Four-year Programme)) with a weighted average of 75%.

#### **(b) Other achievers**

The student will be considered if she/he has passed all first time registered modules as prescribed for a programme for that year (minimum 140 credits per year/88 credits for the first year of the BSc(Four-year Programme)) with a weighted average of 65%.

### **5. Requirements for specific modules**

A candidate who:

- a. passed the Grade 12 examination in Mathematics as well as in Physical Science with at least 60%, will be admitted to Molecular and Cell Biology and a module in the subjects Zoology and Entomology, Genetics, Microbiology or Plant Science;
- b. who does not qualify for STK 110, must enrol for STK 113 and STK 123;
- c. registers for Mathematical Statistics (WST) and Statistics (STK) modules must take note that WST and STK modules, except for STK 281, may not be taken simultaneously in a programme; and
- d. registers for a module presented by another faculty must take note of the prerequisites for that module, subminimum required in examination papers, supplementary examinations, etc.

Please note:

'in the Grade 12 examination' refers to the final National Senior Certificate examination.

### **6. Academic information management (AIM 101/AIM 102 or AIM 111 and AIM 121)**

It is compulsory for all new first-year students to take Academic information management modules. Please see curricula for details.

### **Faculty guidelines for consideration of BTech and/or MTech students to postgraduate study**

Candidates who hold BTech and/or MTech degrees are required to fulfil the following conditions:

## 1. Honours level

The candidate must have a BTech degree with a minimum of 60% in the broad area of specialisation that the candidate wishes to pursue for an honours programme. The student will be given conditional acceptance to an honours programme, but in order to align the student's undergraduate training with the outcomes expected of a BSc graduate, the student will be expected to undertake additional coursework at NQF level 7. The head of department concerned will be required to identify specific modules. The programme of study must be recommended by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, Faculty Board and for approval by the Subcommittee of the Senate. Confirmation of candidature will be based on the successful completion of the additional module requirements during the first year of the honours programme.

### 1.1 Procedure

The candidate must submit an official application form, together with a motivation, matriculation certificate, academic record and a short CV. The CV should include details of relevant work experience and, where applicable, any publications. The head of department has to identify and prescribe modules as set out in 1 above. The application is submitted via the Faculty Postgraduate Studies Committee and the Faculty Board, to the Subcommittee of the Senate for approval.

Refer to the General Regulations.

## 2. Master's level

The candidate must have a BTech degree with a minimum of 60% in the broad area of specialisation that he/she wishes to pursue for a master's programme. The student will be given conditional acceptance to a master's programme, but in order to align the student's undergraduate training with the outcomes expected of a BScHons graduate, the student will be expected to undertake additional coursework at NQF levels 7 and 8. Additional coursework will be prescribed by the head of department concerned. A minimum of 70 credits at NQF level 8 will be required. The programme of study must be recommended by the Faculty Postgraduate Studies Committee, Faculty Board and for approval by the Subcommittee of the Senate. Confirmation of candidature will be based on the successful completion of the additional module requirements during the first year of the master's programme.

### 2.1 Procedure

The candidate must submit an official application form, together with a motivation, matriculation certificate, academic record and a short CV. The CV should include details of relevant work experience and, where applicable, any publications. The head of department has to identify and prescribe modules as set out in 1 above. The application is submitted via the Faculty Postgraduate Studies Committee and the Faculty Board, to the Subcommittee of the Senate for approval.

Refer to the General Regulations.

## 3. Doctoral level

The candidate must have an MTech degree and have obtained at least 60% for the MTech dissertation. Since the PhD is clearly more demanding of a wider (philosophical) scientific background, the selection of candidates for the PhD degree must be stringent, and could include outside evaluation of the dissertation work by nominees selected by the head of department and recommended by the Faculty Postgraduate Studies Committee, evidence of peer-reviewed publication, appropriate work-related experience (ie in a research environment) and, where necessary, formal coursework to address shortcomings in the academic background.

### 3.1 Procedure

The candidate must submit an official application form, together with a motivation, academic record, a copy of the MTech dissertation and a short CV. The CV should include details of appropriate work experience and list of any publications. The head of department will submit a motivation to support the application. The application is

submitted, via the Faculty Postgraduate Studies Committee and the Faculty Board, to the Subcommittee of the Senate for approval.

Refer to the General Regulations.

### **Senate of the University of Pretoria guidelines for Senate discretionary admissions**

#### **G.54 POLICY ON POSTGRADUATE STUDENT CASES AND THE RECOGNITION OF PRIOR LEARNING**

As the University has a finite capacity in most undergraduate fields (its limits have already been reached or those admitted are selected from a large number of applicants), the University's policy on the recognition of prior learning only applies to student cases at postgraduate level (including postgraduate diplomas).

Furthermore, as the University's strategic objective is to be an internationally recognised research university, admission to postgraduate study by means of the recognition of a prior learning pathway is the exception rather than the rule.

Senate may –

- a. grant a graduate of another higher education institution (either in the Republic or elsewhere) a status at the University that is equivalent to the status the student had at such other higher education institution.
- b. admit a person, who
  - i. has passed examinations at another university or institution (either in the Republic or elsewhere) which Senate deems equivalent to, or higher than the examinations prescribed for a degree at the University, which are set as a prerequisite for admission to a particular postgraduate study programme, or for the admission of such a person as a research student; or
  - ii. in another manner has reached a standard of competence Senate considers adequate for the purposes of postgraduate study or research at the University, as a student for a postgraduate degree, diploma or certificate.

The regulation provides two alternative routes with regard to the admission of students at postgraduate level in cases where they do not comply with the prescribed requirements:

1. A first possibility is via the academic route where a student has proven himself/ herself on the basis of academic achievement.
2. The second possibility refers to a standard of competence that would make a student eligible to continue with postgraduate studies.

With regard to the viewpoint set out above candidates may, inter alia, be evaluated according to the following criteria:

#### **Honours studies**

1. In cases where only a diploma and not a degree programme was previously offered in a certain field of study, the Dean may, in consultation with the head of the department, consider the admission of such candidates.
2. Should a student have the necessary academic background, but did not graduate in the applicable field of study, he/she may be admitted to the honours degree on the grounds of:
3. the successful completion of an oral/written entrance examination; and
4. a submission to the Senate.

In certain cases one or more external examiners may evaluate such an application.

**or**

1. The academic merit of a student who has achieved a standard of competence in another manner can be evaluated by means of:



2. a written motivation by the student which is evaluated by the head of the department;
3. the successful completion of an oral/written entrance examination in which one or more external examiners were involved; and
4. a submission to the Senate.

### **Master's studies**

1. The application of a student who is not in possession of the required honours degree which would admit him/her to study for the master's degree, but has an academically advanced background, may be considered on grounds of:
2. the successful completion of an oral/written entrance examination in which one or more external examiners were involved; and
3. a submission to the Senate.

### **or**

1. In cases where a standard of competence was reached in another manner, status may be granted by means of:
2. a written motivation by the student which was compiled in conjunction with the head of the department and/or study supervisor, and a recommendation;
3. the successful completion of an oral/written entrance examination in which one or more external examiners were involved; and
4. a submission to the Senate.

### **Doctoral studies**

1. The application of a student who is not in possession of the required master's degree which would admit him/her to doctoral study, but has an academically advanced background, may be considered on the grounds of:
- the successful completion of an oral/written entrance examination in which one or more external examiners were involved; and
  - a submission to the Senate

### **or**

2. In cases where a standard of competence was reached in another manner, status may be granted by means of:
- a written submission compiled in conjunction with the head of the department and/or study supervisor in which the standard of competence is indicated;
  - a report by an external reference(s) motivating the merits of admission to doctoral study;
  - the successful completion of an oral/written entrance examination in which one or more external examiners were involved; and
  - a submission to the Senate.



## Undergraduate Degree

### BConSci Clothing Retail Management (02130110)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

#### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

##### Mathematics

##### APS

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	4	D	<b>28</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

#### Promotion to next study year

A student who did not pass all the prescribed modules of a particular year of study, has to register for the outstanding modules first. With the approval of the head of the department, modules of the following year of study may be taken in advance only if no timetable clashes occur; all the requirements and prerequisites have been met and not more than a specified number of credits per semester are taken. The credits of the semester of which modules are repeated, are taken as a guideline for the calculation of the number of modules permitted.

- A student registers for the second year when at least 80% of the first-year module credits have been passed.
- A student registers for the third year when at least 85% of the module credits of the previous years have been passed.
- A student registers for the fourth year when at least 95% of the module credits of the previous years have been passed.

#### Practical/clinical/internship information

KTP 403 Experiential training in the industry: During the 4 years of study, during holidays, weekends and after hours, students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community projects/development, engage in service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year, according to requirements as determined by the head of the department. These "credits" include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before



the degree will be conferred.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if a weighted average of at least 75% is obtained in the following modules:

A combination equivalent to six semester modules

- Marketing research 314 and Strategic marketing 321
- Clothing retail management 410 and Clothing merchandising 420
- Clothing production 320, Product development 411
- Project: Clothing textile project 402
- New developments, sustainability and textile use 411
- Textiles: Marketing and consumer aspects 421

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 134

Fundamental = 12

Core = 122

#### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students who do not qualify for STK 110 must register for STK 113 and STK 123.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Marketing management 120](#) (BEM 120) - Credits: 10.00

[Economics 110](#) (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00

[Economics 120](#) (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00

[Aesthetics 121](#) (EST 121) - Credits: 9.00

[Financial accounting 111](#) (FRK 111) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial accounting 122](#) (FRK 122) - Credits: 12.00

[Informatics 183](#) (INF 183) - Credits: 3.00

[Clothing production: sewing techniques 110](#) (KLR 110) - Credits: 9.00

[Clothing production: processes 120](#) (KLR 120) - Credits: 9.00

[Design principles 111](#) (OBG 111) - Credits: 7.00

[Business management 114](#) (OBS 114) - Credits: 10.00

[Business management 124](#) (OBS 124) - Credits: 10.00

[Statistics 110](#) (STK 110) - Credits: 13.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 134





### Core modules

- Consumer behaviour 212 (BEM 212) - Credits: 16.00
- Integrated brand communications 224 (BEM 224) - Credits: 16.00
- Costume and fashion history 210 (KLD 210) - Credits: 12.00
- Fashion forecasting 222 (KLD 222) - Credits: 12.00
- Flat pattern design 211 (KLR 211) - Credits: 12.00
- Pattern use and good fit 221 (KLR 221) - Credits: 10.00
- Business management 210 (OBS 210) - Credits: 16.00
- Business management 220 (OBS 220) - Credits: 16.00
- Textiles: Utilities, fibres and yarns 212 (TKS 212) - Credits: 14.00
- Textiles: Structures and finishes 222 (TKS 222) - Credits: 10.00

### Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 120

### Core modules

- Marketing research 314 (BEM 314) - Credits: 20.00
- Marketing management 321 (BEM 321) - Credits: 20.00
- Business law 210 (BER 210) - Credits: 16.00
- Business law 220 (BER 220) - Credits: 16.00
- Aesthetics: Product, consumer and environment 320 (EST 320) - Credits: 8.00
- Social and cultural aspects of clothing 311 (KLD 311) - Credits: 15.00
- Clothing production 321 (KLR 321) - Credits: 17.00
- Consumer facilitation 222 (VBF 222) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 122

### Additional information:

KTP 403 Experiential training in the industry: During the 4 years of study, during holidays, weekends and after hours, students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community projects/development, engage in service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year, according to requirements as determined by the head of the department. These credits include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred.

### Core modules

- Clothing retail management 410 (KLD 410) - Credits: 20.00
- Clothing merchandising 420 (KLD 420) - Credits: 20.00
- Product development 411 (KLR 411) - Credits: 19.00
- Experiential training in industry 403 (KTP 403) - Credits: 5.00
- Textiles: new and sustainable developments 411 (TKS 411) - Credits: 13.00
- Textiles: marketing and consumer aspects 421 (TKS 421) - Credits: 15.00
- Research project 400 (VBR 400) - Credits: 30.00

## BConSci Food Retail Management (02130108)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years



## Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

NSC/IEB  
5

AS Level  
C

#### Mathematics

NSC/IEB  
4

AS Level  
D

#### APS

**28**

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

## Promotion to next study year

A student who did not pass all the prescribed modules of a particular year of study, has to register for the outstanding modules first. With the approval of the head of the department, modules of the following year of study may be taken in advance only if no timetable clashes occur; all the requirements and prerequisites have been met and not more than a specified number of credits per semester are taken. The credits of the semester of which modules are repeated, are taken as a guideline for the calculation of the number of modules permitted.

- A student registers for the second year when at least 80% of the first-year module credits have been passed.
- A student registers for the third year when at least 85% of the module credits of the previous years have been passed.
- A student registers for the fourth year when at least 95% of the module credits of the previous years have been passed.

## Practical/clinical/internship information

OPI 400 (Experiential training in industry): During the first to fourth years of study students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community engagement and provide service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year, according to requirements as determined by the head of department. These credits include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred. Please note: Various practical and industry-interaction activities support the theoretical component of VDS 417 & VDS 427, VDS 413 and FST 412 and take place after hours to develop practical and industry skills.

## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if a weighted average of at least 75% is obtained in the following modules:



A combination equivalent to six semester modules:

- Marketing research 314 and Strategic marketing 321
- Food service management 420
- Consumer food research 310
- Food safety and hygiene 354
- Recipe development and standardisation 413
- Consumer aspects of food 417
- Food retailing and visual merchandising of food 427
- Food research project 480

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 131

Fundamental = 12

Core = 119

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.  
Students who do not qualify for STK 110 must register for STK 113 and STK 123.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Marketing management 120](#) (BEM 120) - Credits: 10.00

[Economics 110](#) (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00

[Economics 120](#) (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial accounting 111](#) (FRK 111) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial accounting 122](#) (FRK 122) - Credits: 12.00

[Physiology 110](#) (FSG 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Physiology 120](#) (FSG 120) - Credits: 6.00

[Informatics 183](#) (INF 183) - Credits: 3.00

[Design principles 111](#) (OBG 111) - Credits: 7.00

[Business management 114](#) (OBS 114) - Credits: 10.00

[Business management 124](#) (OBS 124) - Credits: 10.00

[Statistics 110](#) (STK 110) - Credits: 13.00

[Basic food preparation 111](#) (VDS 111) - Credits: 6.00

[Basic food preparation 121](#) (VDS 121) - Credits: 6.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 124

### Core modules

[Consumer behaviour 212](#) (BEM 212) - Credits: 16.00



Integrated brand communications 224 (BEM 224) - Credits: 16.00

Business law 210 (BER 210) - Credits: 16.00

Business law 220 (BER 220) - Credits: 16.00

Business management 210 (OBS 210) - Credits: 16.00

Consumer facilitation 222 (VBF 222) - Credits: 8.00

Food commodities and preparation 210 (VDS 210) - Credits: 18.00

Food commodities and preparation 221 (VDS 221) - Credits: 18.00

### Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 135

#### Core modules

Labour relations 320 (ABV 320) - Credits: 20.00

Marketing research 314 (BEM 314) - Credits: 20.00

Marketing management 321 (BEM 321) - Credits: 20.00

Aesthetics: Product, consumer and environment 320 (EST 320) - Credits: 8.00

Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 210) 310 (VDG 310) - Credits: 17.00

Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 220) 320 (VDG 320) - Credits: 17.00

Consumer food research 310 (VDS 310) - Credits: 21.00

Food safety and hygiene 354 (VDS 354) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 128

#### Additional information:

OPI 400 (Experiential training in industry): During the first to fourth years of study students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community engagement and provide service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year, according to requirements as determined by the head of department. These credits include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred.

Please note: Various practical and industry-interaction activities support the theoretical component of VDS 417 & VDS 427, VDS 413 and FST 412 and take place after hours to develop practical and industry skills.

#### Core modules

Sensory evaluation 412 (FST 412) - Credits: 10.00

Experiential training in industry 400 (OPI 400) - Credits: 5.00

Research project 400 (VBR 400) - Credits: 30.00

Food service management 420 (VDB 420) - Credits: 21.00

Recipe development and standardisation 413 (VDS 413) - Credits: 30.00

Consumer aspects of food 417 (VDS 417) - Credits: 15.00

Food retailing and visual merchandising of food 427 (VDS 427) - Credits: 17.00

## BConSci Hospitality Management (02130109)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years



## Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

NSC/IEB  
5

AS Level  
C

#### Mathematics

NSC/IEB  
4

AS Level  
D

#### APS

**28**

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

## Promotion to next study year

A student who did not pass all the prescribed modules of a particular year of study, has to register for the outstanding modules first. With the approval of the head of the department, modules of the following year of study may be taken in advance only if no timetable clashes occur; all the requirements and prerequisites have been met and not more than a specified number of credits per semester are taken. The credits of the semester of which modules are repeated, are taken as a guideline for the calculation of the number of modules permitted.

- A student registers for the second year when at least 80% of the first-year module credits have been passed.
- A student registers for the third year when at least 85% of the module credits of the previous years have been passed.
- A student registers for the fourth year when at least 95% of the module credits of the previous years have been passed.

## Practical/clinical/internship information

OPI 400 (Experiential training in industry): During the first to fourth years of study students must complete a total of 600 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community engagement and provide service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year for the first to third year and 6 weeks x 40 hours in the fourth year to include event management, according to requirements as determined by the head of department. These credits include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred. Please note: Various practical and industry interaction activities support the theoretical component of TBE 220, 310 and VDS 322, VDS 414 & 424 and take place after hours to develop practical and industry skills.



## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if a weighted average of at least 75% is obtained in the following modules:

A combination equivalent to six semester modules

- Tourism management 310
- Food research project 480
- Large-scale food production and restaurant management 322
- Recipe development and standardisation 413
- Culinary art 414, 424
- Food service management 420

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 131

Core = 119

Fundamental = 12

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students who do not qualify for STK 110 must register for STK 113 and STK 123.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Marketing management 120](#) (BEM 120) - Credits: 10.00

[Economics 110](#) (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00

[Economics 120](#) (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial accounting 111](#) (FRK 111) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial accounting 122](#) (FRK 122) - Credits: 12.00

[Physiology 110](#) (FSG 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Physiology 120](#) (FSG 120) - Credits: 6.00

[Informatics 183](#) (INF 183) - Credits: 3.00

[Design principles 111](#) (OBG 111) - Credits: 7.00

[Business management 114](#) (OBS 114) - Credits: 10.00

[Business management 124](#) (OBS 124) - Credits: 10.00

[Statistics 110](#) (STK 110) - Credits: 13.00

[Basic food preparation 111](#) (VDS 111) - Credits: 6.00

[Basic food preparation 121](#) (VDS 121) - Credits: 6.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 128



### Core modules

- Labour relations 320 (ABV 320) - Credits: 20.00
- Consumer behaviour 212 (BEM 212) - Credits: 16.00
- Business law 210 (BER 210) - Credits: 16.00
- Business management 210 (OBS 210) - Credits: 16.00
- Business management 220 (OBS 220) - Credits: 16.00
- Consumer facilitation 222 (VBF 222) - Credits: 8.00
- Food commodities and preparation 210 (VDS 210) - Credits: 18.00
- Food commodities and preparation 221 (VDS 221) - Credits: 18.00

### Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 143

### Core modules

- Marketing research 314 (BEM 314) - Credits: 20.00
- Aesthetics: Product, consumer and environment 320 (EST 320) - Credits: 8.00
- Tourism and hospitality management 311 (TBE 311) - Credits: 20.00
- Food service management 321 (VDB 321) - Credits: 18.00
- Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 210) 310 (VDG 310) - Credits: 17.00
- Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 220) 320 (VDG 320) - Credits: 17.00
- Large-scale food production and restaurant management 322 (VDS 322) - Credits: 31.00
- Food safety and hygiene 354 (VDS 354) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 130

### Additional information:

OPI 400 (Experiential training in industry): During the first to fourth years of study students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community engagement and provide service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x40 hours (120 hours) per year for the first to third year and 6 weeks x 40 hours in the fourth year to include event management, according to requirements as determined by the head of department. These credits include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred. Please note: Various practical and industry interaction activities support the theoretical component of TBE 220, 310 and VDS 322, VDS 414 & 424 and take place after hours to develop practical and industry skills.

### Core modules

- Experiential training in industry 400 (OPI 400) - Credits: 5.00
- Research project 400 (VBR 400) - Credits: 30.00
- Food service management 420 (VDB 420) - Credits: 21.00
- Recipe development and standardisation 413 (VDS 413) - Credits: 30.00
- Culinary art 414 (VDS 414) - Credits: 22.00
- Culinary art 424 (VDS 424) - Credits: 22.00

## BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics (02133395)

**Minimum duration of study**                      3 years



## Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

English Home Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	<b>36</b>
5	C	7	A	

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Actuarial and Financial Mathematics), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Mathematical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

### BSc - Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

English Home Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	<b>28</b>
4	D	5	C	

Admissions from the BSc - Extended programmes to the BSc (Actuarial and Financial Mathematics) programmes will only be considered if students have passed all their first-year modules with an average of at least 60%, passed IAS 111 and achieved a minimum percentage of 60% for WTW 143 and WTW 153.

## Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for



more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### **Pass with distinction**

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.



## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core = 132

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Economics 110 (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00

Economics 120 (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00

Financial management 112 (FBS 112) - Credits: 10.00

Financial management 122 (FBS 122) - Credits: 10.00

Actuarial and Financial Mathematics in practice 111 (IAS 111) - Credits: 6.00

Actuarial and Financial Mathematics in practice 121 (IAS 121) - Credits: 6.00

Mathematical statistics 111 (WST 111) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematical statistics 121 (WST 121) - Credits: 16.00

Calculus 114 (WTW 114) - Credits: 16.00

Numerical analysis 123 (WTW 123) - Credits: 8.00

Mathematics 124 (WTW 124) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematical modelling 152 (WTW 152) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 132

Elective = 12

### Additional information:

- The elective must be chosen between IAS 282 or WTW 221.
- Students who want to follow an Actuarial career, should select IAS 282. Students who want to pursue an honours degree in Mathematics, should select WTW 221.

### Core modules

Financial mathematics 211 (IAS 211) - Credits: 12.00

Contingencies 221 (IAS 221) - Credits: 12.00

Mathematical statistics 211 (WST 211) - Credits: 24.00

Applications in data science 212 (WST 212) - Credits: 12.00

Mathematical statistics 221 (WST 221) - Credits: 24.00

Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00

Calculus 218 (WTW 218) - Credits: 12.00



[Analysis 220 \(WTW 220\)](#) - Credits: 12.00

[Differential equations 264 \(WTW 264\)](#) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

[Financial mathematics 282 \(IAS 282\)](#) - Credits: 12.00

[Linear algebra 221 \(WTW 221\)](#) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 108

Elective = 36

There are two options for electives. Students should select electives according to one of the options.

#### 1. Actuarial Science option: IAS 353, IAS 382

Students who want to try to obtain the maximum possible exemptions from the Actuarial Society examinations, and who meet the prerequisites, should select the Actuarial Science option.

#### 2. Financial Mathematics option: WTW 310, and one of the following modules WTW 320, WTW 382

Students who want to complete the BSc (Actuarial and Financial Mathematics) degree, but are considering an honours degree in Mathematics, should in addition to the Financial Mathematics option take the module WTW 381 for non-degree purposes.

Students who want to complete the BSc (Actuarial and Financial Mathematics) degree, but are considering an honours degree in Applied Mathematics, should take the Financial Mathematics option with any two of the modules WTW 382, WTW 383, WTW386, with one of them for non-degree purposes.

Students who want to complete the BSc (Actuarial and Financial Mathematics) degree, but are considering an honours degree in Mathematical Statistics, should take in addition to either option STK 353 for non-degree purposes.

Students who would like to continue with any of the alternative above-mentioned honours degrees without taking additional credits can switch to the respective undergraduate programme during their third year. Students should note that they still qualify for exemptions from the Actuarial Society subjects if they switch to one of the alternative degrees.

### Core modules

[Multivariate analysis 311 \(WST 311\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Stochastic processes 312 \(WST 312\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Time-series analysis 321 \(WST 321\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Actuarial statistics 322 \(WST 322\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Financial engineering 354 \(WTW 354\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Financial engineering 364 \(WTW 364\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

### Elective modules

[Contingencies 353 \(IAS 353\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Survival models 382 \(IAS 382\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Analysis 310 \(WTW 310\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Complex analysis 320 \(WTW 320\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Dynamical systems 382 \(WTW 382\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Numerical analysis 383 \(WTW 383\)](#) - Credits: 18.00

[Partial differential equations 386 \(WTW 386\)](#) - Credits: 18.00



## BSc Applied Mathematics (02133253)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

**Contact** Prof R Anguelov [roumen.anguelov@up.ac.za](mailto:roumen.anguelov@up.ac.za) +27 (0)124202520

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

English Home Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	6	B	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Applied Mathematics), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Mathematical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

#### BSc - Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

English Home Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	5	C	<b>28</b>

### Other programme-specific information

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.



A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

### Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a



subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 138

Fundamental = 12 credits

Core = 96 credits

Elective = 30 credits

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

**Choose electives according to the following combinations with a view to pursuing specialisation in the relevant field:**

**Physics:** PHY 114 & PHY 124 (32 credits)

**Chemistry:** CMY 117 & CMY 127 (32 credits)

**Economics:** EKN 110, EKN 120 and one of FRK 111 or OBS 114 or FBS 112 (30 credits)

**Students who want to take other electives must consult the undergraduate Programme Coordinator in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.**

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Mathematical statistics 111](#) (WST 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematical statistics 121](#) (WST 121) - Credits: 16.00

[Calculus 114](#) (WTW 114) - Credits: 16.00

[Discrete structures 115](#) (WTW 115) - Credits: 8.00

[Numerical analysis 123](#) (WTW 123) - Credits: 8.00

[Mathematics 124](#) (WTW 124) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematical modelling 152](#) (WTW 152) - Credits: 8.00

[Dynamical processes 162](#) (WTW 162) - Credits: 8.00

### Elective modules

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Economics 110](#) (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00

[Economics 120](#) (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial management 112](#) (FBS 112) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial accounting 111](#) (FRK 111) - Credits: 10.00

[Business management 114](#) (OBS 114) - Credits: 10.00



First course in physics 114 (PHY 114) - Credits: 16.00

First course in physics 124 (PHY 124) - Credits: 16.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 132

Core = 84 credits

Elective = 48 credits

### Additional information:

**Choose electives according to the following combinations with a view to pursuing specialisation in the relevant field:**

**Physics:** PHY 255 & PHY 263 (48 credits)

**Chemistry:** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284 & CMY 285 (48 credits)

**Economics:** EKN 214, EKN 224 & EKN 234 (48 credits)

**Statistics:** WST 211 & WST 221 (48 credits)

**Students who want to take other electives must consult the undergraduate Programme Coordinator in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.**

### Core modules

Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00

Calculus 218 (WTW 218) - Credits: 12.00

Analysis 220 (WTW 220) - Credits: 12.00

Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221) - Credits: 12.00

Vector analysis 248 (WTW 248) - Credits: 12.00

Discrete structures 285 (WTW 285) - Credits: 12.00

Differential equations 286 (WTW 286) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00

Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00

Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00

Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00

Economics 214 (EKN 214) - Credits: 16.00

Economics 224 (EKN 224) - Credits: 16.00

Economics 234 (EKN 234) - Credits: 16.00

Waves, thermodynamics and modern physics 255 (PHY 255) - Credits: 24.00

General physics 263 (PHY 263) - Credits: 24.00

Mathematical statistics 211 (WST 211) - Credits: 24.00

Mathematical statistics 221 (WST 221) - Credits: 24.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 90 credits

Elective = 54 credits

### Additional information:



**Students may choose elective modules from Physics, Chemistry, Economics, Mathematical Statistics, Mathematics and Financial Mathematics.**

1. **Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Physics** should take PHY 356 & PHY 364.
2. **Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Chemistry** should take CMY 382, CMY 383, CMY 384 & CMY 385, with one of the modules for non-degree purposes.
3. **Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Economics** should take EKN 310, EKN 320 & EKN 325
4. **Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Mathematical Statistics** should take WST 311, WST 312, WST 321, WST 322 & STK 353, with two of the modules for non-degree purposes.
5. **Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Mathematics** should take WTW 381, WTW 320 & WTW 389.
6. **Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Financial Mathematics** should take WTW 354 & WTW 364, and one module from WST 311, WST 312, WST 321 & WST 322.

**Students who want to take other electives must consult the Undergraduate Programme Coordinator in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.**

**Core modules**

- Analysis 310 (WTW 310) - Credits: 18.00
- Dynamical systems 382 (WTW 382) - Credits: 18.00
- Numerical analysis 383 (WTW 383) - Credits: 18.00
- Partial differential equations 386 (WTW 386) - Credits: 18.00
- Continuum mechanics 387 (WTW 387) - Credits: 18.00

**Elective modules**

- Physical chemistry 382 (CMY 382) - Credits: 18.00
- Analytical chemistry 383 (CMY 383) - Credits: 18.00
- Organic chemistry 384 (CMY 384) - Credits: 18.00
- Inorganic chemistry 385 (CMY 385) - Credits: 18.00
- Economics 310 (EKN 310) - Credits: 20.00
- Economics 320 (EKN 320) - Credits: 20.00
- Economics 325 (EKN 325) - Credits: 20.00
- Electronics, electromagnetism and quantum mechanics 356 (PHY 356) - Credits: 36.00
- Statistical mechanics, solid state physics and modelling 364 (PHY 364) - Credits: 36.00
- The science of data analytics 353 (STK 353) - Credits: 25.00
- Multivariate analysis 311 (WST 311) - Credits: 18.00
- Stochastic processes 312 (WST 312) - Credits: 18.00
- Time-series analysis 321 (WST 321) - Credits: 18.00
- Actuarial statistics 322 (WST 322) - Credits: 18.00
- Complex analysis 320 (WTW 320) - Credits: 18.00
- Financial engineering 354 (WTW 354) - Credits: 18.00
- Financial engineering 364 (WTW 364) - Credits: 18.00
- Algebra 381 (WTW 381) - Credits: 18.00
- Geometry 389 (WTW 389) - Credits: 18.00

**BSc Biochemistry (02133398)**

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years





## Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Biochemistry), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc - Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete

### BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

## Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and

subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.



## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core = 128

**Note:** Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students intend applying for **MBChB**, or **BChD** selection, have to enrol for FIL 155(6), MGW 112(6) and MTL 180(12) with the understanding that they defer doing WTW 134 in the first semester, however, should they not be selected and want to continue with a BSc programme, WTW 165 must be taken in the **second** semester of the first year.

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 165 (WTW 165) - Credits: 16.00

Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 120

Elective modules = 24

### Additional information:

#### Dual major track:

- **Biochemistry and Chemistry combination:** Students must choose one elective per semester from BOT 251, BOT 261, FLG 211, FLG 212, FLG 221, FLG 222, MBY 251, MBY 261, MBY 262.
- **Biochemistry and Genetics combination:** Students must take MBY 251 and MBY 261.



- **Biochemistry and Human Physiology combination:** Students must replace [CMY 282, CMY 284, CMY 283, CMY 285] with [FLG 211, FLG 212, FLG 221, FLG 222]. Students must take MBY 251 and MBY 261.
- **Biochemistry and Microbiology combination:** Students must replace CMY 285 with MBY 262. Students must take MBY 251 and MBY 261.
- **Biochemistry and Plant Science combination:** Students must take BOT 251 and BOT 261.
- **Biochemistry and Zoology combination:** Students must replace [CMY 282, CMY 284, CMY 283, CMY 285] with [BOT 251, ZEN 251, BOT 261, ZEN 261]. Students must take MBY 251 and MBY 261.

### Core modules

- Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00
- Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00
- Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00
- Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00
- Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00
- Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00
- Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

- South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211) - Credits: 12.00
- Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212) - Credits: 12.00
- Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221) - Credits: 12.00
- Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222) - Credits: 12.00
- Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00
- Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00
- African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 72

Elective modules = 72

### Dual major track:

- **Biochemistry and Chemistry combination:** Students must take CMY 382, CMY 383, CMY 384 and CMY 385.
- **Biochemistry and Genetics combination:** Students must take GTS 351, GTS 354, GTS 367 and [GTS368 or BTC 361].
- **Biochemistry and Human Physiology combination:** Students must take FLG 327, FLG 330, FLG 331 and FLG 332.
- **Biochemistry and Microbiology combination:** Students must take MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 364 and MBY 365.
- **Biochemistry and Plant Science combination:** Students must take BOT 356, BOT 358, BOT 365 and BOT



366.

- **Biochemistry and Zoology combination:** Students must take ZEN 352, ZEN 354, ZEN 361 and ZEN 363.

### Core modules

Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00

Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00

Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00

Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00

### Elective modules

Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00

Plant ecology 358 (BOT 358) - Credits: 18.00

Phytomedicine 365 (BOT 365) - Credits: 18.00

Plant diversity 366 (BOT 366) - Credits: 18.00

Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00

Physical chemistry 382 (CMY 382) - Credits: 18.00

Analytical chemistry 383 (CMY 383) - Credits: 18.00

Organic chemistry 384 (CMY 384) - Credits: 18.00

Inorganic chemistry 385 (CMY 385) - Credits: 18.00

Higher neurological functions 327 (FLG 327) - Credits: 18.00

Cellular and developmental physiology 330 (FLG 330) - Credits: 18.00

Exercise and nutrition science 331 (FLG 331) - Credits: 18.00

Applied and pathophysiology 332 (FLG 332) - Credits: 18.00

Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00

Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00

Population and evolutionary genetics 367 (GTS 367) - Credits: 18.00

Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00

Virology 351 (MBY 351) - Credits: 18.00

Bacterial genetics 355 (MBY 355) - Credits: 18.00

Genetic manipulation of microbes 364 (MBY 364) - Credits: 18.00

Microbe interactions 365 (MBY 365) - Credits: 18.00

Mammalogy 352 (ZEN 352) - Credits: 18.00

Evolutionary physiology 354 (ZEN 354) - Credits: 18.00

Physiological processes 361 (ZEN 361) - Credits: 18.00

Behavioural ecology 363 (ZEN 363) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Biological Sciences (02133397)

**Minimum duration of study**                      3 years

### Admission requirements

- The closing date is an administrative admission guideline for non-selection programmes. Once a non-selection programme is full and has reached the institutional targets, then that programme will be closed for further admissions, irrespective of the closing date. However, if the institutional targets have not been met by the closing date, then that programme will remain open for admissions until the institutional targets are met.
- The following persons will be considered for admission: candidates who are in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required National Senior Certificate with university

endorsement, candidates who are graduates from another tertiary institution or have been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and candidates who are graduates of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.

- Life Orientation is excluded from the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on Grade 12 results.
- Please note that the Faculty does not accept GED and School of Tomorrow qualifications for entry into our programmes.

### **Transferring students**

#### **Candidates previously registered at UP or at another university**

- The faculty’s Admissions Committee considers applications of candidates who have already completed the final NSC or equivalent qualification examination and/or were previously registered at UP or another university, on grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.

#### **Candidates previously registered at a FET college or a university of technology**

- The faculty’s Admissions Committee considers the application of these candidates on the grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.

### **Qualifications from countries other than South Africa**

- Citizens from countries other than South Africa and South African citizens with foreign qualifications must comply with all the other admission requirements and the prerequisites for subjects/modules.
- Candidates must have completed the National Senior Certificate with admission to degree studies or a certificate of conditional exemption on the basis of a candidate’s foreign qualifications, the so-called “Immigrant” or “Foreign Conditional Exemption”. The only condition for the “Foreign Conditional Exemption” that is accepted is: ‘completion of the degree course’. The exemption certificate is obtainable from Universities South Africa (USAf). Detailed information is available on the website at [click here](#).

**University of Pretoria website:** [click here](#)

**National Benchmark Test website:** [click here](#)

### **Minimum requirements**

#### **Achievement level**

#### **English Home**

#### **Language or**

#### **English First**

#### **Additional**

#### **Language**

#### **Mathematics**

#### **Physical Sciences**

#### **APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the Cambridge system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

\* International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the IB system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Biological Sciences), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.



## BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Sciences		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

### Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are



passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core = 128

### Additional information:

- Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.
- Students who intend on applying for **MBChB**, or **BChD** selection, have to enrol for FIL 155(6), MGW 112(6) and MTL 180(12) with the understanding that they defer doing WTW 134 in the first semester, however, should they not be selected and want to continue with a BSc programme, WTW 165 must be taken in the second semester of the first year.
- Students intending to apply for the **BVSc** selection have to enrol for MTL 180(12).
- **Please note:** ANA modules can only be taken by **BSc (Medical Science)** students.
- Please note: A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 165 (WTW 165) - Credits: 16.00

Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## BSc Biotechnology (02133403)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The closing date is an administrative admission guideline for non-selection programmes. Once a non-selection programme is full and has reached the institutional targets, then that programme will be closed for further



admissions, irrespective of the closing date. However, if the institutional targets have not been met by the closing date, then that programme will remain open for admissions until the institutional targets are met.

- The following persons will be considered for admission: candidates who are in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required National Senior Certificate with university endorsement, candidates who are graduates from another tertiary institution or have been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and candidates who are graduates of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded from the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on Grade 12 results.
- Please note that the Faculty does not accept GED and School of Tomorrow qualifications for entry into our programmes.

### **Transferring students**

- **Candidates previously registered at UP or at another university**
  - The faculty’s Admissions Committee considers applications of candidates who have already completed the final NSC or equivalent qualification examination and/or were previously registered at UP or another university, on grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.
- **Candidates previously registered at a FET college or a university of technology**
  - The faculty’s Admissions Committee considers the application of these candidates on the grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.

### **Qualifications from countries other than South Africa**

- Citizens from countries other than South Africa and South African citizens with foreign qualifications must comply with all the other admission requirements and the prerequisites for subjects/modules.
- Candidates must have completed the National Senior Certificate with admission to degree studies or a certificate of conditional exemption on the basis of a candidate’s foreign qualifications, the so-called “Immigrant” or “Foreign Conditional Exemption”. The only condition for the “Foreign Conditional Exemption” that is accepted is: ‘completion of the degree course’. The exemption certificate is obtainable from Universities South Africa (USAf). Detailed information is available on the website at [click here](#).

**University of Pretoria website:** [click here](#)

**National Benchmark Test website:** [click here](#)

### **Minimum requirements**

#### **Achievement level**

#### **English Home**

#### **Language or**

#### **English First**

#### **Additional**

#### **Language**

#### **Mathematics**

#### **Physical Sciences**

#### **APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the Cambridge system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

\* International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the IB system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with



performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Biotechnology), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

### **BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

#### **Minimum requirements**

#### **Achievement level**

#### **English Home**

#### **Language or**

#### **English First**

#### **Additional**

#### **Language**

		<b>Mathematics</b>		<b>Physical Sciences</b>		<b>APS</b>
<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### **Other programme-specific information**

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor’s degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student’s responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.



The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

## Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

## General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

**Additional information:** Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00



General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00  
Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00  
Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00  
Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00  
Mathematics 165 (WTW 165) - Credits: 16.00  
Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 108

Elective = 36

### Additional information:

Electives may be chosen from BCM 262, BME 210, DAF 200, FST 250, GKD 250, MBY 262, PLG 251, PLG 262, PPK 251, ZEN 251, ZEN 261 or other module/s subject to permission from the HOD.

### Please note:

- Students who want to focus their degree in Biochemistry must take BCM 262.
- Students who want to focus their degree in Microbiology must take MBY 262.

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00  
Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00  
South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00  
Biometry 210 (BME 210) - Credits: 24.00  
Animal anatomy and physiology 200 (DAF 200) - Credits: 32.00  
Introduction to food science and technology 250 (FST 250) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00  
Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00  
Introduction to crop protection 251 (PLG 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Principles of plant pathology 262 (PLG 262) - Credits: 12.00  
Sustainable crop production and agroclimatology 251 (PPK 251) - Credits: 15.00  
Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00  
African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144



Core = 54

Elective = 90

### **To focus your degree in Biochemistry:**

- Students must take BCM 357, BCM 367, BCM 368.
- The balance of the electives (36 credits) must be chosen from BOT 365, GTS 354, GTS 367, GTS 368, MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 365.

### **To focus your degree in Genetics:**

- Students interested in the PLANT GENETICS option must take GTS 354, BTC 361, GTS367.
- The balance of the electives (36 credits) must be chosen from BCM 367, BOT 356, BOT 358, BOT 365, PLG 351, PLG 363.
- Students interested in the HUMAN / ANIMAL GENETICS option must take GTS 354, GTS 367, GTS 368.
- The balance of the electives (36 credits) must be chosen from BCM 357, BCM 367, BCM 368, MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 365.

### **To focus your degree in Microbiology:**

- Students must take MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 365.
- The balance of the electives (36 credits) must be chosen from BCM 367, BCM 368, BOT 365, BTC 361, GTS 367.

### **To focus your degree in Plant Science:**

- Students must take BTC 361, BOT 365.
- The balance of the electives (54 credits) must be chosen from BCM 367, BOT 356, BOT 358, BOT 366, GTS 354, GTS 367, MBY 351, MBY 365, PLG 363.

### **Core modules**

[Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356](#) (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00

[Eukaryotic gene control and development 351](#) (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00

[Genetic manipulation of microbes 364](#) (MBY 364) - Credits: 18.00

### **Elective modules**

[Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357](#) (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00

[Cell structure and function 367](#) (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00

[Molecular basis of disease 368](#) (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00

[Plant ecophysiology 356](#) (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00

[Plant ecology 358](#) (BOT 358) - Credits: 18.00

[Phytomedicine 365](#) (BOT 365) - Credits: 18.00

[Plant diversity 366](#) (BOT 366) - Credits: 18.00

[Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361](#) (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00

[Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354](#) (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00

[Population and evolutionary genetics 367](#) (GTS 367) - Credits: 18.00

[Genetics in human health 368](#) (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00

[Virology 351](#) (MBY 351) - Credits: 18.00

[Bacterial genetics 355](#) (MBY 355) - Credits: 18.00

[Microbe interactions 365](#) (MBY 365) - Credits: 18.00

[General plant pathology 351](#) (PLG 351) - Credits: 18.00

[Plant disease control 363](#) (PLG 363) - Credits: 18.00



## BSc Chemistry (02133173)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Chemistry), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Physical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Physical Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>28</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150

credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.



- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12  
Core = 96  
Electives = 32

### Elective Modules (Credits = 32)

Students must select elective modules with a total number of at least 32 credits.

Depending on a student's second major and other interests, the following combinations of modules are recommended (deviations allowed with permission from the head of department):

- Second major in biochemistry: MLB 111, GTS 161, MBY 161 or BME 120 (32 credits)
- Second major in plant science: MLB 111, BOT 161, MBY 161 or BME 120 (32 credits)
- Second major in geology: GLY 155, GLY 163 (32 credits)
- Second major in physics with an interest in applied mathematics: WTW 115, WTW 152, WTW 162, WTW 123 (32 credits)
- Second major in physics with an interest in statistics: WST 111, WST 121 (32 credits)
- Second major in physics with an interest in biology: MLB 111, BME 120 (32 credits)
- Second major in geography: ENV 101, GGY 156, GGY 166, GMC 110 (34 credits)
- Second major in mathematics: WTW 115, WTW 123, WTW 152, WTW 162 (32 credits)
- Second major in statistics: WST 111, WST 121 (32 credits)

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[First course in physics 114](#) (PHY 114) - Credits: 16.00

[First course in physics 124](#) (PHY 124) - Credits: 16.00

[Calculus 114](#) (WTW 114) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 124](#) (WTW 124) - Credits: 16.00

### Elective modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Introduction to environmental sciences 101](#) (ENV 101) - Credits: 8.00





Aspects of human geography 156 (GGY 156) - Credits: 8.00  
Southern African geomorphology 166 (GGY 166) - Credits: 8.00  
Cartography 110 (GMC 110) - Credits: 10.00  
Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00  
Atmospheric structure and processes 155 (WKD 155) - Credits: 16.00  
Discrete structures 115 (WTW 115) - Credits: 8.00  
Dynamical processes 162 (WTW 162) - Credits: 8.00  
Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 48

Elective = 96

### Additional information:

Elective Modules (Credits = 96)

**Students who do not intend to continue with Mathematics on third year level may replace WTW 220 with WTW 224**

Students must select elective modules with a total number of at least 96 credits.

Depending on a student's second major and other interests, the following modules are recommended (deviations allowed with permission from the head of department):

- Second major in biochemistry: BCM 251, BCM 252, BCM 261, BCM 262, GTS 251, GTS 261, MBY 251 or WTW 211 (100 credits)
- Second major in plant science: BOT 251, BOT 261, MBY 251, MBY 261, BCM 251, BCM 252, and either BCM 261 or BCM 262 (100 credits)
- Second major in physics: PHY 255, PHY 263, WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 220, WTW 248 (96 credits)
- Second major in geology: GLY 253, GLY 255, GLY 263, GLY 266, GGY 252, GKD 250, GIS 221 (GMC is a prerequisite)
- Second major in geography: GGY 252, GGY 283, GGY 201, ENV 201, GKD 220, GIS 220, and either GLY 253 or GLY 255 (88 credit)
- Second major in mathematics with an interest in physics: WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 220, WTW 221, PHY 255, PHY 263 (96 credits).
- Second major in mathematics or applied mathematics: WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 220, WTW 221, WTW 285, WTW 286, WTW 248 (84 credits – select another 12 credits).
- Second major in statistics: WST 211, WST 221, WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 220 or WTW 224, WTW 221 (96 credits)

### Core modules

Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00

Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00

Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00

Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00



Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00  
Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00  
South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Environmental sciences 201 (ENV 201) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212) - Credits: 12.00  
Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222) - Credits: 12.00  
City, structure, environment and society 201 (GGY 201) - Credits: 12.00  
Process geomorphology 252 (GGY 252) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory geographic information systems 283 (GGY 283) - Credits: 14.00  
Geographic data analysis 220 (GIS 220) - Credits: 14.00  
Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00  
Sedimentology 253 (GLY 253) - Credits: 12.00  
Fundamental and applied mineralogy 255 (GLY 255) - Credits: 12.00  
Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Calculus 218 (WTW 218) - Credits: 12.00  
Analysis 220 (WTW 220) - Credits: 12.00  
Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Techniques of analysis 224 (WTW 224) - Credits: 12.00  
Vector analysis 248 (WTW 248) - Credits: 12.00  
Discrete structures 285 (WTW 285) - Credits: 12.00  
Differential equations 286 (WTW 286) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 72

Elective = 72

Students must select elective modules with a total number of at least 72 credits.

Depending on a student's second major and other interests, the following modules are recommended (deviations allowed with permission from the head of department):

- Second major in biochemistry: BCM 356, BCM 357, BCM 367, BCM 368 (72 credits)
- Second major in plant science: BOT 356, BOT 358, and any two of BOT 365, BOT 366 and BTC 361 (72 credits).
- Second major in physics: PHY 356, PHY 364 (72 credits).
- Second major in geology: GLY365, GLY366, GLY367, GLY 368 (78 credits).
- Second major in geography: ENV 301, GGY 301, GGY 361 (**54 credits - 18 credits short**). Note that in order to qualify for BSc Honours in Geography, students need to change their registration to BSc Geography at the start of the third year to replace compulsory chemistry modules with additional Geography modules.
- Second major in mathematics: WTW 310, WTW 320, WTW 381 and WTW 389 (72 credits).



- Second major in applied mathematics: WTW 310, WTW 382, WTW 383, WTW 386 and WTW 387 (90 credits – 18 credits extra).
- Second major in statistics: WST 311, WST 312, WST 321, STK 353 (79 credits)

### Core modules

- Physical chemistry 382 (CMY 382) - Credits: 18.00
- Analytical chemistry 383 (CMY 383) - Credits: 18.00
- Organic chemistry 384 (CMY 384) - Credits: 18.00
- Inorganic chemistry 385 (CMY 385) - Credits: 18.00

### Elective modules

- Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00
- Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00
- Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00
- Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00
- Human environmental interactions 301 (ENV 301) - Credits: 18.00
- Theories and applications of human geography 301 (GGY 301) - Credits: 18.00
- Environmental geomorphology 361 (GGY 361) - Credits: 18.00
- Geographic information systems 310 (GIS 310) - Credits: 22.00
- Spatial analysis 320 (GIS 320) - Credits: 22.00
- Numerical analysis 383 (WTW 383) - Credits: 18.00
- Geometry 389 (WTW 389) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Culinary Science (02133320)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will



be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Culinary Science), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

### **BSc Extended Programme for the Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

#### **Minimum requirements**

#### **Achievement level**

#### **English Home**

#### **Language or**

#### **English First**

#### **Additional**

#### **Language**

		<b>Mathematics</b>		<b>Physical Science</b>		<b>APS</b>
<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### **Other programme-specific information**

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Practical/clinical/internship information

OPI 400 (Experiential training in industry): During the first to fourth years of study, students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community engagement and provide service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year, according to requirements as determined by the head of department. These “credits” include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred. Please note: Various practical and industry interaction activities support the theoretical component of VDS 414 & VDS 424, VDS 413 and FST 413 and take place after hours to develop practical and industry skills.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if a weighted average of at least 75% is obtained in the following modules:

Recipe development and standardisation 413

Consumer aspects of food 417

Food research project 480

Food service management 420

Food science and technology 413

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 134



Core = 122 credits

Fundamental = 12

**Note:** Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Marketing management 120 (BEM 120) - Credits: 10.00

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Physiology 110 (FSG 110) - Credits: 6.00

Physiology 120 (FSG 120) - Credits: 6.00

Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Basic food preparation 111 (VDS 111) - Credits: 6.00

Basic food preparation 121 (VDS 121) - Credits: 6.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

#### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00

Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00

Consumer behaviour 212 (BEM 212) - Credits: 16.00

Principles of food processing and preservation 260 (FST 260) - Credits: 12.00

Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00

Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00

Consumer facilitation 222 (VBF 222) - Credits: 8.00

Food commodities and preparation 210 (VDS 210) - Credits: 18.00

Food commodities and preparation 221 (VDS 221) - Credits: 18.00

### Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 140

#### Core modules

Food chemistry 351 (FST 351) - Credits: 18.00

Food chemistry (2) 352 (FST 352) - Credits: 18.00

Food service management 321 (VDB 321) - Credits: 18.00

Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 210) 310 (VDG 310) - Credits: 17.00



Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 220) 320 (VDG 320) - Credits: 17.00

Consumer food research 310 (VDS 310) - Credits: 21.00

Large-scale food production and restaurant management 322 (VDS 322) - Credits: 31.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 140

### Additional information:

OPI 400 (Experiential training in industry): During the first to fourth years of study, students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community engagement and provide service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year, according to requirements as determined by the head of department. These “credits” include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred.

Please note: Various practical and industry interaction activities support the theoretical component of VDS 414 & VDS 424, VDS 413 and FST 413 and take place after hours to develop practical and industry skills.

### Core modules

Sensory evaluation 412 (FST 412) - Credits: 10.00

Experiential training in industry 400 (OPI 400) - Credits: 5.00

Research project 400 (VBR 400) - Credits: 30.00

Food service management 420 (VDB 420) - Credits: 21.00

Recipe development and standardisation 413 (VDS 413) - Credits: 30.00

Culinary art 414 (VDS 414) - Credits: 22.00

Culinary art 424 (VDS 424) - Credits: 22.00

## BSc Ecology (02133400)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The closing date is an administrative admission guideline for non-selection programmes. Once a non-selection programme is full and has reached the institutional targets, then that programme will be closed for further admissions, irrespective of the closing date. However, if the institutional targets have not been met by the closing date, then that programme will remain open for admissions until the institutional targets are met.
- The following persons will be considered for admission: candidates who are in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required National Senior Certificate with university endorsement, candidates who are graduates from another tertiary institution or have been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and candidates who are graduates of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded from the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on Grade 12 results.
- Please note that the Faculty does not accept GED and School of Tomorrow qualifications for entry into our programmes.

### Transferring students



**• Candidates previously registered at UP or at another university**

- The faculty’s Admissions Committee considers applications of candidates who have already completed the final NSC or equivalent qualification examination and/or were previously registered at UP or another university, on grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.

**• Candidates previously registered at a FET college or a university of technology**

- The faculty’s Admissions Committee considers the application of these candidates on the grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.

**Qualifications from countries other than South Africa**

- Citizens from countries other than South Africa and South African citizens with foreign qualifications must comply with all the other admission requirements and the prerequisites for subjects/modules.
- Candidates must have completed the National Senior Certificate with admission to degree studies or a certificate of conditional exemption on the basis of a candidate’s foreign qualifications, the so-called “Immigrant” or “Foreign Conditional Exemption”. The only condition for the “Foreign Conditional Exemption” that is accepted is: ‘completion of the degree course’. The exemption certificate is obtainable from Universities South Africa (USAf). Detailed information is available on the website at [click here](#).

**University of Pretoria website:** [click here](#)

**National Benchmark Test website:** [click here](#)

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home**

**Language or**

**English First**

**Additional**

**Language**

		Mathematics		Physical Sciences		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the Cambridge system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

\* International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the IB system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Ecology), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

**BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home**

**Language or**

**English First**

**Additional**

**Language**

		Mathematics		Physical Sciences		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	





## Other programme-specific information

Electives are chosen as follows:

Second year – 12 credits

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

## Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the

relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### **Pass with distinction**

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

### **Additional information:**

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

### **Fundamental modules**

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### **Core modules**

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Introductory genetics 161](#) (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Introduction to microbiology 161](#) (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Molecular and cell biology 111](#) (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Physics for biology students 131](#) (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00



Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 132

Elective modules = 12

\* BCM 252, BCM 261, PLG 251, PLG 262

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00

Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00

Geographic information systems introduction 221 (GIS 221) - Credits: 12.00

Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00

Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00

Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00

African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00

Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to crop protection 251 (PLG 251) - Credits: 12.00

Principles of plant pathology 262 (PLG 262) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 144

### Core modules

Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00

Plant ecology 358 (BOT 358) - Credits: 18.00

Plant diversity 366 (BOT 366) - Credits: 18.00

Population ecology 351 (ZEN 351) - Credits: 18.00

Community ecology 353 (ZEN 353) - Credits: 18.00

Physiological processes 361 (ZEN 361) - Credits: 18.00

Evolution and phylogeny 362 (ZEN 362) - Credits: 18.00

Conservation ecology 364 (ZEN 364) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology (02133043)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years



## Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Engineering and Environmental Geology), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Physical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

### BSc - Extended Programme - Physical Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>28</b>

## Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-

year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.



## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core = 128

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Student wishing to take second-year Mathematics or Applied Mathematics modules to complement the Mechanics modules, must take WTW 114 and WTW 124 instead of WTW 158 and WTW 164

Students who wishes to register **GIS 220** in the second year have to register **GMC 110** in the first year

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introduction to geology 155 (GLY 155) - Credits: 16.00

Earth history 163 (GLY 163) - Credits: 16.00

First course in physics 114 (PHY 114) - Credits: 16.00

Mechanics 122 (SWK 122) - Credits: 16.00

Calculus 158 (WTW 158) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 164 (WTW 164) - Credits: 16.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 142

Core = 94

Elective = 48

### Additional information:

**Students who do not intend to continue with Mathematics on third year level may replace WTW 220 with WTW 224**

**A block of 48 elective credits must be selected from the following-**

**Chemistry:** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284, CMY 285 (48 credits)

**Mathematics:** WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 220, WTW 221 (48 credits)

**Applied Mathematics:** WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 248, WTW 264 (48 credits)



**GIS/Geomorphology:** GGY 252, GIS 220, GGY 201 (36 credits)

### Core modules

Geographic information systems introduction 221 (GIS 221) - Credits: 12.00

Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00

Sedimentology 253 (GLY 253) - Credits: 12.00

Fundamental and applied mineralogy 255 (GLY 255) - Credits: 12.00

Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology 263 (GLY 263) - Credits: 24.00

Geological field mapping 266 (GLY 266) - Credits: 6.00

Strength of materials 210 (SWK 210) - Credits: 16.00

### Elective modules

Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00

Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00

Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00

Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00

City, structure, environment and society 201 (GGY 201) - Credits: 12.00

Process geomorphology 252 (GGY 252) - Credits: 12.00

Geographic data analysis 220 (GIS 220) - Credits: 14.00

Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00

Calculus 218 (WTW 218) - Credits: 12.00

Analysis 220 (WTW 220) - Credits: 12.00

Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221) - Credits: 12.00

Techniques of analysis 224 (WTW 224) - Credits: 12.00

Vector analysis 248 (WTW 248) - Credits: 12.00

Differential equations 264 (WTW 264) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 138

Core = 122

Elective = 16

### Additional information:

Either GLY 367 (24 credits) or SGM 323 (16 credits) must be taken in the second semester.

### Core modules

Soil chemistry 320 (GKD 320) - Credits: 14.00

Soil classification and surveying 350 (GKD 350) - Credits: 14.00

Structural geology 365 (GLY 365) - Credits: 18.00

Groundwater 366 (GLY 366) - Credits: 18.00

Advanced Geological field mapping 368 (GLY 368) - Credits: 6.00

Engineering geology and rock mechanics 369 (GLY 369) - Credits: 36.00

Soil mechanics 311 (SGM 311) - Credits: 16.00

### Elective modules

Economic geology 367 (GLY 367) - Credits: 36.00

Geotechnical engineering 323 (SGM 323) - Credits: 16.00



## BSc Entomology (02133401)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Entomology), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements



is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals



Committee.

- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

#### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

#### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

#### Core modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Introductory genetics 161](#) (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Introduction to microbiology 161](#) (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Molecular and cell biology 111](#) (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Physics for biology students 131](#) (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

[Animal diversity 161](#) (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core es = 132

Elective modules = 12

#### Additional information:

- Students interested in combining with Entomology in a dual major with Biochemistry or Genetics must take BCM 261 as an elective.
- Students interested in combining Entomology in a dual major with Biochemistry must also replace either BOT 261 or MBY 261 with BCM 262.



## Core modules

- Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00
- South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Geographic information systems introduction 221 (GIS 221) - Credits: 12.00
- Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00
- African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 144

### Additional information:

Single major track

Option to replace ZEN 361 with ZEN 363. In addition, students must take all the seven modules listed in the fixed curriculum for the final year.

Dual major track

- **Entomology and Biochemistry combination:** Students must take [ZEN 354 + ZEN 355] and [ZEN361 + ZEN 365] and to a total value of 72 credits, and must take [BCM 356 and BCM 357] and [BCM 367 and BCM 368].
- **Entomology and Genetics combination:** Students must take [ZEN 354 + ZEN 355] and [ZEN 361 + ZEN 365] to a total value of 72 credits, and must take [GTS 351 and GTS 354] and [GTS 367 and either BTC 361 or GTS 368] to a value of 72 credits.
- **Entomology and Plant Science combination:** Students must take [ZEN 354 + ZEN 355] and [ZEN 362 + ZEN 365] to a total value of 72 credits, and must take [BOT 356 and BOT 358] and [BOT 366 and either BOT 365 or BTC 361] to a value of 72 credits.

## Core modules

- Population ecology 351 (ZEN 351) - Credits: 18.00
- Community ecology 353 (ZEN 353) - Credits: 18.00
- Evolutionary physiology 354 (ZEN 354) - Credits: 18.00
- Insect diversity 355 (ZEN 355) - Credits: 18.00
- Physiological processes 361 (ZEN 361) - Credits: 18.00
- Evolution and phylogeny 362 (ZEN 362) - Credits: 18.00
- Conservation ecology 364 (ZEN 364) - Credits: 18.00
- Applied entomology 365 (ZEN 365) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Environmental Sciences (02133362)

**Minimum duration of study**                      3 years



## Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Environmental Sciences), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Physical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

### BSc - Extended Programme - Physical Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>28</b>

## Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.



## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 142

Fundamental = 12

Core = 130

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students can take WTW 114 instead of WTW 134 if they meet the entry requirement.

No elective credits are required.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Introduction to environmental sciences 101](#) (ENV 101) - Credits: 8.00

[Aspects of human geography 156](#) (GGY 156) - Credits: 8.00

[Southern African geomorphology 166](#) (GGY 166) - Credits: 8.00

[Cartography 110](#) (GMC 110) - Credits: 10.00

[Molecular and cell biology 111](#) (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

[Animal diversity 161](#) (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 138

Core = 98

Elective = 40

### Additional information:

Students must select elective modules with a total number of at least 40 credits.

**Students who do not intend to continue with Mathematics on third year level may replace WTW 220 with WTW 224**

Depending on a student's second major and other interests, the following modules are recommended:



- **Ecology as a field of interest:** PPK 251, GMA 220, LEK 210 (Credits 41)
- **Geography as second major:** GMA 220, GGY 201, GIS 220, (Credits 40)
- **Geoinformatics as a field of interest:** GMA 220, GIS 220 (Credits 28)

### Core modules

- South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Environmental sciences 201 (ENV 201) - Credits: 12.00
- Process geomorphology 252 (GGY 252) - Credits: 12.00
- Introductory geographic information systems 283 (GGY 283) - Credits: 14.00
- Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00
- Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00
- African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

- City, structure, environment and society 201 (GGY 201) - Credits: 12.00
- Geographic data analysis 220 (GIS 220) - Credits: 14.00
- Remote sensing 220 (GMA 220) - Credits: 14.00
- Introduction to agricultural economics 210 (LEK 210) - Credits: 12.00
- Sustainable crop production and agroclimatology 251 (PPK 251) - Credits: 15.00
- Physical meteorology 261 (WKD 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Techniques of analysis 224 (WTW 224) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 142

Core = 36

Elective = 106

Students must select elective modules with a total number of at least 106 credits.

- **Ecology as a field of interest:** GIS 310, BOT 358, BOT 366, ZEN 351, ZEN 353, ZEN 362, ZEN 364 (Credits 112)
- **Geography as a second major:** GMA 320, GGY 301, (Credits 40)
- **Geoinformatics as a field of interest:** GIS 310, GIS 320, GMA 320 (66 Credits)

### Core modules

- Human environmental interactions 301 (ENV 301) - Credits: 18.00
- Environmental geomorphology 361 (GGY 361) - Credits: 18.00

### Elective modules

- Plant ecology 358 (BOT 358) - Credits: 18.00
- Plant diversity 366 (BOT 366) - Credits: 18.00
- Theories and applications of human geography 301 (GGY 301) - Credits: 18.00
- Geographic information systems 310 (GIS 310) - Credits: 22.00
- Spatial analysis 320 (GIS 320) - Credits: 22.00
- Soil classification and surveying 350 (GKD 350) - Credits: 14.00
- Remote sensing 320 (GMA 320) - Credits: 22.00
- Population ecology 351 (ZEN 351) - Credits: 18.00
- Community ecology 353 (ZEN 353) - Credits: 18.00



Behavioural ecology 363 (ZEN 363) - Credits: 18.00

Conservation ecology 364 (ZEN 364) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences (02130014)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

### Admission requirements

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements of programmes in the Departments of Biological and Agricultural Sciences, may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme for the Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

Please note: Students who are placed in the BS -- Extended programme will take a minimum of five years to complete the BScAgric programmes, BSc (Culinary Science) or BSc (Nutrition).

### BSc -- Extended Programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

English Home		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### Additional requirements

- Students who are admitted to one of the BSc extended programmes register for one specific programme. Three extended programmes are available:
  - BSc (extended programme) – Mathematical Sciences
  - BSc (extended programme) – Biological and Agricultural Sciences
  - BSc (extended programme) – Physical Sciences
- These programmes are followed by students who, as a result of exceptional circumstances, will benefit from an extended programme.
- Students who do not comply with the normal three-year BSc entrance requirements for study in the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences, may nevertheless be admitted to the Faculty by being placed on the BSc (extended programme). Generally the BSc (extended programme) means that the first study year in Mathematics, Physics, Biology and Chemistry is extended to take two years. After completing the BSc (extended programme) successfully, students join the second year of the normal BSc programme to complete their degrees. The possibility of switching over to other faculties such as Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology, Veterinary Science and Health Sciences, after one or two years in the extended programme, exists. This depends on selection rules and other conditions stipulated by the other faculties.
- Students who wish to follow one of the BSc extended programmes will be subjected to an Institutional





Proficiency Test and will be considered for admission by the Admissions Committee. Information in this regard is available at the Client Services Centre.

- e. Applications for admission to the BSc (extended programme) should be submitted before 30 September each year. Details are obtainable from the Student Administration at the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences.
- f. The rules and regulations applicable to the normal study programmes apply mutatis mutandis to the BSc (extended programme), with exceptions as indicated in the regulations pertaining to the BSc (extended programme). For instance, students placed in the BSc (extended programme) must have a National Senior Certificate with admission for degree purposes.
- g. An admissions committee considers applications for the BSc (extended programme) annually. Regarding subject choices, admitted students are individually placed on the BSc (extended programme) according to their prospective field of study. Students may NOT change this placement without the permission of the Chairperson of the admissions committee.

## Other programme-specific information

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the alphabetical list of modules.

## Promotion to next study year

### Academic promotion requirements

It is expected of students who register for the first year of the BSc (extended programme) to pass all the prescribed modules of the first year.

It is expected of students accepted into the BSc (extended programme) to finish a complete corresponding BSc first year within the two years of enrolment in the BSc (extended programme). Students who do not show progress during the first semester of the first year will be referred to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 88

### Minimum credits: 88

Fundamental = 24

Core = 64

**NB Students may register for an extended programme module only once.**

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language, life and study skills 133](#) (LST 133) - Credits: 8.00

[Language, life and study skills 143](#) (LST 143) - Credits: 8.00

[Academic orientation 120](#) (UPO 120) - Credits: 0.00



### Core modules

- Chemistry 133 (CMY 133) - Credits: 8.00
- Chemistry 143 (CMY 143) - Credits: 8.00
- Molecular and cell biology 133 (MLB 133) - Credits: 8.00
- Molecular and cell biology 143 (MLB 143) - Credits: 8.00
- Physics 133 (PHY 133) - Credits: 8.00
- Physics 144 (PHY 144) - Credits: 8.00
- Precalculus 133 (WTW 133) - Credits: 8.00
- Mathematics 144 (WTW 144) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 32

#### Minimum credits:

- Core = 32
- Elective = According to BSc programme of choice

#### Additional information:

Students must register for the applicable third-semester modules(second year, first semester) and the second-semester, modules must be selected from the normal BSc programme of the student's choice.

#### Equivalent modules:

- Chemistry extended modules: CMY 133, CMY 143 and CMY 154: Equivalent to BSc module CMY 117
- Molecular and cell biology extended modules: MLB 133, MLB 143 and MLB 153: Equivalent to BSc module MLB 111
- Physics extended modules: PHY 133, PHY 143 and PHY 154: Equivalent to BSc module PHY 131
- Mathematics extended modules: WTW 133, WTW 143 and WTW 154: Equivalent to BSc module WTW 134

### Core modules

- Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00
- Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00
- General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00
- Chemistry 154 (CMY 154) - Credits: 8.00
- Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00
- Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00
- Molecular and cell biology 153 (MLB 153) - Credits: 8.00
- Physics 154 (PHY 154) - Credits: 8.00
- Mathematics 154 (WTW 154) - Credits: 8.00
- Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

### Elective modules

- Introduction: Human anatomy and embryology 121 (ANA 121) - Credits: 4.00
- Human osteology 122 (ANA 122) - Credits: 4.00
- Basic human histology 126 (ANA 126) - Credits: 4.00
- Science and world views 155 (FIL 155) - Credits: 6.00



- Financial accounting 111 (FRK 111) - Credits: 10.00
- Financial accounting 121 (FRK 121) - Credits: 12.00
- Physiology 110 (FSG 110) - Credits: 6.00
- Physiology 120 (FSG 120) - Credits: 6.00
- Psychology 110 (SLK 110) - Credits: 12.00
- Psychology 120 (SLK 120) - Credits: 12.00
- Basic food preparation 121 (VDS 121) - Credits: 6.00

## BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences (02130016)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

### Admission requirements

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements of programmes in the Department of Mathematical Sciences, may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme for the Mathematical Sciences. The BSc - Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

#### BSc - Extended programme -- Mathematical Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

English Home Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	5	C	<b>28</b>

Admissions from the BSc - Extended programmes to the BSc (Actuarial and Financial Mathematics) programmes will only be considered if students have passed all their first-year modules with an average of at least 60%, passed IAS 111 and achieved a minimum percentage of 60% for WTW 143 and WTW 153.

### Additional requirements

- a. Students who are admitted to one of the BSc extended programmes register for one specific programme. Three extended programmes are available:
  - BSc (extended programme) - Mathematical Sciences
  - BSc (extended programme) - Biological and Agricultural Sciences
  - BSc (extended programme) - Physical Sciences
- b. These programmes are followed by students who, as a result of exceptional circumstances, will benefit from an extended programme.
- c. Students who do not comply with the normal three-year BSc entrance requirements for study in the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences, may nevertheless be admitted to the Faculty by being placed on the BSc (extended programme). Generally the BSc (extended programme) means that the first study year in Mathematics, Physics, Biology and Chemistry is extended to take two years. After completing the BSc (extended programme) successfully, students join the second year of the normal BSc programme to complete their degrees. The possibility of switching over to other faculties such as Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology, Veterinary Science and Health Sciences, after one or two years in the extended programme, exists. This depends on selection rules and other conditions stipulated by the other faculties.



- d. Students who wish to follow one of the BSc extended programmes will be subjected to an Institutional Proficiency Test and will be considered for admission by the Admissions Committee. Information in this regard is available at the Client Services Centre.
- e. Applications for admission to the BSc (extended programme) should be submitted before 30 September each year. Details are obtainable from the Student Administration at the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences.
- f. The rules and regulations applicable to the normal study programmes apply mutatis mutandis to the BSc (extended programme), with exceptions as indicated in the regulations pertaining to the BSc (extended programme). For instance, students placed in the BSc (extended programme) must have a National Senior Certificate with admission for degree purposes.
- g. An admissions committee considers applications for the BSc (extended programme) annually. Regarding subject choices, admitted students are individually placed on the BSc (extended programme) according to their prospective field of study. Students may NOT change this placement without the permission of the Chairperson of the admissions committee.

### Other programme-specific information

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the alphabetical list of modules.

### Promotion to next study year

#### Academic promotion requirements

It is expected of students who register for the first year of the BSc (extended programme) to pass all the prescribed modules of the first year.

It is expected of students accepted into the BSc (extended programme) to finish a complete corresponding BSc first year within the two years of enrolment in the BSc (extended programme). Students who do not show progress during the first semester of the first year will be referred to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 88

#### Minimum credits:

Fundamental = 24

Core = 32

Elective = 32

#### Additional information:

Students register for either one of the following elective combinations

- First semester PHY133 and CMY133, second semester PHY143 and CMY143
- First semester FRK133 and OBS133, second semester FRK143 and OBS143.



---

## **NB Students may register for an extended module only once.**

Admissions from the BSc -- Extended programmes to the BSc (Actuarial and Financial Mathematics) programmes will only be considered if students have passed all their first-year modules with an average of at least 60%, passed IAS 111 and achieved a minimum percentage of 60% for WTW 143 and WTW 153.

### **Fundamental modules**

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language, life and study skills 133 (LST 133) - Credits: 8.00

Language, life and study skills 143 (LST 143) - Credits: 8.00

Academic orientation 120 (UPO 120) - Credits: 0.00

### **Core modules**

Mathematical statistics 133 (WST 133) - Credits: 8.00

Mathematical statistics 143 (WST 143) - Credits: 8.00

Precalculus 133 (WTW 133) - Credits: 8.00

Calculus 143 (WTW 143) - Credits: 8.00

### **Elective modules**

Chemistry 133 (CMY 133) - Credits: 8.00

Chemistry 143 (CMY 143) - Credits: 8.00

Financial accounting 133 (FRK 133) - Credits: 8.00

Financial accounting 143 (FRK 143) - Credits: 8.00

Business management 133 (OBS 133) - Credits: 8.00

Business management 143 (OBS 143) - Credits: 8.00

Physics 133 (PHY 133) - Credits: 8.00

Physics 143 (PHY 143) - Credits: 8.00

## **Curriculum: Year 2**

Minimum credits: 28

### **Minimum credits:**

Core = 16

Elective = According to BSc programme of choice

### **Additional information:**

**Possible third semester electives:** CMY 154, PHY 153

Students must register for the applicable third-semester modules(second year, first semester) and the second-semester, modules must be selected from the normal BSc programme of the student's choice.

### **Equivalent modules:**

Chemistry extended modules: CMY 133, CMY 143 and CMY 154: Equivalent to BSc module CMY 117

Physics extended modules: PHY 133, PHY 143 and PHY 153: Equivalent to BSc module PHY 114

Mathematics extended modules: WTW 133, WTW 143 and WTW 153: Equivalent to BSc module WTW 114

Mathematical Statistics extended modules: WST 133, WST 143 and WST 153: Equivalent to BSc module WST 111

### **Core modules**

Mathematical statistics 153 (WST 153) - Credits: 8.00



Calculus 153 (WTW 153) - Credits: 8.00

### Elective modules

- Chemistry 154 (CMY 154) - Credits: 8.00
- Program design: Introduction 110 (COS 110) - Credits: 16.00
- Economics 110 (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00
- Economics 113 (EKN 113) - Credits: 15.00
- Economics 120 (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00
- Economics 123 (EKN 123) - Credits: 15.00
- Financial management 112 (FBS 112) - Credits: 10.00
- Financial management 122 (FBS 122) - Credits: 10.00
- Financial accounting 111 (FRK 111) - Credits: 10.00
- Physics 153 (PHY 153) - Credits: 8.00
- Mathematical statistics 121 (WST 121) - Credits: 16.00
- Discrete structures 115 (WTW 115) - Credits: 8.00
- Numerical analysis 123 (WTW 123) - Credits: 8.00
- Mathematics 124 (WTW 124) - Credits: 16.00
- Mathematical modelling 152 (WTW 152) - Credits: 8.00
- Dynamical processes 162 (WTW 162) - Credits: 8.00

## BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences (02130015)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

### Admission requirements

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements of programmes in the Department of Physical Sciences, may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme for the Physical Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

### BSc -- Extended Programme -- Physical Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

English Home		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>28</b>

### Additional requirements

a. Students who are admitted to one of the BSc extended programmes register for one specific programme. Three extended programmes are available:

- BSc (extended programme) – Mathematical Sciences
- BSc (extended programme) – Biological and Agricultural Sciences



- BSc (extended programme) – Physical Sciences

- These programmes are followed by students who, as a result of exceptional circumstances, will benefit from an extended programme.
- Students who do not comply with the normal three-year BSc entrance requirements for study in the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences, may nevertheless be admitted to the Faculty by being placed on the BSc (extended programme). Generally the BSc (extended programme) means that the first study year in Mathematics, Physics, Biology and Chemistry is extended to take two years. After completing the BSc (extended programme) successfully, students join the second year of the normal BSc programme to complete their degrees. The possibility of switching over to other faculties such as Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology, Veterinary Science and Health Sciences, after one or two years in the extended programme, exists. This depends on selection rules and other conditions stipulated by the other faculties.
- Students who wish to follow one of the BSc extended programmes will be subjected to an Institutional Proficiency Test and will be considered for admission by the Admissions Committee. Information in this regard is available at the Client Services Centre.
- Applications for admission to the BSc (extended programme) should be submitted before 30 September each year. Details are obtainable from the Student Administration at the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences.
- The rules and regulations applicable to the normal study programmes apply mutatis mutandis to the BSc (extended programme), with exceptions as indicated in the regulations pertaining to the BSc (extended programme). For instance, students placed in the BSc (extended programme) must have a National Senior Certificate with admission for degree purposes.
- An admissions committee considers applications for the BSc (extended programme) annually. Regarding subject choices, admitted students are individually placed on the BSc (extended programme) according to their prospective field of study. Students may NOT change this placement without the permission of the Chairperson of the admissions committee.

## Other programme-specific information

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the alphabetical list of modules.

## Promotion to next study year

### Academic promotion requirements

It is expected of students who register for the first year of the BSc (extended programme) to pass all the prescribed modules of the first year.

It is expected of students accepted into the BSc (extended programme) to finish a complete corresponding BSc first year within the two years of enrolment in the BSc (extended programme). Students who do not show progress during the first semester of the first year will be referred to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty.



## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 88

Fundamental = 24

Core = 48

Elective = 16

### Additional information:

Students register for either one of the following elective combinations

- First semester MLB 133 and second semester MLB 143
- First semester WST 133 and second semester WST 143

**NB Students may register for an extended module only once.**

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language, life and study skills 133 (LST 133) - Credits: 8.00

Language, life and study skills 143 (LST 143) - Credits: 8.00

Academic orientation 120 (UPO 120) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Chemistry 133 (CMY 133) - Credits: 8.00

Chemistry 143 (CMY 143) - Credits: 8.00

Physics 133 (PHY 133) - Credits: 8.00

Physics 143 (PHY 143) - Credits: 8.00

Precalculus 133 (WTW 133) - Credits: 8.00

Calculus 143 (WTW 143) - Credits: 8.00

### Elective modules

Molecular and cell biology 133 (MLB 133) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 143 (MLB 143) - Credits: 8.00

Mathematical statistics 133 (WST 133) - Credits: 8.00

Mathematical statistics 143 (WST 143) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 24

Elective = According to BSc programme of choice

### Additional information:

Students must register for the applicable third-semester modules(second year, first semester) and the second-semester, modules must be selected from the normal BSc programme of the student's choice.

### Equivalent modules:

Chemistry extended modules: CMY 133, CMY 143 and CMY 154: Equivalent to BSc module CMY 117

Molecular and cell biology extended modules: MLB 133, MLB 143 and MLB 153: Equivalent to BSc module MLB 111

Physics extended modules: PHY 133, PHY 143 and PHY 153: Equivalent to BSc module PHY 114





Mathematics extended modules: WTW 133, WTW 143 and WTW 153: Equivalent to BSc module WTW 114

Mathematical Statistics extended modules: WST 133, WST 143 and WST 153: Equivalent to BSc module WST 111

### Core modules

Chemistry 154 (CMY 154) - Credits: 8.00

Physics 153 (PHY 153) - Credits: 8.00

Calculus 153 (WTW 153) - Credits: 8.00

### Elective modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introduction to environmental sciences 101 (ENV 101) - Credits: 8.00

Aspects of human geography 156 (GGY 156) - Credits: 8.00

Southern African geomorphology 166 (GGY 166) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to geology 155 (GLY 155) - Credits: 16.00

Earth history 163 (GLY 163) - Credits: 16.00

Cartography 110 (GMC 110) - Credits: 10.00

Informatics 112 (INF 112) - Credits: 10.00

Informatics 154 (INF 154) - Credits: 10.00

Informatics 164 (INF 164) - Credits: 10.00

Informatics 171 (INF 171) - Credits: 20.00

Molecular and cell biology 153 (MLB 153) - Credits: 8.00

First course in physics 124 (PHY 124) - Credits: 16.00

Exploring the universe 154 (SCI 154) - Credits: 16.00

Mechanics 122 (SWK 122) - Credits: 16.00

Numerical analysis 123 (WTW 123) - Credits: 8.00

Mathematics 124 (WTW 124) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematical modelling 152 (WTW 152) - Credits: 8.00

Dynamical processes 162 (WTW 162) - Credits: 8.00

Mathematics 164 (WTW 164) - Credits: 16.00

## BSc Food Science (02133406)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements Achievement level



**English Home Language or English First Additional Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Food Science), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

**BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home**

**Language or**

**English First**

**Additional**

**Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

**Other programme-specific information**

Students may enrol for AIM 111 and AIM 121 instead of AIM 101 (the same content presented over 2 semesters).

ZEN 161 may be replaced with FNH 121

(This should be read in conjunction with the curriculum for the first year of study)

(GTS 251 and GTS 261) may be replaced with (LEK 210 and LEK 220)

(This should be read in conjunction with the curriculum for the second year of study)

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may

be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### **Pass with distinction**

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.



---

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

ZEN 161 may be replaced with FNH 121

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introduction to food, nutrition and health 121 (FNH 121) - Credits: 8.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 149

### Additional information:

GTS 251 and GTS 261 may be replaced with LEK 210 and LEK 220

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00

Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to food science and technology 250 (FST 250) - Credits: 12.00

Principles of food processing and preservation 260 (FST 260) - Credits: 12.00

Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to agricultural economics 210 (LEK 210) - Credits: 12.00

Agricultural economics 220 (LEK 220) - Credits: 12.00

Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00

Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00



Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 210) 310 (VDG 310) - Credits: 17.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

### Core modules

Integrated food science 350 (FST 350) - Credits: 18.00

Food chemistry 351 (FST 351) - Credits: 18.00

Food chemistry (2) 352 (FST 352) - Credits: 18.00

Food engineering 353 (FST 353) - Credits: 18.00

Principles of the science and technology of plant food 360 (FST 360) - Credits: 18.00

Animal food science 361 (FST 361) - Credits: 18.00

Advanced animal and plant foods microbiology 362 (FST 362) - Credits: 18.00

Food composition and applied nutritional programmes 364 (VWV 364) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Genetics (02133402)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

English Home		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Genetics), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

### BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level



**English Home  
Language or  
English First  
Additional  
Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
4	D	4	D	4	D

**26**

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study,

retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students intend applying for **MBChB**, or **BChD** selection, have to enrol for FIL 155(6), MGW 112(6) and MTL 180(12) with the understanding that:

- they obtained an APS of at least 34 and passed grade 12 Mathematics with at least 70%; and
- they may defer doing WTW 134 in the first semester, however, should they not be selected and want to continue with a BSc programme, WTW 165 must be taken in the second semester of the first year.

Students intending to apply for the **BVSc** selection have to enrol for MTL 180(12).

Please note: ANA modules can only be taken by **BSc (Medical Science)** students.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00



### Core modules

- Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00
- Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00
- General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00
- General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00
- Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00
- Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00
- Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00
- Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00
- Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00
- Mathematics 165 (WTW 165) - Credits: 16.00
- Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 132

Elective modules = 12

#### Additional information:

##### Single major track:

- Elective may be chosen from BCM 262, PLG 262, MBY 262.

##### Dual major track:

- Genetics and Biochemistry combination: Students must take BCM 262 and may replace [BOT 251, BOT 261, ZEN 251, ZEN 261] with [CMY 282, CMY 284, CMY 283, CMY 285].
- Genetics and Microbiology combination: Students must take MBY 262.
- Genetics and Plant Science combination: Students must take one of GIS 221, BCM 262, PLG 262 or MBY 262 as an elective.
- Genetics and Zoology / Entomology combination: Students must take GIS 221 as an elective.

### Core modules

- Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00
- Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00
- South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00
- Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00
- Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00
- African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

- Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00
- Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00
- Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00
- Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00





Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00  
Geographic information systems introduction 221 (GIS 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00  
Principles of plant pathology 262 (PLG 262) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 90

Elective = 54

### Additional information:

#### Single major track:

- Electives may be chosen from any combination of: BCM 356, BCM 357, BCM 367, BCM 368, BOT 356, BOT 358, BOT 365, MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 364, MBY 365, PLG 351, PLG 363, ZEN 361, ZEN 363.
- Students can only take a module if they comply with all the prerequisites.

#### Dual major track:

- Genetics and Biochemistry combination: Students must replace BTC 361 with Biochemistry modules and must take [BCM 356, BCM 357, BCM 367, BCM 368] to a total value of 72 credits.
- Genetics and Microbiology combination: Students must replace either GTS 368 or BTC 361 with Microbiology modules, and must take [MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 364, MBY 365] to a total value of 72 credits.
- Genetics and Plant Science combination: Students must take [BOT 356, BOT 358, BOT 365] to a value of 54 credits. Students may also choose to replace GTS 368 with BOT 366.
- Genetics and Zoology combination: Students must replace either BTC 361 or GTS 368 with Zoology modules, and must take [ZEN 352, ZEN 354, ZEN 361, ZEN 363] to a total value of 72 credits.
- Genetics and Entomology combination: Students must replace either BTC 361 or GTS 368 with Zoology modules, and must take [ZEN 354, ZEN 355, ZEN 361, ZEN 365] to a total value of 72 credits.

### Core modules

Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00  
Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00  
Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00  
Population and evolutionary genetics 367 (GTS 367) - Credits: 18.00  
Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00

### Elective modules

Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00  
Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00  
Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00  
Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00  
Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00  
Plant ecology 358 (BOT 358) - Credits: 18.00  
Phytomedicine 365 (BOT 365) - Credits: 18.00  
Plant diversity 366 (BOT 366) - Credits: 18.00  
Virology 351 (MBY 351) - Credits: 18.00  
Bacterial genetics 355 (MBY 355) - Credits: 18.00  
Genetic manipulation of microbes 364 (MBY 364) - Credits: 18.00  
Microbe interactions 365 (MBY 365) - Credits: 18.00



General plant pathology 351 (PLG 351) - Credits: 18.00

Plant disease control 363 (PLG 363) - Credits: 18.00

Mammalogy 352 (ZEN 352) - Credits: 18.00

Evolutionary physiology 354 (ZEN 354) - Credits: 18.00

Insect diversity 355 (ZEN 355) - Credits: 18.00

Physiological processes 361 (ZEN 361) - Credits: 18.00

Behavioural ecology 363 (ZEN 363) - Credits: 18.00

Applied entomology 365 (ZEN 365) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Geography (02133394)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

English Home		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Geography), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Physical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Physical Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

English Home		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	



## Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

## Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.



- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 132

Fundamental =	12
Core =	66
Elective =	54

#### Additional information:

- Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.
- Students can take WTW 114 instead of WTW 134 if they meet the entry requirements.

#### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

#### Core modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Introduction to environmental sciences 101](#) (ENV 101) - Credits: 8.00

[Aspects of human geography 156](#) (GGY 156) - Credits: 8.00

[Southern African geomorphology 166](#) (GGY 166) - Credits: 8.00

[Cartography 110](#) (GMC 110) - Credits: 10.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

#### Elective modules

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Introduction to geology 155](#) (GLY 155) - Credits: 16.00

[Earth history 163](#) (GLY 163) - Credits: 16.00

[Informatics 154](#) (INF 154) - Credits: 10.00

[Informatics 164](#) (INF 164) - Credits: 10.00



Informatics 171 (INF 171) - Credits: 20.00  
First course in physics 114 (PHY 114) - Credits: 16.00  
First course in physics 124 (PHY 124) - Credits: 16.00  
Exploring the universe 154 (SCI 154) - Credits: 16.00  
Atmospheric structure and processes 155 (WKD 155) - Credits: 16.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 64  
Elective = 80

### Elective Modules

GKD 250, GMA 220, INF 225, INF 261, SUR 220

### Core modules

Environmental sciences 201 (ENV 201) - Credits: 12.00  
City, structure, environment and society 201 (GGY 201) - Credits: 12.00  
Process geomorphology 252 (GGY 252) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory geographic information systems 283 (GGY 283) - Credits: 14.00  
Geographic data analysis 220 (GIS 220) - Credits: 14.00

### Elective modules

Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00  
Remote sensing 220 (GMA 220) - Credits: 14.00  
Informatics 214 (INF 214) - Credits: 14.00  
Informatics 225 (INF 225) - Credits: 14.00  
Informatics 261 (INF 261) - Credits: 7.00  
Surveying 220 (SUR 220) - Credits: 14.00  
Physical meteorology 261 (WKD 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Introduction to dynamic meteorology 263 (WKD 263) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 126

Core = 98  
Elective = 28

### Core modules

Human environmental interactions 301 (ENV 301) - Credits: 18.00  
Theories and applications of human geography 301 (GGY 301) - Credits: 18.00  
Environmental geomorphology 361 (GGY 361) - Credits: 18.00  
Geographic information systems 310 (GIS 310) - Credits: 22.00  
Spatial analysis 320 (GIS 320) - Credits: 22.00

### Elective modules

Soil chemistry 320 (GKD 320) - Credits: 14.00  
Soil classification and surveying 350 (GKD 350) - Credits: 14.00  
Remote sensing 320 (GMA 320) - Credits: 22.00  
Geometrical and space geodesy 310 (GMC 310) - Credits: 22.00



Geoinformatics project 320 (GMT 320) - Credits: 22.00

## BSc Geoinformatics (02133393)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Geoinformatics), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Physical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Physical Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>28</b>

### Other programme-specific information

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please



refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### **Pass with distinction**

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.



## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 148

Fundamental = 12

Core = 136

### Additional information:

- Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.
- Students who intend to take mathematics to the 200 level, have to take the combination of WTW 114 and WTW 124 instead of WTW 134, WTW 146 and WTW 148, if they meet the entry requirements.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Introduction to environmental sciences 101](#) (ENV 101) - Credits: 8.00

[Aspects of human geography 156](#) (GGY 156) - Credits: 8.00

[Southern African geomorphology 166](#) (GGY 166) - Credits: 8.00

[Cartography 110](#) (GMC 110) - Credits: 10.00

[Informatics 112](#) (INF 112) - Credits: 10.00

[Informatics 154](#) (INF 154) - Credits: 10.00

[Informatics 164](#) (INF 164) - Credits: 10.00

[Informatics 171](#) (INF 171) - Credits: 20.00

[Business management 114](#) (OBS 114) - Credits: 10.00

[Business management 124](#) (OBS 124) - Credits: 10.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

[Linear algebra 146](#) (WTW 146) - Credits: 8.00

[Calculus 148](#) (WTW 148) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 143

Core = 143

### Core modules

[Business law 210](#) (BER 210) - Credits: 16.00

[Introduction to moral and political philosophy 251](#) (FIL 251) - Credits: 10.00

[Introductory geographic information systems 283](#) (GGY 283) - Credits: 14.00

[Geographic data analysis 220](#) (GIS 220) - Credits: 14.00

[Remote sensing 220](#) (GMA 220) - Credits: 14.00

[Informatics 214](#) (INF 214) - Credits: 14.00

[Informatics 225](#) (INF 225) - Credits: 14.00

[Informatics 261](#) (INF 261) - Credits: 7.00

[Statistics 110](#) (STK 110) - Credits: 13.00

[Statistics 120](#) (STK 120) - Credits: 13.00





Surveying 220 (SUR 220) - Credits: 14.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 132

Core = 132

#### Core modules

Geographic information systems 310 (GIS 310) - Credits: 22.00

Geoinformatics 311 (GIS 311) - Credits: 22.00

Spatial analysis 320 (GIS 320) - Credits: 22.00

Remote sensing 320 (GMA 320) - Credits: 22.00

Geometrical and space geodesy 310 (GMC 310) - Credits: 22.00

Geoinformatics project 320 (GMT 320) - Credits: 22.00

### BSc Geology (02133023)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

#### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

##### Mathematics

##### Physical Science

##### APS

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	APS
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Geology), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Physical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Physical Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level



**English Home Language or English First Additional Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>28</b>

**Other programme-specific information**

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor’s degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student’s responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

**Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the

relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### **Pass with distinction**

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12  
Core = 112  
Elective = 16

### **Additional information:**

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

### **Electives:**

- Students wishing to take second-year Physics, Mathematics or Applied Mathematics modules to complement the Mechanics modules, must take WTW 114 and WTW 124 instead of WTW 158 and WTW 164.
- Students must select to do one of the following in semester 2:
- PHY124 First Course in Physics, SWK122 Mechanics, or both GMC110 Cartography and GGY166 Southern African Geomorphology
- Students who select PHY 124 are able to continue with a second major in Chemistry, Mathematics, Soil Science or Physics.
- Students who select SWK 122 may continue with a second major in Engineering Geology, Mathematics, Chemistry, Soil Science or Mechanics.
- Students who select GMC110 and GGY166 can carry on with a second major in Applied Earth Science, Mathematics, Chemistry, or Soil Science.

### **Fundamental modules**

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00



Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introduction to geology 155 (GLY 155) - Credits: 16.00

Earth history 163 (GLY 163) - Credits: 16.00

First course in physics 114 (PHY 114) - Credits: 16.00

Calculus 158 (WTW 158) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 164 (WTW 164) - Credits: 16.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 142

Core = 54

Elective = 88

### Additional information:

**Students who do not intend to continue with Mathematics on third year level may replace WTW 220 with WTW 224**

Students must select 2 groups of modules (either 2 x 48 credits = 96 credits or 48 + 40 = 88 credits) from the following list, depending on the second major intended:

- **Chemistry:** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284, CMY 285 (48 credits)
- **Mathematics:** WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 220, WTW 221 (48 credits)
- **Applied Mathematics:** WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 248, WTW 264 (48 credits)
- **Physics:** PHY 263, PHY 255 (48 credits) and WTW 211, WTW 218, WTW 220, WTW 248 (48 credits)
- **Engineering Geology/Soil Science/Mechanics:** GKD 250, SWK 210, GIS 221 (40 credits)
- **GIS/Geomorphology:** GKD 250, GGY 283, GMA 220 (40 credits)

### Core modules

Sedimentology 253 (GLY 253) - Credits: 12.00

Fundamental and applied mineralogy 255 (GLY 255) - Credits: 12.00

Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology 263 (GLY 263) - Credits: 24.00

Geological field mapping 266 (GLY 266) - Credits: 6.00

### Elective modules

Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00

Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00

Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00

Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00

Introductory geographic information systems 283 (GGY 283) - Credits: 14.00

Geographic information systems introduction 221 (GIS 221) - Credits: 12.00

Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00

Remote sensing 220 (GMA 220) - Credits: 14.00

Waves, thermodynamics and modern physics 255 (PHY 255) - Credits: 24.00

General physics 263 (PHY 263) - Credits: 24.00

Strength of materials 210 (SWK 210) - Credits: 16.00



Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Calculus 218 (WTW 218) - Credits: 12.00  
Analysis 220 (WTW 220) - Credits: 12.00  
Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Techniques of analysis 224 (WTW 224) - Credits: 12.00  
Vector analysis 248 (WTW 248) - Credits: 12.00  
Differential equations 264 (WTW 264) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 78

Elective = 66

#### Additional information:

Elective Modules (Credits = 66)

Students must select one group of modules (at least 66 credits each) from the following list, provided the appropriate second year modules were taken:

- **Chemistry:** CMY382, CMY 383, CMY384, CMY385 (72 credits)
- **Mathematics:** WTW 310, WTW 320, WTW 381, WTW 389 (72 credits)
- **Applied Mathematics:** WTW 382, WTW 383, WTW 386, WTW 387 (72 credits)
- **Physics:** PHY 364, PHY 356 (72 credits)
- **Astrophysics:** PHY 300, GMS 320, GIS 320 (82 credits) – Notes: PHY 300 requires PHY 255 and 263 as prerequisites; this option does not allow entry into Physics Honours
- **Engineering Geology/Soil Science/Mechanics:** GKD 350, SGM 311, GLY 369 (66 credits)
- **Applied Earth Science:** GMA 320, GIS 310, GKD 320, GKD 350 (72 credits)

#### Core modules

Structural geology 365 (GLY 365) - Credits: 18.00  
Groundwater 366 (GLY 366) - Credits: 18.00  
Economic geology 367 (GLY 367) - Credits: 36.00  
Advanced Geological field mapping 368 (GLY 368) - Credits: 6.00

#### Elective modules

Physical chemistry 382 (CMY 382) - Credits: 18.00  
Analytical chemistry 383 (CMY 383) - Credits: 18.00  
Organic chemistry 384 (CMY 384) - Credits: 18.00  
Inorganic chemistry 385 (CMY 385) - Credits: 18.00  
Geographic information systems 310 (GIS 310) - Credits: 22.00  
Spatial analysis 320 (GIS 320) - Credits: 22.00  
Soil chemistry 320 (GKD 320) - Credits: 14.00  
Soil classification and surveying 350 (GKD 350) - Credits: 14.00  
Engineering geology and rock mechanics 369 (GLY 369) - Credits: 36.00  
Remote sensing 320 (GMA 320) - Credits: 22.00  
Soil-water relationship and irrigation 350 (PGW 350) - Credits: 14.00  
Observational astronomy 300 (PHY 300) - Credits: 36.00  
Electronics, electromagnetism and quantum mechanics 356 (PHY 356) - Credits: 36.00  
Statistical mechanics, solid state physics and modelling 364 (PHY 364) - Credits: 36.00



- Soil mechanics 311 (SGM 311) - Credits: 16.00
- Analysis 310 (WTW 310) - Credits: 18.00
- Complex analysis 320 (WTW 320) - Credits: 18.00
- Algebra 381 (WTW 381) - Credits: 18.00
- Dynamical systems 382 (WTW 382) - Credits: 18.00
- Numerical analysis 383 (WTW 383) - Credits: 18.00
- Partial differential equations 386 (WTW 386) - Credits: 18.00
- Continuum mechanics 387 (WTW 387) - Credits: 18.00
- Geometry 389 (WTW 389) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Human Genetics (02133409)

**Minimum duration of study**                      3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

##### Mathematics

##### Physical Science

##### APS

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Human Genetics), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level



**English Home  
Language or  
English First  
Additional  
Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
4	D	4	D	4	D

**26**

**Other programme-specific information**

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor’s degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student’s responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

**Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study,

retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students intend applying for **MBChB**, or **BChD** selection, have to enrol for FIL 155(6), MGW 112(6) and MTL 180(12) with the understanding that they defer doing WTW 134 in the first semester, however, should they not be selected and want to continue with a BSc programme, WTW 165 must be taken in the **second** semester of the first year.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00





General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00  
Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00  
Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00  
Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00  
Mathematics 165 (WTW 165) - Credits: 16.00  
Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 144

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00  
Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212) - Credits: 12.00  
Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222) - Credits: 12.00  
Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 72

Elective modules = 72

### Additional information:

#### Single major track:

- Electives must be chosen from BCM 356, BCM 357, BCM 367, BCM 368, BOT 365, BTC 361, FAR 381, FAR 382, MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 364, MBY 365.

#### Dual major track:

- **Genetics and Human Physiology combination:** Students must take FLG 327, FLG 330, FLG 331, FLG 332 (72 credits)

### Core modules

Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00  
Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00  
Population and evolutionary genetics 367 (GTS 367) - Credits: 18.00  
Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00



### Elective modules

- Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00
- Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00
- Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00
- Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00
- Phytomedicine 365 (BOT 365) - Credits: 18.00
- Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00
- Pharmacology 381 (FAR 381) - Credits: 18.00
- Pharmacology 382 (FAR 382) - Credits: 18.00
- Higher neurological functions 327 (FLG 327) - Credits: 18.00
- Cellular and developmental physiology 330 (FLG 330) - Credits: 18.00
- Exercise and nutrition science 331 (FLG 331) - Credits: 18.00
- Applied and pathophysiology 332 (FLG 332) - Credits: 18.00
- Virology 351 (MBY 351) - Credits: 18.00
- Bacterial genetics 355 (MBY 355) - Credits: 18.00
- Genetic manipulation of microbes 364 (MBY 364) - Credits: 18.00
- Microbe interactions 365 (MBY 365) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Human Physiology (02133408)

**Minimum duration of study**                      3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

##### Mathematics

##### Physical Science

##### APS

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Human Physiology), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.



## BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

#### Mathematics

#### Physical Science

#### APS

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	APS
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.



## Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students intending to apply for the MBChB, or the BChD places that become available in the second semester, may only enrol for FIL 155(6), MGW 112(6) and MTL 180(12) with the understanding that:

- they obtained an APS of at least 34 and passed grade 12 Mathematics with at least 70%; and
- they may defer doing WTW 134 in the first semester, however, should they not be selected and want to continue with a BSc programme, WTW 165 must be taken in the second semester of the first year.

**Please note:** ANA modules can only be taken by BSc (Medical Science) students.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00



Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00  
Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00  
General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00  
General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00  
Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00  
Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00  
Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00  
Mathematics 165 (WTW 165) - Credits: 16.00  
Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 120

Elective modules = 24

#### Additional information:

##### Single major track:

Electives must be chosen from BOT 251, BOT 261, CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284, CMY 285, MBY 251, MBY 261, ZEN 251, ZEN 261.

##### Dual major track:

- **Human Physiology and Biochemistry combination:** Students must take MBY 251 and 261.
- **Human Physiology and Chemistry combination:** Please discuss options with Head of the Department of Physiology.
- **Human Physiology and Genetics combination:** Students must take MBY 251 and MBY 261.
- **Human Physiology and Microbiology combination:** Students must replace BCM 262 with MBY 262. Students must take MBY 251 and MBY 261.
- **Human Physiology and Pharmacology combination:** No 200-level prerequisites for 300-level Pharmacology modules, students must register for other 200-level elective modules (24 credits).
- **Human Physiology and Plant Science combination:** Please discuss options with Head of the Department of Plant and Soil Sciences.
- **Human Physiology and Zoology combination:** Please discuss options with Head of the Department of Zoology.

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00  
Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212) - Credits: 12.00  
Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222) - Credits: 12.00



Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00

Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00

Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00

Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00

Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00

Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00

Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00

Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00

Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00

African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 72

Elective modules = 72

### Additional information:

#### Single major track:

- Electives in the third year must be chosen from the listed Biochemistry, Chemistry, Genetics, Microbiology, Plant science, Zoology or a combination of Pharmacology and Biochemistry and/or Genetics modules.
- NOTE: Students interested in pursuing postgraduate studies in occupational health and safety must take FLG 322 Industrial Physiology (18 credits). The balance of their elective credits may be chosen from 300-level modules in Biochemistry or Genetics or a combination of Pharmacology (FAR 381 and 382) and Biochemistry and/or Genetics.
- Any other student interested in the field of occupational health and safety may take FLG 322 as an elective.

#### Dual major track:

- **Human Physiology and Biochemistry combination:** Students must take BCM 356, BCM 357, BCM 367, BCM 368.
- **Human Physiology and Chemistry combination:** Please discuss options with Head of the Department of Physiology.
- **Human Physiology and Genetics combination:** Students must take GTS 351, GTS 354, GTS 367, GTS 368.
- **Human Physiology and Microbiology combination:** Students must take MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 364, MBY 365.
- **Human Physiology and Pharmacology combination:** Students must take FAR 381 and 382 combined with 300-level modules in Biochemistry and/or Genetics to a total of 72 credits.
- **Human Physiology and Plant Science combination:** Please discuss options with Head of the Department of Plant and Soil Sciences.
- **Human Physiology and Zoology combination:** Please discuss options with Head of the Department of Zoology.
- NOTE: Students interested in pursuing postgraduate studies in occupational health and safety must also take FLG 322 Industrial Physiology (18 credits). In order to obtain the degree with a dual major in any of the above,



the stipulated electives must be taken. Any student interested in the field of occupational health and safety may also take FLG 322 as an elective.

### Core modules

- Higher neurological functions 327 (FLG 327) - Credits: 18.00
- Cellular and developmental physiology 330 (FLG 330) - Credits: 18.00
- Exercise and nutrition science 331 (FLG 331) - Credits: 18.00
- Applied and pathophysiology 332 (FLG 332) - Credits: 18.00

### Elective modules

- Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00
- Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00
- Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00
- Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00
- Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00
- Physical chemistry 382 (CMY 382) - Credits: 18.00
- Analytical chemistry 383 (CMY 383) - Credits: 18.00
- Organic chemistry 384 (CMY 384) - Credits: 18.00
- Inorganic chemistry 385 (CMY 385) - Credits: 18.00
- Pharmacology 381 (FAR 381) - Credits: 18.00
- Pharmacology 382 (FAR 382) - Credits: 18.00
- Industrial physiology 322 (FLG 322) - Credits: 18.00
- Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00
- Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00
- Population and evolutionary genetics 367 (GTS 367) - Credits: 18.00
- Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00
- Virology 351 (MBY 351) - Credits: 18.00
- Bacterial genetics 355 (MBY 355) - Credits: 18.00
- Genetic manipulation of microbes 364 (MBY 364) - Credits: 18.00
- Microbe interactions 365 (MBY 365) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology (02133396)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

**Minimum requirements**  
**Achievement level**



**English Home Language or English First Additional Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
5	C	5	C	5	C

**32**

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc - Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

**BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home**

**Language or**

**English First**

**Additional**

**Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
4	D	4	D	4	D

**26**

**Other programme-specific information**

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and



400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### **Pass with distinction**

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

Minimum credits: 140

Core modules = 128

Fundamental modules = 12

### **Additional information:**



- Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.
- Students intend applying for **MBChB**, or **BChD** selection, have to enrol for FIL 155(6), MGW 112(6) and MTL 180(12) with the understanding that they defer doing WTW 134 in the first semester, however, should they not be selected and want to continue with a BSc programme, WTW 165 must be taken in the **second** semester of the first year.
- Students intending to apply for the **BVSc** selection have to enrol for MTL 180(12).
- **Please note:** ANA modules can **only** be taken by BSc (Medical Science) students.

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

Psychology 110 (SLK 110) - Credits: 12.00

Psychology 120 (SLK 120) - Credits: 12.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 148

Core modules = 148

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00

Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211) - Credits: 12.00

Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212) - Credits: 12.00

Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221) - Credits: 12.00

Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222) - Credits: 12.00

Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

Psychology 210 (SLK 210) - Credits: 20.00

Psychology 220 (SLK 220) - Credits: 20.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 138

Core modules = 138



### Additional information:

- Students who intend applying for the BSocSciHons (Psychology) programme must complete SLK 320.
- Students intend to applying for BScHons (Genetics) must complete the module GTS 367 in their third year.
- Please note that these modules are no longer listed as electives, as they have to be enrolled for non-degree purposes.

### Core modules

- Higher neurological functions 327 (FLG 327) - Credits: 18.00
- Exercise and nutrition science 331 (FLG 331) - Credits: 18.00
- Applied and pathophysiology 332 (FLG 332) - Credits: 18.00
- Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00
- Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00
- Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00
- Psychology 310 (SLK 310) - Credits: 30.00

## BSc Mathematical Statistics (02133274)

**Minimum duration of study**                      3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

English Home Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	6	B	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Mathematical Statistics), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Mathematical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

### BSc - Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level



<b>English Home Language or English First Additional Language</b>		<b>Mathematics</b>		<b>APS</b>
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	5	C	<b>28</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.



## General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core = 108

Elective = 44 /32

Electives should be chosen as follows:

- Students in Mathematical Statistics who also want to be trained for the Mathematics industry should choose from WTW 123 (8), 115 (8), 152 (8), 162 (8), COS 132 (16) and COS 122 (16) or 151 (8).
- Students in Mathematical Statistics who also want to be trained for the Insurance industry and/or Econometrics, should choose: WTW 152 (8), WTW 123 (8), IAS 111 (6), 121 (6), EKN 110 (10), 120 (10), and either FBS 110 (10), 120 (10) or FBS 112 (10), 122 (10).
- Students in Mathematical Statistics with other career requirements, choose modules from any other subject/faculty to meet their specific needs.

## Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

## Core modules

[Mathematical statistics 111](#) (WST 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematical statistics 121](#) (WST 121) - Credits: 16.00

[Calculus 114](#) (WTW 114) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 124](#) (WTW 124) - Credits: 16.00



### Elective modules

Operating systems 122 (COS 122) - Credits: 16.00  
Imperative programming 132 (COS 132) - Credits: 16.00  
Introduction to computer science 151 (COS 151) - Credits: 8.00  
Economics 110 (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00  
Economics 120 (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00  
Financial management 110 (FBS 110) - Credits: 10.00  
Financial management 112 (FBS 112) - Credits: 10.00  
Financial management 120 (FBS 120) - Credits: 10.00  
Financial management 122 (FBS 122) - Credits: 10.00  
Actuarial and Financial Mathematics in practice 111 (IAS 111) - Credits: 6.00  
Actuarial and Financial Mathematics in practice 121 (IAS 121) - Credits: 6.00  
Discrete structures 115 (WTW 115) - Credits: 8.00  
Numerical analysis 123 (WTW 123) - Credits: 8.00  
Mathematical modelling 152 (WTW 152) - Credits: 8.00  
Dynamical processes 162 (WTW 162) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 140

Core = 108

Elective = 32

#### Elective Modules (Credits = 44)

- Students in Mathematical Statistics who also want to be trained for the Mathematics industry should choose from WTW 264 (12), WTW 286 (12), 285 (12) and 248 (12).
- Students in Mathematical Statistics who also want to be trained for the Insurance Industry should choose IAS 211 (12) IAS 221 (12), IAS 282 (12)
- Students in Mathematical Statistics who also want to be trained for the Econometrics industry should choose: EKN 214(16), EKN 224 (16).
- Students in Mathematical Statistics with other career requirements, may choose modules from any other subject/faculty to meet their specific needs but should consult with the Department of Statistics in this regard.

### Core modules

Mathematical statistics 211 (WST 211) - Credits: 24.00  
Applications in data science 212 (WST 212) - Credits: 12.00  
Mathematical statistics 221 (WST 221) - Credits: 24.00  
Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Calculus 218 (WTW 218) - Credits: 12.00  
Analysis 220 (WTW 220) - Credits: 12.00  
Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

Economics 214 (EKN 214) - Credits: 16.00  
Economics 224 (EKN 224) - Credits: 16.00  
Financial mathematics 211 (IAS 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Contingencies 221 (IAS 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Financial mathematics 282 (IAS 282) - Credits: 12.00



Vector analysis 248 (WTW 248) - Credits: 12.00  
Differential equations 264 (WTW 264) - Credits: 12.00  
Discrete structures 285 (WTW 285) - Credits: 12.00  
Differential equations 286 (WTW 286) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 140

Core = 86

Elective = 54

#### Additional Information:

- Students in Mathematical Statistics who also want to be trained for the Mathematics industry should choose two of the following: WTW 310 (18), 320 (18), 354 (18), 364 (18), 381 (18), 382 (18), 383 (18), 386 (18), 387 (18), 389 (18).
- Students in Mathematical Statistics who also want to be trained for the Insurance industry should choose WTW 354 (18), WTW 364 (18) and WST 322 (18).
- Students in Mathematical Statistics who also want to be trained for the Econometrics industry should choose three of the following: EKN 310 (20), 320 (20), 314 (20), 325 (20) or WST 322 (18).
- Students in Mathematical Statistics with other career requirements, may choose modules from any other subject/faculty to meet their specific needs but should consult with the Department of Statistics in this regard.

#### Core modules

Statistics 320 (STK 320) - Credits: 25.00  
The science of data analytics 353 (STK 353) - Credits: 25.00  
Multivariate analysis 311 (WST 311) - Credits: 18.00  
Stochastic processes 312 (WST 312) - Credits: 18.00

#### Elective modules

Economics 310 (EKN 310) - Credits: 20.00  
Economics 314 (EKN 314) - Credits: 20.00  
Economics 320 (EKN 320) - Credits: 20.00  
Economics 325 (EKN 325) - Credits: 20.00  
Survival models 382 (IAS 382) - Credits: 18.00  
Actuarial statistics 322 (WST 322) - Credits: 18.00  
Analysis 310 (WTW 310) - Credits: 18.00  
Complex analysis 320 (WTW 320) - Credits: 18.00  
Financial engineering 354 (WTW 354) - Credits: 18.00  
Financial engineering 364 (WTW 364) - Credits: 18.00  
Algebra 381 (WTW 381) - Credits: 18.00  
Dynamical systems 382 (WTW 382) - Credits: 18.00  
Numerical analysis 383 (WTW 383) - Credits: 18.00  
Partial differential equations 386 (WTW 386) - Credits: 18.00  
Continuum mechanics 387 (WTW 387) - Credits: 18.00  
Geometry 389 (WTW 389) - Credits: 18.00

### BSc Mathematics (02133263)



**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

**Contact** Prof R Anguelov [roumen.anguelov@up.ac.za](mailto:roumen.anguelov@up.ac.za) +27 (0)124202520

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

English Home Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	6	B	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Mathematics), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Mathematical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

#### BSc - Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home Language or English First Additional Language

English Home Language or English First Additional Language		Mathematics		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	5	C	<b>28</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in





this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### **Pass with distinction**

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a



subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 138

Fundamental = 12

Core = 96

Elective = 30

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

**Choose electives according to the following combinations with a view to pursuing specialisation in the relevant field:**

**Physics:** PHY 114 & PHY 124 (32 credits)

**Chemistry:** CMY 117 & CMY 127 (32 credits)

**Economics:** EKN 110, EKN 120 and one of FRK 111 or OBS 114 or FBS 112 (30 credits)

**Students who want to take other electives must consult the Undergraduate Programme Coordinator in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.**

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Mathematical statistics 111](#) (WST 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematical statistics 121](#) (WST 121) - Credits: 16.00

[Calculus 114](#) (WTW 114) - Credits: 16.00

[Discrete structures 115](#) (WTW 115) - Credits: 8.00

[Numerical analysis 123](#) (WTW 123) - Credits: 8.00

[Mathematics 124](#) (WTW 124) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematical modelling 152](#) (WTW 152) - Credits: 8.00

[Dynamical processes 162](#) (WTW 162) - Credits: 8.00

### Elective modules

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Economics 110](#) (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00

[Economics 120](#) (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial management 112](#) (FBS 112) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial accounting 111](#) (FRK 111) - Credits: 10.00

[Business management 114](#) (OBS 114) - Credits: 10.00

[First course in physics 114](#) (PHY 114) - Credits: 16.00

[First course in physics 124](#) (PHY 124) - Credits: 16.00



## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 132

Core = 84

Elective = 48

### Additional information:

**Choose electives according to the following combinations with a view to pursuing specialisation in the relevant field:**

**Physics:** PHY 255 & PHY 263 (48 credits)

**Chemistry:** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284 & CMY 285 (48 credits)

**Economics:** EKN 214, EKN 224 & EKN 234 (48 credits)

**Statistics:** WST 211 & WST 221 (48 credits)

**Students who want to take other electives must consult the Undergraduate Programme Coordinator in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.**

### Core modules

Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00

Calculus 218 (WTW 218) - Credits: 12.00

Analysis 220 (WTW 220) - Credits: 12.00

Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221) - Credits: 12.00

Vector analysis 248 (WTW 248) - Credits: 12.00

Discrete structures 285 (WTW 285) - Credits: 12.00

Differential equations 286 (WTW 286) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00

Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00

Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00

Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00

Economics 214 (EKN 214) - Credits: 16.00

Economics 224 (EKN 224) - Credits: 16.00

Economics 234 (EKN 234) - Credits: 16.00

Waves, thermodynamics and modern physics 255 (PHY 255) - Credits: 24.00

General physics 263 (PHY 263) - Credits: 24.00

Mathematical statistics 211 (WST 211) - Credits: 24.00

Mathematical statistics 221 (WST 221) - Credits: 24.00

Differential equations 256 (WTW 256) - Credits: 8.00

Calculus 258 (WTW 258) - Credits: 8.00

Numerical methods 263 (WTW 263) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 72

Elective = 72

### Additional information:



Students may choose modules from Physics, Chemistry, Economics, Mathematical Statistics, Applied Mathematics and Financial Mathematics.

1. Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Physics should take PHY 356 & PHY 364.
2. Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Chemistry should take CMY 382, CMY 383, CMY 384 & CMY 385.
3. Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Economics should take EKN 310, EKN 320, EKN 325 & WTW 383.
4. Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Mathematical Statistics should take WST 311, WST 312, WST 321, WST 322 & STK 353.
5. Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Applied Mathematics should take WTW 382, WTW 386, WTW 383 & WTW 387.
6. Students who wish to pursue an honours degree in Financial Mathematics should take WTW 354 & WTW 364, and two modules from WST 311, WST 312, WST 321 & WST 322.

**Students who want to take other electives must consult the Undergraduate Programme Coordinator in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.**

#### Core modules

- [Analysis 310](#) (WTW 310) - Credits: 18.00
- [Complex analysis 320](#) (WTW 320) - Credits: 18.00
- [Algebra 381](#) (WTW 381) - Credits: 18.00
- [Geometry 389](#) (WTW 389) - Credits: 18.00

#### Elective modules

- [Physical chemistry 382](#) (CMY 382) - Credits: 18.00
- [Analytical chemistry 383](#) (CMY 383) - Credits: 18.00
- [Organic chemistry 384](#) (CMY 384) - Credits: 18.00
- [Inorganic chemistry 385](#) (CMY 385) - Credits: 18.00
- [Economics 310](#) (EKN 310) - Credits: 20.00
- [Economics 320](#) (EKN 320) - Credits: 20.00
- [Economics 325](#) (EKN 325) - Credits: 20.00
- [Electronics, electromagnetism and quantum mechanics 356](#) (PHY 356) - Credits: 36.00
- [Statistical mechanics, solid state physics and modelling 364](#) (PHY 364) - Credits: 36.00
- [The science of data analytics 353](#) (STK 353) - Credits: 25.00
- [Multivariate analysis 311](#) (WST 311) - Credits: 18.00
- [Stochastic processes 312](#) (WST 312) - Credits: 18.00
- [Time-series analysis 321](#) (WST 321) - Credits: 18.00
- [Actuarial statistics 322](#) (WST 322) - Credits: 18.00
- [Financial engineering 354](#) (WTW 354) - Credits: 18.00
- [Financial engineering 364](#) (WTW 364) - Credits: 18.00
- [Dynamical systems 382](#) (WTW 382) - Credits: 18.00
- [Numerical analysis 383](#) (WTW 383) - Credits: 18.00
- [Partial differential equations 386](#) (WTW 386) - Credits: 18.00
- [Continuum mechanics 387](#) (WTW 387) - Credits: 18.00



## BSc Medical Sciences (02133407)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Medical Sciences), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or

otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

## Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.



- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 142

Fundamental = 12

Core = 130

#### Additional information:

- Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.
- Students intend applying for MBChB, or BChD selection, have to enrol for MGW 112(6) and MTL 180(12) with the understanding that they defer doing WTW 134 in the first semester, however, should they not be selected and want to continue with a BSc programme, WTW 165 must be taken in the second semester of the first year.
- **Please note:** Students who have not passed all the first year, first-semester modules in BSc MedSci are excluded from continuing with BSc MedSci in the second semester and need to change to another BSc programme.

#### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

#### Core modules

Introduction: Human anatomy and embryology 121 (ANA 121) - Credits: 4.00

Human osteology 122 (ANA 122) - Credits: 4.00

Basic human histology 126 (ANA 126) - Credits: 4.00

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Science and world views 155 (FIL 155) - Credits: 6.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 165 (WTW 165) - Credits: 16.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144



Core modules = 96  
Elective modules = 48

#### Additional information:

- **FLG option:** 48 credits, GTS option: 48 credits, FAR option: same as FLG option
- **ANA + FLG option:** First semester FLG 211 (12) and FLG 212 (12) second semester FLG 221 (12) and FLG 222 (12)
- **ANA + GTS option:** First semester GTS 251 (12) and MBY 251 (12), second semester GTS 261 (12) and MBY 261 (12)
- **ANA + FLG/FAR option only in Final year:** Same as FLG option

#### Core modules

Human cell and developmental biology 214 (ANA 214) - Credits: 12.00

Paleoanthropology 215 (ANA 215) - Credits: 12.00

Human histology 226 (ANA 226) - Credits: 12.00

Human anatomy Part 1 247 (ANA 247) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00

Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00

#### Elective modules

Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211) - Credits: 12.00

Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212) - Credits: 12.00

Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221) - Credits: 12.00

Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222) - Credits: 12.00

Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00

Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

#### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 72

Elective modules = 72

#### Additional information:

Elective credits:

- **FLG option:** 72 credits, GTS option: 72 credits, FLG/FAR option: 72 credits
- **ANA + FLG option:** First semester FLG 330 (18) and FLG 327 (18), second semester FLG 331 (18) and FLG 332 (18)
- **ANA+ GTS option:** First semester GTS 351 (18) and GTS 354 (18), second semester GTS 367 (18) and GTS 368 (18)
- **ANA+ FLG/FAR option:** First semester FLG 330 (18) and FAR 381 (18), second semester FLG 331 (18) or FLG 332 (18) and FAR 382 (18)

#### Core modules

Forensic anthropology 315 (ANA 315) - Credits: 18.00





- Cell and tissue techniques 316 (ANA 316) - Credits: 18.00
- Human cell and developmental biology 324 (ANA 324) - Credits: 18.00
- Human anatomy Part 2 347 (ANA 347) - Credits: 18.00

**Elective modules**

- Pharmacology 381 (FAR 381) - Credits: 18.00
- Pharmacology 382 (FAR 382) - Credits: 18.00
- Higher neurological functions 327 (FLG 327) - Credits: 18.00
- Cellular and developmental physiology 330 (FLG 330) - Credits: 18.00
- Exercise and nutrition science 331 (FLG 331) - Credits: 18.00
- Applied and pathophysiology 332 (FLG 332) - Credits: 18.00
- Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00
- Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00
- Population and evolutionary genetics 367 (GTS 367) - Credits: 18.00
- Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00

**BSc Meteorology (02133313)**

**Minimum duration of study**                      3 years

**Admission requirements**

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home**

**Language or**

**English First**

**Additional**

**Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	APS
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Meteorology), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Physical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

**BSc - Extended Programme - Physical Sciences**

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**



**English Home  
Language or  
English First  
Additional  
Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
4	D	4	D	4	D

**28**

## Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

## Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits



for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 134

Fundamental	=	12
Core	=	106
Electives	=	16

### Additional information:

- Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.
- Students must select elective modules to the value of at least 16 credits. Depending on a student's interests, the following combinations of modules are recommended:
- Meteorology students who also want to be train in **Geography or Geoinformatics** usually choose from GGY 156 (8), GGY 166 (8) and ENV 101 (8).
- Additionally students who are interested in **Mathematics and Applied Mathematics** normally choose from WTW 115 (8), WTW 152 (8) and WTW 162 (8)
- Meteorology students who are interested in **Mathematical Statistics** choose from WST 111 (16) and WST 121\* (16): Both required to continue with WST at second-year level.)
- Students in Meteorology may choose modules from any other subject/faculty to meet their specific needs

### \*Prerequisite required

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00



Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

Cartography 110 (GMC 110) - Credits: 10.00

First course in physics 114 (PHY 114) - Credits: 16.00

First course in physics 124 (PHY 124) - Credits: 16.00

Atmospheric structure and processes 155 (WKD 155) - Credits: 16.00

Calculus 114 (WTW 114) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 164 (WTW 164) - Credits: 16.00

### Elective modules

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introduction to environmental sciences 101 (ENV 101) - Credits: 8.00

Aspects of human geography 156 (GGY 156) - Credits: 8.00

Southern African geomorphology 166 (GGY 166) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to geology 155 (GLY 155) - Credits: 16.00

Earth history 163 (GLY 163) - Credits: 16.00

Cartography 110 (GMC 110) - Credits: 10.00

Exploring the universe 154 (SCI 154) - Credits: 16.00

Mechanics 122 (SWK 122) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematical statistics 111 (WST 111) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematical statistics 121 (WST 121) - Credits: 16.00

Discrete structures 115 (WTW 115) - Credits: 8.00

Mathematical modelling 152 (WTW 152) - Credits: 8.00

Dynamical processes 162 (WTW 162) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 136

Core = 88

Elective = 48

### Additional information:

Students must select elective modules to the value of at least 48 credits. Depending on a student's interests, the following combinations of modules are recommended:

- Meteorology students who also want to be trained in Geography or Geoinformatics usually choose from GGY 252\* (12), GGY 201 (12), ENV 201\* (12) GGY 283\* (14) and SUR 220\* (14)
- Meteorology students who are interested in Mathematics and Applied Mathematics normally choose from WTW 211\* (12), WTW 221\* (12), WTW 285\*(12), WTW 286\* (12) or WTW 264\* (12)
- Meteorology students who are interested in Mathematical Statistics choose from WST 211\* (24) and WST 221\* (24)
- Meteorology students who also want to be trained in Physics should choose from PHY 255\* (24) and PHY 263\* (24)
- Students in Meteorology may choose modules from any other subject/faculty to meet their specific needs.



## \*Prerequisites required

### Core modules

Environmental sciences 201 (ENV 201) - Credits: 12.00  
Geographic data analysis 220 (GIS 220) - Credits: 14.00  
Remote sensing 220 (GMA 220) - Credits: 14.00  
Programming in meteorology 254 (WKD 254) - Credits: 12.00  
Physical meteorology 261 (WKD 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Differential equations 256 (WTW 256) - Credits: 8.00  
Calculus 258 (WTW 258) - Credits: 8.00  
Numerical methods 263 (WTW 263) - Credits: 8.00

### Elective modules

Environmental sciences 201 (ENV 201) - Credits: 12.00  
City, structure, environment and society 201 (GGY 201) - Credits: 12.00  
Process geomorphology 252 (GGY 252) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory geographic information systems 283 (GGY 283) - Credits: 14.00  
Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00  
Remote sensing 220 (GMA 220) - Credits: 14.00  
Waves, thermodynamics and modern physics 255 (PHY 255) - Credits: 24.00  
General physics 263 (PHY 263) - Credits: 24.00  
Surveying 220 (SUR 220) - Credits: 14.00  
Mathematical statistics 211 (WST 211) - Credits: 24.00  
Mathematical statistics 221 (WST 221) - Credits: 24.00  
Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Differential equations 264 (WTW 264) - Credits: 12.00  
Discrete structures 285 (WTW 285) - Credits: 12.00  
Differential equations 286 (WTW 286) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 126

Core = 108

Elective = 18

### Additional information:

- Depending on a student's second major and other interests, the following modules are recommended:
- Meteorology students who also want to be trained in Geography usually choose from GGY 301 (18), GGY 363\* (12)
- Meteorology students who also want to be trained in Geoinformatics usually choose from GMA 320\* (22), GMC 310\* (22), GIS 310\* (22), GIS 311\* (22) and GIS 320\* (22),
- Meteorology students who are interested in Mathematics and Applied Mathematics normally choose from WTW 382\* (18 credits), WTW 383\* (18 credits), WTW 386\* (18 credits) or WTW 387\* (18 credits)
- Meteorology students who are interested in Mathematical Statistics choose WST 311\* (18) and WST 321\* (18)
- Meteorology students who also want to be trained in Physics should choose from PHY 356\* (36), PHY 364\* (36)
- Students in Meteorology may choose modules from any other subject/faculty to meet their specific needs.

\*Prerequisites required



### Core modules

- Human environmental interactions 301 (ENV 301) - Credits: 18.00
- Atmospheric balance laws 351 (WKD 351) - Credits: 18.00
- Atmospheric vorticity and divergence 352 (WKD 352) - Credits: 18.00
- Quasi-geostrophic analysis 361 (WKD 361) - Credits: 18.00
- Fundamentals of weather forecasting 366 (WKD 366) - Credits: 36.00

### Elective modules

- Theories and applications of human geography 301 (GGY 301) - Credits: 18.00
- Applied geomorphology 363 (GGY 363) - Credits: 12.00
- Geoinformatics 311 (GIS 311) - Credits: 22.00
- Spatial analysis 320 (GIS 320) - Credits: 22.00
- Soil chemistry 320 (GKD 320) - Credits: 14.00
- Remote sensing 320 (GMA 320) - Credits: 22.00
- Geometrical and space geodesy 310 (GMC 310) - Credits: 22.00
- Electronics, electromagnetism and quantum mechanics 356 (PHY 356) - Credits: 36.00
- Statistical mechanics, solid state physics and modelling 364 (PHY 364) - Credits: 36.00
- Principles of veld management 310 (WDE 310) - Credits: 12.00
- Multivariate analysis 311 (WST 311) - Credits: 18.00
- Time-series analysis 321 (WST 321) - Credits: 18.00
- Numerical analysis 383 (WTW 383) - Credits: 18.00
- Partial differential equations 386 (WTW 386) - Credits: 18.00
- Continuum mechanics 387 (WTW 387) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Microbiology (02133404)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

#### Mathematics

#### Physical Science

#### APS

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for



admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Microbiology), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

### **BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

#### **Minimum requirements**

#### **Achievement level**

#### **English Home**

#### **Language or**

#### **English First**

#### **Additional**

#### **Language**

		<b>Mathematics</b>		<b>Physical Science</b>		<b>APS</b>
<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	<b>NSC/IEB</b>	<b>AS Level</b>	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### **Other programme-specific information**

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor’s degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student’s responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the

prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

## Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### General promotion requirements in the faculty

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

**Additional information:** Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students intend applying for **MBChB**, or **BChD** selection, have to enrol for FIL 155(6), MGW 112(6) and MTL 180(12) with the understanding that:

- they defer doing WTW 134 in the first semester, however, should they not be selected and want to continue with a BSc programme, WTW 165 must be taken in the **second** semester of the first year.

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00





Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 165 (WTW 165) - Credits: 16.00

Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 144

#### Additional information:

##### Single major track:

- **Applied Microbiology option:** ZEN 251 may be replaced with FST 250. Students may replace ZEN 261 and/or BOT 261 with either PLG 262 or FST 260 or BCM 262.
- **Medical Microbiology option:** Students must replace ZEN 251 and BOT 251 with FLG 211 and FLG 212. Students must replace ZEN 261 and BOT 261 with FLG 221 and FLG 222.

##### Dual major track:

- **Microbiology and Biochemistry combination:** Students must replace ZEN 251 and BOT 251 with CMY 282 and CMY 284. Students must replace ZEN 261 and BOT 261 with CMY 283 and BCM 262.
- **Microbiology and Genetics combination:** Students may replace ZEN 261 with PLG 262.
- **Microbiology and Plant Science option:** Students may replace ZEN 261 with PLG 262.

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00

South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00

Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00

Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00

Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00

Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00

African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00



### Elective modules

- Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00  
Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00  
Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212) - Credits: 12.00  
Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222) - Credits: 12.00  
Introduction to food science and technology 250 (FST 250) - Credits: 12.00  
Principles of food processing and preservation 260 (FST 260) - Credits: 12.00  
Principles of plant pathology 262 (PLG 262) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 72

Elective modules = 72

#### Additional information:

##### Single major track:

- **Applied Microbiology option:** Students may select electives from BCM 356, BCM 357, BOT 356, BOT 358, GTS 351, GTS 354, PLG 351, ZEN 355, BCM 367, BCM 368, BOT 365, BTC 361, FST 362, GTS 367 or ZEN 365.
- **Medical Microbiology option:** Students may select electives from BCM 356, BCM 357, BCM 367, BCM 368, GTS 351, GTS 354, GTS 367 or GTS 368.
- *Students can only take a module if they comply with all the prerequisites.*

##### Dual major track:

- **Microbiology and Biochemistry combination:** Students must take BCM 356, BCM 357, BCM 367 and BCM 368.
- **Microbiology and Genetics combination:** Students must take GTS 351, GTS 354, GTS 367 and either GTS 368 or BTC 361.
- **Microbiology and Plant Science option:** Students must take BOT 356, BOT 358, BOT 365 and BTC 361.

### Core modules

- Virology 351 (MBY 351) - Credits: 18.00  
Bacterial genetics 355 (MBY 355) - Credits: 18.00  
Genetic manipulation of microbes 364 (MBY 364) - Credits: 18.00  
Microbe interactions 365 (MBY 365) - Credits: 18.00

### Elective modules

- Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00  
Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00  
Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00  
Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00  
Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00  
Plant ecology 358 (BOT 358) - Credits: 18.00  
Phytomedicine 365 (BOT 365) - Credits: 18.00  
Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00  
Advanced animal and plant foods microbiology 362 (FST 362) - Credits: 18.00



Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00

Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00

Population and evolutionary genetics 367 (GTS 367) - Credits: 18.00

Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00

General plant pathology 351 (PLG 351) - Credits: 18.00

Insect diversity 355 (ZEN 355) - Credits: 18.00

Applied entomology 365 (ZEN 365) - Credits: 18.00

## **BSc Nutrition (02133322)**

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

### **Programme information**

The BSc (Nutrition) degree programme is offered by the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences. Students are, however, enrolled for modules in both the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences and the Faculty of Health Sciences.

It is expected of students following the Public Health Nutrition option to undergo internship training. The module FNH 480 will be administered by the Department of Human Nutrition in the Faculty of Health Sciences

Also consult the General Regulations.

### **Admission requirements**

- The closing date is an administrative admission guideline for non-selection programmes. Once a non-selection programme is full and has reached the institutional targets, then that programme will be closed for further admissions, irrespective of the closing date. However, if the institutional targets have not been met by the closing date, then that programme will remain open for admissions until the institutional targets are met.
- The following persons will be considered for admission: candidates who are in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required National Senior Certificate with university endorsement, candidates who are graduates from another tertiary institution or have been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and candidates who are graduates of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded from the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on Grade 12 results.
- Please note that the Faculty does not accept GED and School of Tomorrow qualifications for entry into our programmes.

### **Transferring students**

#### **Candidates previously registered at UP or at another university**

The faculty's Admissions Committee considers applications of candidates who have already completed the final NSC or equivalent qualification examination and/or were previously registered at UP or another university, on grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.

#### **Candidates previously registered at a FET college or a university of technology**

The faculty's Admissions Committee considers the application of these candidates on the grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.

#### **Qualifications from countries other than South Africa**



- Citizens from countries other than South Africa and South African citizens with foreign qualifications must comply with all the other admission requirements and the prerequisites for subjects/modules.
- In addition to meeting the admission requirements, admission is based on the performance in the **TOEFL, IELTS, SAT or Institutional Proficiency Test** (currently **NBT**), if required.
- Candidates must have completed the National Senior Certificate with admission to degree studies or a certificate of conditional exemption on the basis of a candidate’s foreign qualifications, the so-called “Immigrant” or “Foreign Conditional Exemption”. The only condition for the “Foreign Conditional Exemption” that is accepted is: ‘completion of the degree course’. The exemption certificate is obtainable from Universities South Africa (USAf). Detailed information is available on the website at [click here](#).

**University of Pretoria website:** [click here](#)

**National Benchmark Test website:** [click here](#)

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Sciences		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the Cambridge system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

\* International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the IB system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Nutrition), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Biological and Agricultural Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

### BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Sciences		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please



refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed



in writing.

- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 132

#### Minimum credits: 132

Fundamental = 12

Core = 120

#### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

#### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

#### Core modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Introduction to food, nutrition and health 121](#) (FNH 121) - Credits: 8.00

[Introductory genetics 161](#) (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Introduction to microbiology 161](#) (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Molecular and cell biology 111](#) (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Physics for biology students 131](#) (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 147

#### Minimum credits: 147

Core modules = 147

#### Core modules

[Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251](#) (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

[Carbohydrate metabolism 252](#) (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

[Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261](#) (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00



Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211) - Credits: 12.00  
Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212) - Credits: 12.00  
Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222) - Credits: 12.00  
Human nutrition 210 (HNT 210) - Credits: 20.00  
Human nutrition 220 (HNT 220) - Credits: 20.00

### Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 120

#### Minimum credits: 120

Core modules = 120

#### Core modules

Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00  
Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00  
Food and nutrition security 320 (FNH 320) - Credits: 8.00  
Food chemistry 351 (FST 351) - Credits: 18.00  
Food chemistry (2) 352 (FST 352) - Credits: 18.00  
Nutritional assessment 314 (NTA 314) - Credits: 22.00  
Food composition and applied nutritional programmes 364 (VWV 364) - Credits: 18.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 142

#### Minimum credits: 142

Core modules = 142

#### Core modules

Biometry 210 (BME 210) - Credits: 24.00  
Research project 400 (FNH 400) - Credits: 40.00  
Advanced food, nutrition and health 420 (FNH 420) - Credits: 20.00  
International nutrition 421 (FNH 421) - Credits: 20.00  
Research methodology and seminar 400 (FST 400) - Credits: 20.00  
Advanced human nutrition 411 (HNT 411) - Credits: 10.00

## BSc Physics (02133203)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of



such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.

- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>34</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Physics), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Physical Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

### BSc - Extended Programme - Physical Sciences

#### Minimum requirements

#### Achievement level

#### English Home

#### Language or

#### English First

#### Additional

#### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>28</b>

## Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.



It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.



## Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core = 64

Electives = 64

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students must select elective modules with a total number of at least 64 credits according to the following streams. (Deviations allowed with permission from the head of department):

- **Mathematics as second major:** Due to the modules prescribed for the BSc (Physics) module, taking mathematics as a second major in 3<sup>rd</sup> year is possible for all options. Please select one of the options below.
- **Second major in applied mathematics or mathematical statistics:** WTW 115, WTW 152, WTW 162, WTW 123, WST 111, WST 121 (64 credits)
- **Second major in chemistry or applied mathematics:** CMY 117, CMY 127, WTW 162, WTW 123, WTW 115, WTW 152 (64 credits)
- **Second major in chemistry or mathematical statistics:** CMY 117, CMY 127, WST 111, WST 121 (64 credits)
- **Second major in chemistry or geology:** CMY 117, CMY 127, GLY 155, GLY 163 (64 credits)
- **Second major in chemistry or meteorology:** CMY 117, CMY 127, WKD 155, WTW 123, WTW 162 (64 credits).
- **Second major in chemistry with interest in biophysics:** CMY 117, CMY 127, MLB 111, GTS 161, BOT 161 (64 credits)
- **Second major in chemistry with interest in astronomy:** CMY 117, CMY 127, WTW 162, WTW 123, SCI 154 (64 credits)
- **Second major in applied mathematics with an interest in astronomy:** WTW 115, WTW 152, WTW 162, WTW 123, SCI 154, COS 132 (64 credits) note: semesters unbalanced - Year credits: S1:80, S2: 48
- **Computational physics:** WTW 123, COS 132, COS 110, COS 122, COS 151 (64 credits note: semesters unbalanced - Year credits: S1:56, S2: 72)

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[First course in physics 114](#) (PHY 114) - Credits: 16.00

[First course in physics 124](#) (PHY 124) - Credits: 16.00

[Calculus 114](#) (WTW 114) - Credits: 16.00



Mathematics 124 (WTW 124) - Credits: 16.00

### Elective modules

Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Program design: Introduction 110 (COS 110) - Credits: 16.00

Operating systems 122 (COS 122) - Credits: 16.00

Imperative programming 132 (COS 132) - Credits: 16.00

Introduction to computer science 151 (COS 151) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to geology 155 (GLY 155) - Credits: 16.00

Earth history 163 (GLY 163) - Credits: 16.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Exploring the universe 154 (SCI 154) - Credits: 16.00

Atmospheric structure and processes 155 (WKD 155) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematical statistics 111 (WST 111) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematical statistics 121 (WST 121) - Credits: 16.00

Discrete structures 115 (WTW 115) - Credits: 8.00

Numerical analysis 123 (WTW 123) - Credits: 8.00

Mathematical modelling 152 (WTW 152) - Credits: 8.00

Dynamical processes 162 (WTW 162) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 96

Elective = 48

### Additional information:

Students must select elective modules with a total number of at least 48 credits according to the following streams (deviations allowed with permission from the head of department):

- **Mathematics as second major:** Due to the modules prescribed for the BSc (Physics) module, taking mathematics as a second major in 3<sup>rd</sup> year is possible for all options.
- **Second major applied mathematics:** WTW 285, WTW 286, WTW 221 (36 credits - an additional 12 credits will have to be taken in 2<sup>nd</sup> or 3<sup>rd</sup> year. PHY 353, PHY 363 or additional 3<sup>rd</sup> year mathematics module recommended).
- **Second major statistics:** WST 211, WST 221 (48 credits)
- **Second major in chemistry:** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284, CMY 285 (48 credits).
- **Second major in geology:** GLY 253, GLY 255, GLY 261, GLY 262 (48 credits).
- **Second major in meteorology:** WKD 261, WKD 263, WKD 254 (**permission from HOD Required**), WTW 286 (48 credits). (Q: **GMA 220 instead of WKD 254**)
- **Interest in astronomy:** PHY 210, WTW 221, WTW 286 (48 credits) **note:** semester unbalanced: Year credits S1: 60, S2: 84)
- **Interest in computational physics:** COS 210, COS 212, COS 226, COS 284 (56 credits) **note:** 24 + 32 = 56 credits = excess of 8 credits in second semester.



## Core modules

Waves, thermodynamics and modern physics 255 (PHY 255) - Credits: 24.00

General physics 263 (PHY 263) - Credits: 24.00

Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211) - Credits: 12.00

Calculus 218 (WTW 218) - Credits: 12.00

Analysis 220 (WTW 220) - Credits: 12.00

Vector analysis 248 (WTW 248) - Credits: 12.00

## Elective modules

Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00

Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00

Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00

Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00

Theoretical computer science 210 (COS 210) - Credits: 8.00

Data structures and algorithms 212 (COS 212) - Credits: 16.00

Concurrent systems 226 (COS 226) - Credits: 16.00

Computer organisation and architecture 284 (COS 284) - Credits: 16.00

Process geomorphology 252 (GGY 252) - Credits: 12.00

Geomorphology of the built environment 265 (GGY 265) - Credits: 12.00

Geographic data analysis 220 (GIS 220) - Credits: 14.00

Sedimentology 253 (GLY 253) - Credits: 12.00

Fundamental and applied mineralogy 255 (GLY 255) - Credits: 12.00

Igneous petrology 261 (GLY 261) - Credits: 12.00

Metamorphic petrology 262 (GLY 262) - Credits: 12.00

Remote sensing 220 (GMA 220) - Credits: 14.00

Astronomy for physicists 210 (PHY 210) - Credits: 24.00

Programming in meteorology 254 (WKD 254) - Credits: 12.00

Physical meteorology 261 (WKD 261) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to dynamic meteorology 263 (WKD 263) - Credits: 12.00

Mathematical statistics 211 (WST 211) - Credits: 24.00

Mathematical statistics 221 (WST 221) - Credits: 24.00

Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221) - Credits: 12.00

Differential equations 256 (WTW 256) - Credits: 8.00

Discrete structures 285 (WTW 285) - Credits: 12.00

Differential equations 286 (WTW 286) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core = 72

Elective = 72

## Additional information:

**Students who want to register PHY 353 and PHY 363 must make sure, before registration, that a suitable project and supervisor has been confirmed with the head of department,**

Students must select elective modules with a total number of at least 72 credits from the following streams (deviations allowed with permission from the head of department):



- **Mathematics as second major:** WTW 310, WTW 320, WTW 381 and WTW 389 (72 credits).
- **Applied Mathematics as second major:** WTW 310, WTW 382, WTW 383 and WTW 386 and WTW 387 (90 credits)\*.
- **Mathematical statistics as second major:** WST 311, WST 312, WST 321, STK 353 (79 credits) Unbalanced: 36 + 43
- **Chemistry as second major:** CMY 382, CMY 383, CMY 384, CMY 385 (72 credits).
- **Geology as second major:** GLY 365, GLY 366 and GLY 367 (72 credits)
- **Meteorology as second major:** WKD 352, WKD 361, WKD 366 (72 credits) **note:** unbalanced semester: S1: 0, S2: 72
- **Interest in computational physics:** COS 314, COS 344, COS 333, COS 330 (72 credits).

\* **All 5 modules are required if a student wishes to continue with BScHons Applied Mathematics, otherwise a selection of modules with a total number of 72 credits may be made.**

### Core modules

Electronics, electromagnetism and quantum mechanics 356 (PHY 356) - Credits: 36.00

Statistical mechanics, solid state physics and modelling 364 (PHY 364) - Credits: 36.00

### Elective modules

Physical chemistry 382 (CMY 382) - Credits: 18.00

Analytical chemistry 383 (CMY 383) - Credits: 18.00

Organic chemistry 384 (CMY 384) - Credits: 18.00

Inorganic chemistry 385 (CMY 385) - Credits: 18.00

Artificial intelligence 314 (COS 314) - Credits: 18.00

Computer security and ethics 330 (COS 330) - Credits: 18.00

Programming languages 333 (COS 333) - Credits: 18.00

Computer graphics 344 (COS 344) - Credits: 18.00

Structural geology 365 (GLY 365) - Credits: 18.00

Groundwater 366 (GLY 366) - Credits: 18.00

Economic geology 367 (GLY 367) - Credits: 36.00

Observational astronomy 300 (PHY 300) - Credits: 36.00

Particle and astroparticle physics 310 (PHY 310) - Credits: 18.00

Physics project 353 (PHY 353) - Credits: 12.00

Physics project 363 (PHY 363) - Credits: 12.00

The science of data analytics 353 (STK 353) - Credits: 25.00

Atmospheric vorticity and divergence 352 (WKD 352) - Credits: 18.00

Quasi-geostrophic analysis 361 (WKD 361) - Credits: 18.00

Fundamentals of weather forecasting 366 (WKD 366) - Credits: 36.00

Multivariate analysis 311 (WST 311) - Credits: 18.00

Stochastic processes 312 (WST 312) - Credits: 18.00

Time-series analysis 321 (WST 321) - Credits: 18.00

Analysis 310 (WTW 310) - Credits: 18.00

Complex analysis 320 (WTW 320) - Credits: 18.00

Algebra 381 (WTW 381) - Credits: 18.00

Dynamical systems 382 (WTW 382) - Credits: 18.00

Numerical analysis 383 (WTW 383) - Credits: 18.00

Partial differential equations 386 (WTW 386) - Credits: 18.00

Continuum mechanics 387 (WTW 387) - Credits: 18.00



Geometry 389 (WTW 389) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Plant Science (02133405)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Plant Science), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc – Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### Other programme-specific information

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year



within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.



- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### Pass with distinction

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

#### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

#### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

#### Core modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Introductory genetics 161](#) (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Introduction to microbiology 161](#) (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Molecular and cell biology 111](#) (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Physics for biology students 131](#) (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

[Animal diversity 161](#) (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Students are required to select their elective modules on the basis of a chosen subject stream within the broader discipline of Plant Science. The choice of streams is as follows: Biodiversity (ecology & taxonomy), Medicinal Plant Science, Plant Pathology or a dual major in Plant Science and Biochemistry or Plant Science and Microbiology or Genetics. It is possible to register for other modules and configurations at the discretion of the relevant head of department and as long as the timetable permits.

**Biodiversity stream:** GKD 250, GIS 221, MBY 251 and 261, ZEN 251 and 261; plus (Sem 2) 12 credits: PLG 262 or PPK 251





**Medicinal Plant Science stream:** BCM 252 and 261, MBY 251 and 261; plus

(Sem 1) 12 credits (select one): CMY 284, PLG 251, ZEN 251

(Sem 2) 24 credits (select two): CMY 283, BCM 262, MBY 262 or GIS 221

**Plant Pathology stream;** MBY 251 and 261, PLG 251 and 262; plus

(Sem 1) 12 credits (select one) :BCM 252 or GKD 250

(Sem 2) 24 credits (select two): BCM 261, GIS 221, PPK 251 or MBY 262

**Plant Science in dual major with Microbiology or Genetics:** BCM 252 and 261, MBY 251, 261 and 262; plus

(Sem 1) 12 credits (select one): ZEN 251 or PLG 251

(Sem 2) 12 credits (select one): BCM 262, PLG 262 or ZEN 261

**Plant Science in dual major with Biochemistry:** BCM 252, 261 and 262, CMY 282, 283, 284 and 285.

### Core modules

[Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251](#) (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

[South African flora and vegetation 251](#) (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00

[Plant physiology and biotechnology 261](#) (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00

[Molecular genetics 251](#) (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

[Genetic diversity and evolution 261](#) (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Elective modules

[Carbohydrate metabolism 252](#) (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

[Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261](#) (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00

[Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262](#) (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00

[Physical chemistry 282](#) (CMY 282) - Credits: 12.00

[Analytical chemistry 283](#) (CMY 283) - Credits: 12.00

[Organic chemistry 284](#) (CMY 284) - Credits: 12.00

[Inorganic chemistry 285](#) (CMY 285) - Credits: 12.00

[Geographic information systems introduction 221](#) (GIS 221) - Credits: 12.00

[Introductory soil science 250](#) (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00

[Bacteriology 251](#) (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00

[Mycology 261](#) (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

[Food microbiology 262](#) (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00

[Introduction to crop protection 251](#) (PLG 251) - Credits: 12.00

[Principles of plant pathology 262](#) (PLG 262) - Credits: 12.00

[Sustainable crop production and agroclimatology 251](#) (PPK 251) - Credits: 15.00

[Invertebrate biology 251](#) (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00

[African vertebrates 261](#) (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 90

Elective modules = 54

### Additional information:

**Specialisation in Plant ecology:** Students take suitable elective modules in the first semester and ZEN 364 (18 credits) in the second semester.

**Specialisation in Plant Pathology:** In the first semester, select PLG 351 and one module from [MBY 351 or MBY 355], and in the second semester, select PLG 363 and replace [BOT 365 or BOT 366] with ZEN 365.



## Dual major

**Plant Science and Biochemistry:** Replace BTC 361 in order to take BCM 356, BCM 357, BCM 367 and BCM 368.

**Plant Science and Genetics:** Select GTS 351, GTS 354 and GTS 367. Students may also choose to replace BOT 366 with GTS 368.

**Plant Science and Microbiology:** Replace BOT 366 in order to take MBY 351, MBY 355, MBY 364 and MBY 365.

## Core modules

Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00

Plant ecology 358 (BOT 358) - Credits: 18.00

Phytomedicine 365 (BOT 365) - Credits: 18.00

Plant diversity 366 (BOT 366) - Credits: 18.00

Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00

## Elective modules

Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00

Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00

Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00

Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00

Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00

Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00

Population and evolutionary genetics 367 (GTS 367) - Credits: 18.00

Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00

Virology 351 (MBY 351) - Credits: 18.00

Bacterial genetics 355 (MBY 355) - Credits: 18.00

Genetic manipulation of microbes 364 (MBY 364) - Credits: 18.00

Microbe interactions 365 (MBY 365) - Credits: 18.00

General plant pathology 351 (PLG 351) - Credits: 18.00

Plant disease control 363 (PLG 363) - Credits: 18.00

Insect diversity 355 (ZEN 355) - Credits: 18.00

Conservation ecology 364 (ZEN 364) - Credits: 18.00

Applied entomology 365 (ZEN 365) - Credits: 18.00

## BSc Zoology (02133399)

**Minimum duration of study** 3 years

## Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

## Minimum requirements Achievement level



**English Home  
Language or  
English First  
Additional  
Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
5	C	5	C	5	C

**32**

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BSc (Zoology), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme -- Biological and Agricultural Sciences. The BSc - Extended programme takes a year longer than the normal programme to complete.

**BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home**

**Language or**

**English First**

**Additional**

**Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
4	D	4	D	4	D

**26**

**Other programme-specific information**

A student must pass all the minimum prescribed and elective module credits as set out at the end of each year within a programme as well as the total required credits to comply with the particular degree programme. Please refer to the curricula of the respective programmes. At least 144 credits must be obtained at 300-/400-level, or otherwise as indicated by curriculum. The minimum module credits needed to comply with degree requirements is set out at the end of each study programme. Subject to the programmes as indicated a maximum of 150 credits will be recognised at 100-level. A student may, in consultation with the relevant head of department and subject to the permission by the Dean, select or replace prescribed module credits not indicated in BSc three-year study programmes to the equivalent of a maximum of 36 module credits.

It is important that the total number of prescribed module credits is completed during the course of the study programme. The Dean may, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations in this regard. Subject to the programmes as indicated in the respective curricula, a student may not register for more than 75 module credits per semester at first-year level subject to permission by the Dean. A student may be permitted to register for up to 80 module credits in a the first semester during the first year provided that he or she obtained a final mark of no less than 70% for grade 12 Mathematics and achieved an APS of 34 or more in the NSC.

Students who are already in possession of a bachelor's degree, will not receive credit for modules of which the content overlap with modules from the degree that was already conferred. Credits will not be considered for more than half the credits passed previously for an uncompleted degree. No credits at the final-year or 300- and 400-level will be granted.

The Dean may, on the recommendation of the programme manager, approve deviations with regard to the composition of the study programme.

Please note: Where elective modules are not specified, these may be chosen from any modules appearing in the list of modules.

It remains the student's responsibility to ascertain, prior to registration, whether they comply with the prerequisites of the modules they want to register for.

The prerequisites are listed in the Alphabetical list of modules.

### **Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

### **General promotion requirements in the faculty**

All students whose academic progress is not acceptable can be suspended from further studies.

- A student who is excluded from further studies in terms of the stipulations of the abovementioned regulations, will be notified in writing by the Dean or Admissions Committee at the end of the relevant semester.
- A student who has been excluded from further studies may apply in writing to the Admissions Committee of the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences for re-admission.
- Should the student be re-admitted by the Admissions Committee, strict conditions will be set which the student must comply with in order to proceed with his/her studies.
- Should the student not be re-admitted to further studies by the Admissions Committee, he/she will be informed in writing.
- Students who are not re-admitted by the Admissions Committee have the right to appeal to the Senate Appeals Committee.
- Any decision taken by the Senate Appeals Committee is final.

### **Pass with distinction**

A student obtains his or her degree with distinction if all prescribed modules at 300-level (or higher) are passed in one academic year with a weighted average of at least 75%, and obtain at least a subminimum of 65% in each of the relevant modules.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental modules = 12

Core modules = 128

### **Additional information:**

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.



## Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00  
Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00  
Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00  
Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00  
Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

## Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00  
Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00  
General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00  
General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00  
Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00  
Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00  
Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00  
Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00  
Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 132

Elective modules = 12

### Additional information:

- Students interested in combining with Zoology in a dual major with Biochemistry or Genetics must take BCM 261 as an elective.
- Students interested in combining Zoology in a dual major with Biochemistry must also replace either BOT 261 or MBY 261 with BCM 262.

## Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00  
South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Geographic information systems introduction 221 (GIS 221) - Credits: 12.00  
Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00  
Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251) - Credits: 12.00  
African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261) - Credits: 12.00

## Elective modules

Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00  
Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00  
Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00  
Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262) - Credits: 12.00



Introduction to crop protection 251 (PLG 251) - Credits: 12.00

Principles of plant pathology 262 (PLG 262) - Credits: 12.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 144

Core modules = 144

### Additional information:

#### Single major track:

- Students must take all eight modules listed in the fixed curriculum for the final year.

#### Dual major track:

- **Zoology and Biochemistry combination:** Students must take [ZEN 352 + ZEN 354] and [ZEN 361 + ZEN 363] to a total value of 72 credits, and must take [BCM 356 and BCM 357] and [BCM 367 and BCM 368].
- **Zoology and Genetics combination:** Students must take [ZEN 352 + ZEN 354] and [ZEN 361 + ZEN 363] to a total value of 72 credits, and must take [GTS 351 and GTS 354] and [GTS 367 and either GTS 368 or BTC 361] to a value of 72 credits.
- **Zoology and Plant Science combination:** Students must take [ZEN 352 + ZEN 354] and [ZEN 362 + ZEN 353] to a total value of 72 credits, and must take [BOT 356 and BOT 358] and [BOT 366 and either BOT 365 or BTC 361] to a value of 72 credits.

### Core modules

Population ecology 351 (ZEN 351) - Credits: 18.00

Mammalogy 352 (ZEN 352) - Credits: 18.00

Community ecology 353 (ZEN 353) - Credits: 18.00

Evolutionary physiology 354 (ZEN 354) - Credits: 18.00

Physiological processes 361 (ZEN 361) - Credits: 18.00

Evolution and phylogeny 362 (ZEN 362) - Credits: 18.00

Behavioural ecology 363 (ZEN 363) - Credits: 18.00

Conservation ecology 364 (ZEN 364) - Credits: 18.00

### Elective modules

Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356) - Credits: 18.00

Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357) - Credits: 18.00

Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367) - Credits: 18.00

Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368) - Credits: 18.00

Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00

Plant ecology 358 (BOT 358) - Credits: 18.00

Phytomedicine 365 (BOT 365) - Credits: 18.00

Plant diversity 366 (BOT 366) - Credits: 18.00

Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00

Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351) - Credits: 18.00

Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354) - Credits: 18.00

Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368) - Credits: 18.00

## BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management (02133410)



**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

**Contact** Mrs RM Ngwenya [rose.ngwenya@up.ac.za](mailto:rose.ngwenya@up.ac.za) +27 (0)124202653

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

#### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BScAgric (Agricultural Economics/ Agribusiness Management), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

#### BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences

##### Minimum requirements

##### Achievement level

##### English Home

##### Language or

##### English First

##### Additional

##### Language

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

### Other programme-specific information



## Compilation of curriculum

Students must register for elective modules in consultation with the head of department who must ensure that the modules do not clash on the set timetable.

The Dean may, in exceptional cases and on recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations from the prescribed curriculum.

## Promotion to next study year

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

## Pass with distinction

The BScAgric degree is conferred with distinction if a student obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in the modules of the major subjects in the third and the fourth year of study, with a weighted average of at least 65% in the other modules of the third and the fourth year of study.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 122

Fundamental = 12

Core = 110

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students who do not qualify for STK 110 must register for STK 113 and STK 123

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Financial accounting 111](#) (FRK 111) - Credits: 10.00

[Financial accounting 121](#) (FRK 121) - Credits: 12.00

[Introductory genetics 161](#) (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Molecular and cell biology 111](#) (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

[Animal diversity 161](#) (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00





## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 125

### Core modules

Economics 110 (EKN 110) - Credits: 10.00

Economics 120 (EKN 120) - Credits: 10.00

Introduction to food science and technology 250 (FST 250) - Credits: 12.00

Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to agricultural economics 210 (LEK 210) - Credits: 12.00

Agricultural economics 220 (LEK 220) - Credits: 12.00

Sustainable crop production and agroclimatology 251 (PPK 251) - Credits: 15.00

Statistics 122 (STC 122) - Credits: 13.00

Statistics 110 (STK 110) - Credits: 13.00

Animal science 250 (VKU 250) - Credits: 8.00

Animal science 260 (VKU 260) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 132

### Core modules

Communication 421 (AGV 421) - Credits: 16.00

Business law 210 (BER 210) - Credits: 16.00

Economics 224 (EKN 224) - Credits: 16.00

Economics 244 (EKN 244) - Credits: 16.00

Agricultural economics 310 (LEK 310) - Credits: 12.00

Agricultural economics 320 (LEK 320) - Credits: 16.00

Statistics 210 (STK 210) - Credits: 20.00

Statistics 220 (STK 220) - Credits: 20.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 143

Core = 123

Electives = 20

### Core modules

Agriculture and rural development studies 480 (ARD 480) - Credits: 32.00

Economics 310 (EKN 310) - Credits: 20.00

Agricultural market and price analysis 410 (LEK 410) - Credits: 20.00

Agricultural economics 415 (LEK 415) - Credits: 16.00

Agricultural economics 421 (LEK 421) - Credits: 20.00

Introduction to resource economics 424 (LEK 424) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Vegetable crops 410 (AGR 410) - Credits: 15.00

Economics 320 (EKN 320) - Credits: 20.00

Principles and practices 351 (HSC 351) - Credits: 14.00

Statistics 310 (STK 310) - Credits: 25.00



Statistics 320 (STK 320) - Credits: 25.00

The science of data analytics 353 (STK 353) - Credits: 25.00

Principles of veld management 310 (WDE 310) - Credits: 12.00

Planted pastures and fodder crops 320 (WDE 320) - Credits: 12.00

Wildlife science 420 (WKE 420) - Credits: 8.00

## **BScAgric Animal Science (02133411)**

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

### **Admission requirements**

- The closing date is an administrative admission guideline for non-selection programmes. Once a non-selection programme is full and has reached the institutional targets, then that programme will be closed for further admissions, irrespective of the closing date. However, if the institutional targets have not been met by the closing date, then that programme will remain open for admissions until the institutional targets are met.
- The following persons will be considered for admission: candidates who are in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required National Senior Certificate with university endorsement, candidates who are graduates from another tertiary institution or have been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and candidates who are graduates of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded from the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on Grade 12 results.
- Please note that the Faculty does not accept GED and School of Tomorrow qualifications for entry into our programmes.

### **Transferring students**

- **Candidates previously registered at UP or at another university**
  - The faculty's Admissions Committee considers applications of candidates who have already completed the final NSC or equivalent qualification examination and/or were previously registered at UP or another university, on grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.
- **Candidates previously registered at a FET college or a university of technology**
  - The faculty's Admissions Committee considers the application of these candidates on the grounds of their final NSC or equivalent qualification results as well as academic merit.

### **Qualifications from countries other than South Africa**

- Citizens from countries other than South Africa and South African citizens with foreign qualifications must comply with all the other admission requirements and the prerequisites for subjects/modules.
- Candidates must have completed the National Senior Certificate with admission to degree studies or a certificate of conditional exemption on the basis of a candidate's foreign qualifications, the so-called "Immigrant" or "Foreign Conditional Exemption". The only condition for the "Foreign Conditional Exemption" that is accepted is: 'completion of the degree course'. The exemption certificate is obtainable from Universities South Africa (USAf). Detailed information is available on the website at [click here](#).

**University of Pretoria website:** [click here](#)

**National Benchmark Test website:** [click here](#)

**Minimum requirements  
Achievement level**



**English Home Language or English First Additional Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Sciences**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
5	C	5	C	5	C

**32**

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the Cambridge system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

\* International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. Students in the IB system must offer both Physics AND Chemistry with performance at the level specified for NSC Physical Sciences in the table above.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BScAgric (Animal Science), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

**BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home Language or English First Additional Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Sciences**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
4	D	4	D	4	D

**26**

**Other programme-specific information**

**Compilation of curriculum**

Students must register for elective modules in consultation with the head of department who must ensure that the modules do not clash on the set timetable.

The Dean may, in exceptional cases and on recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations from the prescribed curriculum.

**Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

Only students who have completed all prescribed second- and third-year level modules will be admitted to the final year of study.



## Pass with distinction

The BScAgric degree is conferred with distinction if a student obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in the modules of the major subjects in the third and the fourth year of study, with a weighted average of at least 65% in the other modules of the third and the fourth year of study.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core modules = 128

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students intending to apply for the **BVSc** selection have to enrol for MTL 180(12).

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 147

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252) - Credits: 12.00

Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261) - Credits: 12.00

Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262) - Credits: 12.00

Animal anatomy and physiology 200 (DAF 200) - Credits: 32.00

Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00

Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

Sustainable crop production and agroclimatology 251 (PPK 251) - Credits: 15.00

Animal science 250 (VKU 250) - Credits: 8.00



Animal science 260 (VKU 260) - Credits: 8.00

### Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 140

#### Core modules

Biometry 210 (BME 210) - Credits: 24.00

Animal physiology 311 (DFS 311) - Credits: 10.00

Growth physiology 320 (DFS 320) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to agricultural economics 210 (LEK 210) - Credits: 12.00

Reproduction science 310 (RPL 310) - Credits: 8.00

Reproduction science 320 (RPL 320) - Credits: 10.00

Animal breeding 320 (TLR 320) - Credits: 12.00

Nutrition science 310 (VGE 310) - Credits: 14.00

Nutrition science 320 (VGE 320) - Credits: 14.00

Principles of veld management 310 (WDE 310) - Credits: 12.00

Planted pastures and fodder crops 320 (WDE 320) - Credits: 12.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 133

#### Additional Information:

Only students who have **completed** all prescribed second- and third-year level modules will be admitted to the final year of study.

#### Core modules

Large stock nutrition and production 420 (GVK 420) - Credits: 18.00

Small stock nutrition and production 420 (KVK 420) - Credits: 18.00

Poultry nutrition and production 420 (PVK 420) - Credits: 18.00

Animal breeding 411 (TLR 411) - Credits: 12.00

Applied animal breeding 420 (TLR 420) - Credits: 12.00

Monogastric nutrition and production 411 (VGE 411) - Credits: 16.00

Research methodology 400 (VKU 400) - Credits: 16.00

Meat and dairy science 420 (VSX 420) - Credits: 8.00

Advanced pasture science 450 (WDE 450) - Credits: 15.00

## BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences (02133431)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the



Grade 12 results.

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home**

**Language or**

**English First**

**Additional**

**Language**

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
5	C	5	C	5	C	<b>32</b>

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BScAgric (Applied Plant and Soil Sciences), may be considered for admission to the BSc – Extended programme – Biological and Agricultural Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

**BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home**

**Language or**

**English First**

**Additional**

**Language**

		Mathematics		Physical Science		APS
NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	
4	D	4	D	4	D	<b>26</b>

**Other programme-specific information**

**Compilation of curriculum**

Students must register for elective modules in consultation with the head of department who must ensure that the modules do not clash on the set timetable.

The Dean may, in exceptional cases and on recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations from the prescribed curriculum.

**Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.

**Pass with distinction**

The BScAgric degree is conferred with distinction if a student obtains a weighted average of at least



75% in the modules of the major subjects in the third and the fourth year of study, with a weighted average of at least 65% in the other modules of the third and the fourth year of study.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core modules = 128

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

Students intending to apply for the **BVSc** selection have to enrol for MTL 180(12).

### Fundamental modules

[Academic information management 102](#) (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic information management 111](#) (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

[Academic information management 121](#) (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

[Language and study skills 110](#) (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

[Academic orientation 102](#) (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

[Biometry 120](#) (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

[Plant biology 161](#) (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

[General chemistry 117](#) (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

[General chemistry 127](#) (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

[Introductory genetics 161](#) (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Introduction to microbiology 161](#) (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

[Molecular and cell biology 111](#) (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

[Physics for biology students 131](#) (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematics 134](#) (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

[Animal diversity 161](#) (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 135

### Core modules

[Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251](#) (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

[South African flora and vegetation 251](#) (BOT 251) - Credits: 12.00

[Plant physiology and biotechnology 261](#) (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00

[Introductory soil science 250](#) (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00

[Molecular genetics 251](#) (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

[Genetic diversity and evolution 261](#) (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

[Introduction to agricultural economics 210](#) (LEK 210) - Credits: 12.00

[Agricultural economics 220](#) (LEK 220) - Credits: 12.00

[Introduction to crop protection 251](#) (PLG 251) - Credits: 12.00

[Principles of plant pathology 262](#) (PLG 262) - Credits: 12.00

[Sustainable crop production and agroclimatology 251](#) (PPK 251) - Credits: 15.00



## Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 148

### Core modules

- Field crops 361 (AGR 361) - Credits: 14.00
- Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00
- Soil chemistry 320 (GKD 320) - Credits: 14.00
- Soil classification and surveying 350 (GKD 350) - Credits: 14.00
- Principles and practices 351 (HSC 351) - Credits: 14.00
- Soil-water relationship and irrigation 350 (PGW 350) - Credits: 14.00
- Plant disease control 363 (PLG 363) - Credits: 18.00
- Principles of veld management 310 (WDE 310) - Credits: 12.00
- Planted pastures and fodder crops 320 (WDE 320) - Credits: 12.00
- Applied entomology 365 (ZEN 365) - Credits: 18.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 150

### Core modules

- Vegetable crops 410 (AGR 410) - Credits: 15.00
- Crop physiology 461 (APS 461) - Credits: 15.00
- Statistics for biological sciences 410 (BME 410) - Credits: 15.00
- Soil fertility, soil microbiology and plant nutrition 420 (GKD 420) - Credits: 15.00
- Fruit tree crops 420 (HSC 420) - Credits: 15.00
- Ornamental horticulture 490 (HSC 490) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental biophysics 450 (LKM 450) - Credits: 15.00
- Weed science 413 (OKW 413) - Credits: 15.00
- Seminar 400 (PGW 400) - Credits: 15.00
- Advanced pasture science 450 (WDE 450) - Credits: 15.00

## BScAgric Plant Pathology (02133433)

**Minimum duration of study** 4 years

### Admission requirements

- The following persons will be considered for admission: a candidate who is in possession of a certificate that is deemed by the University to be equivalent to the required Grade 12 certificate with university endorsement, a candidate who is a graduate from another tertiary institution or has been granted the status of a graduate of such an institution, and a candidate who is a graduate of another faculty at the University of Pretoria.
- Life Orientation is excluded in the calculation of the Admission Point Score (APS).
- Grade 11 results are used for the conditional admission of prospective students. Final admission is based on the Grade 12 results.

### Minimum requirements Achievement level





**English Home Language or English First Additional Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
5	C	5	C	5	C

**32**

\* Cambridge A level candidates who obtained at least a D in the required subjects, will be considered for admission. International Baccalaureate (IB) HL candidates who obtained at least a 4 in the required subjects, will be considered for admission.

Candidates who do not comply with the minimum admission requirements for BScAgric (Plant Pathology), may be considered for admission to the BSc - Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences. This programme takes a year longer than the normal programmes to complete.

**BSc - Extended Programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences**

**Minimum requirements**

**Achievement level**

**English Home Language or English First Additional Language**

**Mathematics**

**Physical Science**

**APS**

NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level	NSC/IEB	AS Level
4	D	4	D	4	D

**26**

**Other programme-specific information**

Electives are chosen as follows:

Third year - 12 credits

**Compilation of curriculum**

Students must register for elective modules in consultation with the head of department who must ensure that the modules do not clash on the set timetable.

The Dean may, in exceptional cases and on recommendation of the relevant head of department, approve deviations from the prescribed curriculum.

**Promotion to next study year**

A student will be promoted to the following year of study if he or she passed 100 credits of the prescribed credits for a year of study, unless the Dean on the recommendation of the relevant head of department decides otherwise. A student who does not comply with the requirements for promotion to the following year of study, retains the credit for the modules already passed and may be admitted by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, to modules of the following year of study to a maximum of 48 credits, provided that it will fit in with both the lecture and examination timetable.



## Pass with distinction

The BScAgric degree is conferred with distinction if a student obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in the modules of the major subjects in the third and the fourth year of study, with a weighted average of at least 65% in the other modules of the third and the fourth year of study.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits: 140

Fundamental = 12

Core modules = 128

### Additional information:

Students who do not qualify for AIM 102 must register for AIM 111 and AIM 121.

### Fundamental modules

Academic information management 102 (AIM 102) - Credits: 6.00

Academic information management 111 (AIM 111) - Credits: 4.00

Academic information management 121 (AIM 121) - Credits: 4.00

Language and study skills 110 (LST 110) - Credits: 6.00

Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Biometry 120 (BME 120) - Credits: 16.00

Plant biology 161 (BOT 161) - Credits: 8.00

General chemistry 117 (CMY 117) - Credits: 16.00

General chemistry 127 (CMY 127) - Credits: 16.00

Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161) - Credits: 8.00

Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161) - Credits: 8.00

Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111) - Credits: 16.00

Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131) - Credits: 16.00

Mathematics 134 (WTW 134) - Credits: 16.00

Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161) - Credits: 8.00

## Curriculum: Year 2

Minimum credits: 147

### Core modules

Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251) - Credits: 12.00

Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261) - Credits: 12.00

Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250) - Credits: 12.00

Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251) - Credits: 12.00

Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to agricultural economics 210 (LEK 210) - Credits: 12.00

Agricultural economics 220 (LEK 220) - Credits: 12.00

Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251) - Credits: 12.00

Mycology 261 (MBY 261) - Credits: 12.00

Introduction to crop protection 251 (PLG 251) - Credits: 12.00

Principles of plant pathology 262 (PLG 262) - Credits: 12.00



---

Sustainable crop production and agroclimatology 251 (PPK 251) - Credits: 15.00

### Curriculum: Year 3

Minimum credits: 136

#### Core modules

Field crops 361 (AGR 361) - Credits: 14.00

Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356) - Credits: 18.00

Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361) - Credits: 18.00

Principles and practices 351 (HSC 351) - Credits: 14.00

Virology 351 (MBY 351) - Credits: 18.00

Genetic manipulation of microbes 364 (MBY 364) - Credits: 18.00

General plant pathology 351 (PLG 351) - Credits: 18.00

Plant disease control 363 (PLG 363) - Credits: 18.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 145

#### Core modules

Statistics for biological sciences 410 (BME 410) - Credits: 15.00

Weed science 413 (OKW 413) - Credits: 15.00

Seminar 400 (PGW 400) - Credits: 15.00

Research project 462 (PLG 462) - Credits: 28.00

Plant disease epidemiology 463 (PLG 463) - Credits: 18.00

Advanced plant disease control 483 (PLG 483) - Credits: 18.00

Current concepts in plant pathology 490 (PLG 490) - Credits: 18.00

Applied entomology 365 (ZEN 365) - Credits: 18.00



## Honours

### BAgricHons Extension (02241000)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

#### Programme information

The aim of this degree programme is to produce graduates qualified to operate as professional extension or development agents. On completion of the degree the candidate will be able to design, develop and execute or manage scientifically sound situation-specific and community adapted extension or development programmes, conforming to the principles of participatory development with maximum community involvement and impact.

To enable them to do this they should:

- be aware and knowledgeable of the philosophies and the different concepts and approaches of development and extension as well as its organisation and management;
- have an understanding of the principles of human behaviour with specific reference to decision making and behaviour change and the theories involved in understanding and facilitating change;
- be knowledgeable of the theory and practical implementation of community development, group dynamics and leadership for the formulation and execution of development plans;
- have an understanding of the principles of communication and be skilful in the identification and use of the most appropriate communication methods and combinations thereof;
- be knowledgeable and skilled in the development, execution and evaluation of situation-specific extension programmes;
- have the ability to conduct and report a research study under supervision, in a manner that is appropriate to the discipline of the field of study.

#### Admission requirements

- An acceptable bachelor's degree.
- An average of 60% is required for admission.
- An entrance examination is necessary, although exemption may be granted under certain circumstances, as determined by the head of the department.
- Specified ancillary modules, in addition to the honours modules, may be required.

#### Other programme-specific information

A module in Agricultural economics or any other field of specialisation may be included as an elective module, in consultation with the head(s) of department(s).

Elective coursework that may be required will be decided upon by the head(s) of the particular department(s).

Additional required modules as prescribed for the specific fields of specialisation will be jointly determined by the head(s) of the particular department(s) in question.

#### Examinations and pass requirements

In order to obtain the degree, the candidate must achieve a minimum of 50% in each of the prescribed modules.



## Pass with distinction

An average of 75% in all the prescribed modules must be obtained in order to pass the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Additional information:

- A module in Agricultural economics or any other field of specialisation may be included as an elective module, in consultation with the head(s) of department(s).
- Elective coursework that may be required will be decided upon by the head(s) of the particular department(s).
- Additional required modules as prescribed for the specific fields of specialisation will be jointly determined by the head(s) of the particular department(s) in question.

### Core modules

Leadership and group dynamics 712 (AGV 712) - Credits: 20.00

Communication for sustainable rural development 713 (AGV 713) - Credits: 15.00

Principles and approaches of rural development and extension 715 (AGV 715) - Credits: 15.00

Extension programme planning and management 726 (AGV 726) - Credits: 20.00

Extension programme evaluation and research 728 (AGV 728) - Credits: 30.00

Human and organisational behaviour change and management 729 (AGV 729) - Credits: 20.00

Research project: Rural development studies 780 (ARD 780) - Credits: 30.00

## BAgricHons Rural Development (02241002)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

This programme is coordinated in the Department of Agricultural Economics, Extension and Rural Development.

The aim of this programme is to enable graduates to participate in and lead rural development processes and policy initiatives. It provides a broad-based understanding of rural development, including project planning and analysis and strategic management.

### Admission requirements

- An acceptable bachelor's degree.
- An average of 60% is required for admission.
- An entrance examination is necessary, although exemption may be granted under certain circumstances, as determined by the head of the department.
- Specified modules, in addition to the honours modules, may be required, as determined by the head/s of department in the candidate's proposed field of specialisation.

### Examinations and pass requirements

In order to obtain the degree, the candidate must achieve a minimum of 50% in each of the prescribed modules.

## Pass with distinction



An average of 75% in all the prescribed modules must be obtained in order to pass the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Core modules

Communication for sustainable rural development 713 (AGV 713) - Credits: 15.00

Principles and approaches of rural development and extension 715 (AGV 715) - Credits: 15.00

Research project: Rural development studies 780 (ARD 780) - Credits: 30.00

Research project 784 (ARD 784) - Credits: 30.00

Agribusiness management 720 (LEK 720) - Credits: 15.00

Agricultural project planning and appraisal 785 (LEK 785) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Leadership and group dynamics 712 (AGV 712) - Credits: 20.00

## BScAgricHons Crop Science (02241004)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- BScAgric (Applied Plant and Soil Sciences) or an appropriate BSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level or on recommendation from the head of department.

### Other programme-specific information

Electives can be chosen out of the modules listed or any other 700-module that is presented in the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences, chosen in consultation with the Head of Department of Plant and Soil Science.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.



## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 60

Elective credits: 75

### Core modules

Research project in crop science 701 (PGW 701) - Credits: 30.00

Scientific communication 702 (PGW 702) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Crop production systems (I): Field crops 785 (AGR 785) - Credits: 15.00

Crop production systems (II): Vegetable crops 786 (AGR 786) - Credits: 15.00

Crop physiology 761 (APS 761) - Credits: 15.00

Plant nutrition, soil biology and soil fertility 773 (GDK 773) - Credits: 15.00

Fruit tree crops 780 (HSC 780) - Credits: 30.00

Environmental biophysics 750 (LKM 750) - Credits: 15.00

Plant production: Herbicides and control 712 (PPR 712) - Credits: 15.00

Agroforestry 713 (PPR 713) - Credits: 15.00

Rangeland management 781 (WDE 781) - Credits: 15.00

Pasture science 782 (WDE 782) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Actuarial Science (02240278)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- A relevant bachelor's degree with Mathematical Statistics and Actuarial Science at third-year level.
- An average of 60% for all modules at third-year level.
- Exemption recommendations for at least five of the A100- and A200-level subjects of the Actuarial Society of South Africa.
- IAS 361 Insurance and actuarial applications, which is a prerequisite for the core module IAS 712 Liabilities.
- Students from other accredited institutions must comply with the same requirements based on equivalent modules at their institutions.



- In addition, students from other accredited institutions might also be required to pass an entrance evaluation.
- Student numbers are limited.
- Historical performance during prior studies will also be considered in selecting students.

### Other programme-specific information

To qualify for this degree, the candidate must successfully complete a total of at least 135 credits, made up from modules from the curriculum in collaboration with, and subject to, the approval of the Head of the Department of Actuarial Science.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Fundamental credits: 30

Core credits: 75

Elective credit: 30

### Core modules

Actuarial risk management 712 (IAS 712) - Credits: 50.00

Actuarial communication 722 (IAS 722) - Credits: 15.00

Research project 780 (NPN 780) - Credits: 30.00

### Elective modules

Finance and investment 700 (FNI 700) - Credits: 40.00

Enterprise risk management 721 (IAS 721) - Credits: 40.00

Life assurance 700 (LEW 700) - Credits: 40.00

## BScHons Applied Mathematics (02240172)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two





years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

## Admission requirements

- BSc (Mathematics), BSc (Applied Mathematics) or equivalent degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% at final-year level
- The final year should include at least four of the following third-year level modules or equivalent:
  - Partial differential equations
  - Dynamical systems (ordinary differential equations)
  - Real analysis
  - Complex analysis
  - Numerical analysis
  - Continuum mechanics.
- Complete preceding degree will be considered for selection.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the postgraduate coordinator/head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Additional information:

- The programme compilation consists of seven honours modules of 15 credits each as well as the mandatory project (WTW 795 – 30 credits).
- It is required that students select the stream and modules according to the prerequisites of the modules.
- WTW 795 is a compulsory module for both streams.
- The modules to be selected for each stream, are set out below.

### Stream 1: Applied analysis

Core credits: 75 credits

Elective credits: 60 credits

Core modules: WTW 795, WTW 710, WTW 734 and WTW 776

Elective modules: Four (4) electives must be chosen from the list below. The selection must contain at least one of WTW 782 or WTW 764 and at least one of WTW 733 or WTW 763.

### Stream 2: Differential equations and modelling



Core credits: 135 credits

Core modules: WTW 795, WTW 733, WTW 735, WTW 750, WTW 763, WTW 772, WTW 776 and WTW 782.

### Core modules

Functional analysis 710 (WTW 710) - Credits: 15.00

Numerical analysis 733 (WTW 733) - Credits: 15.00

Measure theory and probability 734 (WTW 734) - Credits: 15.00

Main principles of analysis in application 735 (WTW 735) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical optimisation 750 (WTW 750) - Credits: 15.00

Finite element method 763 (WTW 763) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical methods and models 772 (WTW 772) - Credits: 15.00

Partial differential equations of mathematical physics 776 (WTW 776) - Credits: 15.00

Dynamical systems 782 (WTW 782) - Credits: 15.00

Project 795 (WTW 795) - Credits: 30.00

### Elective modules

Special topics 727 (WTW 727) - Credits: 15.00

Numerical analysis 733 (WTW 733) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical optimisation 750 (WTW 750) - Credits: 15.00

Finite element method 763 (WTW 763) - Credits: 15.00

Stochastic calculus 764 (WTW 764) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical methods and models 772 (WTW 772) - Credits: 15.00

Dynamical systems 782 (WTW 782) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Biochemistry (02240701)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% in Biochemistry at third-year level
- Applicants may be subjected to an entrance evaluation examination.



## Other programme-specific information

- A pass mark is required for all the components of the honours programme and the average mark is calculated proportionally to the credits.
- Additional modules can be prescribed to remedy shortcomings in a candidate's undergraduate training.

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Core modules

Trends in biochemical research 771 (BCM 771) - Credits: 15.00

Research project and report 773 (BCM 773) - Credits: 60.00

Research methods 774 (BCM 774) - Credits: 30.00

Advanced biochemistry 775 (BCM 775) - Credits: 15.00

Molecular and cellular biology 721 (MLB 721) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Bioinformatics (02240702)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

## Admission requirements

- Bachelor's degree in Bioinformatics or Biological sciences or Computer science or Computer Engineering or Informatics or Mathematics or Mathematical Statistics, or other bachelor's degrees could be considered.
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department when deemed necessary.

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.



## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 120

Elective credit: 15

### Additional information:

Students with degrees in biological sciences should choose BME 780 as an elective. Students from computer science and other related backgrounds should choose BIF 704. Other additional modules may be prescribed for non-degree purposes to address shortcomings in a candidate's undergraduate training.

### Core modules

Bioinformatics theory and applications 701 (BIF 701) - Credits: 30.00

Trends in bioinformatics and literature seminar 702 (BIF 702) - Credits: 15.00

Research project and report 703 (BIF 703) - Credits: 60.00

Molecular and cellular biology 721 (MLB 721) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Introduction to molecular biology for bioinformatics 704 (BIF 704) - Credits: 15.00

Statistics for biological sciences 780 (BME 780) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Biotechnology (02240393)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

BScHons (Biotechnology) is a unique interdepartmental programme aimed at enabling students to pursue their interest in molecular biotechnology through relevant research areas offered within fields of biochemistry, plant science, microbiology and plant pathology, plant production, as well as genetics. Students within this programme will be registered and will conduct their studies within the department of their choice. A student's choice of research programme will determine which of the respective departments will mentor their honours degree programme.

### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- BSc (Biotechnology) or equivalent degree with the following modules GTS 351, BCM 356 and MBY 364.
- An average of at least 60% at final-year level.



## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Fundamental credit: 16

Core credits: 30

Elective credits: 105

### Additional information:

- The curriculum for the balance of the credits will be determined by the heads of the participating departments.
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary. Honours students may also be required to complete a biometry or equivalent module, if they have not already done so during their undergraduate training.

### Core modules

Biotechnology in the workplace 701 (BTW 701) - Credits: 15.00

Molecular and cellular biology 721 (MLB 721) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Research project and report 773 (BCM 773) - Credits: 60.00

Research methods 774 (BCM 774) - Credits: 30.00

Molecular techniques 705 (BOT 705) - Credits: 15.00

Research report 782 (BOT 782) - Credits: 60.00

Research project 703 (GTK 703) - Credits: 60.00

Research methods 705 (GTK 705) - Credits: 30.00

Research methods 751 (MCP 751) - Credits: 30.00

Research project and literature study 754 (MCP 754) - Credits: 60.00

## BScHons Chemistry (02240123)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.



## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree or on recommendation from the head of department
- At least a final grade point average of 60% Chemistry modules at third-year level.

## Examinations and pass requirements

A final mark of 50% for each module. To continue to a second semester, a minimum of 40% is required in each module in the first semester. The registration of students who do not meet this requirement will be terminated at the end of the first semester.

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Core modules

Analytical chemistry A 706 (CMY 706) - Credits: 10.00

Analytical chemistry B 707 (CMY 707) - Credits: 10.00

Organic chemistry A 708 (CMY 708) - Credits: 10.00

Organic chemistry B 709 (CMY 709) - Credits: 10.00

Inorganic chemistry A 714 (CMY 714) - Credits: 10.00

Inorganic chemistry B 715 (CMY 715) - Credits: 10.00

Physical chemistry A 716 (CMY 716) - Credits: 10.00

Physical chemistry B 717 (CMY 717) - Credits: 10.00

Research: Organic/inorganic project Part 1 718 (CMY 718) - Credits: 20.00

Research: Physical/analytical project Part 2 719 (CMY 719) - Credits: 20.00

Advanced practical techniques 730 (CMY 730) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Engineering Geology (02240375)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.



## Admission requirements

- BSc (Geology) or BSc (Engineering and Environmental Geology)
- At least an average of 60% for all the modules in applied geology at second-year and third-year level
- Modules must include;
- Soil mechanics,
- Rock mechanics,
- Engineering geology,
- Hydrogeology.
- Complete preceding degree will be considered for selection.
- Only limited to 15 positions, candidates who have progressed in the minimum period will take preference.

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 135

## Core modules

Site investigation project 713 (GTX 713) - Credits: 30.00

Engineering geology of South Africa 714 (GTX 714) - Credits: 20.00

Environmental management and risk assessment 716 (GTX 716) - Credits: 20.00

Rock engineering 722 (GTX 722) - Credits: 20.00

Engineering applications 723 (GTX 723) - Credits: 15.00

Fluid mechanics in geological media 725 (GTX 725) - Credits: 20.00

Applied geological field methods 728 (GTX 728) - Credits: 10.00

## BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology (02240376)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.



## Admission requirements

- BSc (Geology) or BSc (Engineering and Environmental Geology)
- At least an average of 60% for all the modules in applied geology at second-year and third-year level
- Modules must include;
- Soil mechanics,
- Rock mechanics,
- Engineering geology,
- Hydrogeology.
- Complete preceding degree will be considered for selection.
- Only limited to 15 positions, candidates who have progressed in the minimum period will take preference.

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 135

### Core modules

Site investigation project 713 (GTX 713) - Credits: 30.00

Engineering geology of South Africa 714 (GTX 714) - Credits: 20.00

Environmental geochemistry 715 (GTX 715) - Credits: 20.00

Environmental management and risk assessment 716 (GTX 716) - Credits: 20.00

Hydrogeological modelling 718 (GTX 718) - Credits: 20.00

Fluid mechanics in geological media 725 (GTX 725) - Credits: 20.00

Applied geological field methods 728 (GTX 728) - Credits: 10.00

## BScHons Entomology (02240704)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.





## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree or on recommendation from the head of department
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary.

## Examinations and pass requirements

A pass mark is required for all the components of the honours study programme.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 81

Elective credits: 54

### Core modules

[Statistics for biological sciences 780](#) (BME 780) - Credits: 15.00

[Research project 701](#) (ZEN 701) - Credits: 68.00

[Research methods and scientific communication 713](#) (ZEN 713) - Credits: 13.00

### Elective modules

[Land reclamation and restoration ecology 791](#) (BOT 791) - Credits: 15.00

[Systematics, evolution and biogeography 703](#) (ZEN 703) - Credits: 13.00

[Environmental physiology 704](#) (ZEN 704) - Credits: 13.00

[Principles in applied ecology 705](#) (ZEN 705) - Credits: 13.00

[Integrated pest management in Africa 707](#) (ZEN 707) - Credits: 13.00

[Mammal ecology 710](#) (ZEN 710) - Credits: 13.00

[Behavioural ecology 712](#) (ZEN 712) - Credits: 13.00

[Insect-plant interactions 782](#) (ZEN 782) - Credits: 13.00

[Global climate change and biodiversity 783](#) (ZEN 783) - Credits: 13.00

[Contemporary research techniques 784](#) (ZEN 784) - Credits: 13.00

## BScHons Financial Engineering (02240277)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under



special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

1. Relevant bachelor's degree
2. At least 60% for all mathematics and applied mathematics modules at final-year level
3. A minimum of 60% each in the following subjects/modules (or equivalent) at second-year level:
  - Calculus
  - Differential equations
  - Linear algebra

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the postgraduate coordinator/head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 91

Elective credits: 44

### The Postgraduate Coordinator has to approve the final programme composition for this programme.

1. Students who have included Statistics, Mathematical Statistics or Industrial Engineering in their undergraduate degree programme, will not be allowed to take BAN 780. Additional modules from the list of electives should be included in the programme composition.
2. Lectures for BAN 780 and ISE 780 are scheduled in "blocks" – consult the relevant departments at the Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology.
3. WTW 732 and WTW 762 will be presented weekly as well as some extra "block" lectures.

### Core modules

[Industrial analysis 780 \(BAN 780\)](#) - Credits: 16.00

[Mathematical models of financial engineering 732 \(WTW 732\)](#) - Credits: 15.00

[Mathematical optimisation 750 \(WTW 750\)](#) - Credits: 15.00

[Mathematical models of financial engineering 762 \(WTW 762\)](#) - Credits: 15.00

[Project 792 \(WTW 792\)](#) - Credits: 30.00

### Elective modules

[Systems thinking and engineering 780 \(ISE 780\)](#) - Credits: 16.00



Linear models 710 (LMO 710) - Credits: 15.00  
Linear models 720 (LMO 720) - Credits: 15.00  
Multivariate analysis 710 (MVA 710) - Credits: 15.00  
Multivariate analysis 720 (MVA 720) - Credits: 15.00  
Modern portfolio theory 712 (WTW 712) - Credits: 15.00  
Numerical analysis 733 (WTW 733) - Credits: 15.00  
Main principles of analysis in application 735 (WTW 735) - Credits: 15.00  
Finite element method 763 (WTW 763) - Credits: 15.00

## **BScHons Food Science (02240602)**

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### **Programme information**

#### **Renewal of registration**

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### **Admission requirements**

- BSc (Food Science)
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level or on recommendation of the head of the department can be admitted;
- Passing of a preliminary examination and/or completion of certain prescribed modules

### **Other programme-specific information**

#### **Pass with distinction**

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

#### **Curriculum: Final year**

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 105

Elective credits 30



### Core modules

Research methodology and seminars 700 (FST 700) - Credits: 15.00

Sensory evaluation 712 (FST 712) - Credits: 10.00

Production development and quality management 713 (FST 713) - Credits: 25.00

Advanced food science 720 (FST 720) - Credits: 15.00

Research project 763 (FST 763) - Credits: 40.00

### Elective modules

Animal food technologies 701 (FST 701) - Credits: 15.00

Advanced plant food science and technologies 702 (FST 702) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Genetics (02240705)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The honours study programmes serve as the first level of postgraduate training and the aim is therefore to introduce students to the methods of research – from the reading of research papers, through to the conceptualisation, planning, execution and communication of a research project.

### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree
- At a final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- At least 4 genetics modules in the final year level
- Applicants may be subjected to an entrance evaluation examination

### Examinations and pass requirements

A pass mark is required for all the components of the honours study programme and the final honours mark is calculated proportionally to the credits of the respective prescribed modules.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.



## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Additional information:

- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary. Honours students may also be required to complete a biometry or equivalent module, if they have not already done so during their undergraduate training.
- Suitably qualified candidates may also apply for the interdepartmental BScHons in Biotechnology (Code 02240393) with a registration in the Department of Genetics. For more information, please refer to the programme information for the BScHons in Biotechnology.

### Core modules

Seminar course 702 (GTK 702) - Credits: 15.00

Research project 703 (GTK 703) - Credits: 60.00

Trends in genetics 704 (GTK 704) - Credits: 15.00

Research methods 705 (GTK 705) - Credits: 30.00

Molecular and cellular biology 721 (MLB 721) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Geography and Environmental Science (02240415)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree or on recommendation from the head of department
- At least a final grade point average of 60% for third-year level and fourth-year level modules

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Fundamental credit: 25



Core credits: 35

Elective credits: 75

### **Additional information:**

Please note that the curriculum may change each year at the discretion of the head of department or the honours coordinator in the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

Appropriate modules, other than approved by the honours coordinator or head of department, may be taken. However, a minimum of 45 elective module credits should come from the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

### **Fundamental modules**

[Geographical and environmental principles 710](#) (GGY 710) - Credits: 25.00

### **Core modules**

[Research project 702](#) (GGY 702) - Credits: 35.00

### **Elective modules**

[Statistics for biological sciences 780](#) (BME 780) - Credits: 15.00

[Natural woodland and forests: Ecology and management 700](#) (BOT 700) - Credits: 15.00

[Basis in environmental health 772](#) (EHM 772) - Credits: 5.00

[Environmental assessments 785](#) (ENV 785) - Credits: 15.00

[Introduction to environmental and occupational health 775](#) (EOH 775) - Credits: 10.00

[Selected theme 701](#) (GGY 701) - Credits: 15.00

[Applied geomorphology 718](#) (GGY 718) - Credits: 15.00

[Urban geography 780](#) (GGY 780) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental change 789](#) (GGY 789) - Credits: 15.00

[Aspects of land reform and the environment 793](#) (GGY 793) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced remote sensing 705](#) (GMA 705) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental management and risk assessment 716](#) (GTX 716) - Credits: 20.00

## **BScHons Geoinformatics (02240414)**

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### **Programme information**

#### **Renewal of registration**

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.



## Admission requirements

- BSc (Geoinformatics) or BSc degree that meets the prerequisites of the honours modules.
- Prospective students may be required to do additional modules to enable them to reach the desired level of study.

## Additional requirements

Prospective students may be required to do additional modules to enable them to reach the desired level of study. Selection takes place before admission.

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Fundamental credits: 10

Core credits: 110

Elective credits: 15

### Additional information:

Appropriate honours modules may be taken from the Faculty or from the School of Information Technology, as approved by the honours coordinator or Head of department.

### Fundamental modules

[Research methods 701](#) (GIS 701) - Credits: 10.00

### Core modules

[Research project 702](#) (GIS 702) - Credits: 35.00

[Spatial statistics and geodesy 704](#) (GIS 704) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced geospatial data 705](#) (GIS 705) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced GIS 708](#) (GIS 708) - Credits: 15.00

[Geospatial data and services 709](#) (GIS 709) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced remote sensing 705](#) (GMA 705) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

[Environmental assessments 785](#) (ENV 785) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental change 789](#) (GGY 789) - Credits: 15.00

[Aspects of land reform and the environment 793](#) (GGY 793) - Credits: 15.00

[Special topics 707](#) (GIS 707) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Geology (02240142)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information



## Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

## Admission requirements

- BSc (Geology)
- At least an average of 60% for all the geology modules at third-year level
- Complete preceding degree will be considered for selection.
- Only limited to 25 positions; candidates who have progressed in the minimum period will take preference

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Core modules

[Petrology and geochemistry 701](#) (GLY 701) - Credits: 20.00

[Crustal evolution 704](#) (GLY 704) - Credits: 20.00

[Mapping camp 707](#) (GLY 707) - Credits: 10.00

[Honours project 710](#) (GLY 710) - Credits: 35.00

[Economic geology 713](#) (GLY 713) - Credits: 20.00

[Modern analytical methods and sampling theory 715](#) (GLY 715) - Credits: 20.00

[Trends in geoscience 716](#) (GLY 716) - Credits: 10.00

## BScHons Mathematical Statistics (02240192)

**Minimum duration of study**                      1 year

## Programme information

### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.



In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

## Admission requirements

- A relevant bachelor's degree with Mathematical Statistics at third-year level is required. A relevant degree must cover compatible content of required degrees at the University of Pretoria.
- For BScHons (Mathematical Statistics) an average mark of 65% or more is required in:
  - mathematical statistics at third-year level, or
  - an equivalent statistics module(s) at an accredited institution.
- Students from other accredited institutions must comply with the same requirements based on equivalent modules at their institutions. In addition, students from other accredited institutions must also pass an entrance evaluation.
- Student numbers are limited to a maximum of 40, collectively over all honours programmes in the Department of Statistics.
- Historical performance during prior studies will also be considered in selecting students. Specific attention will be given to modules repeated and duration of study.
- A compulsory language proficiency test must be completed at UP. The postgraduate committee of the department will help with the facilitation of the test through the university's language unit. It may be required, based on the outcome, that a student does additional language courses.
- Applications must include full academic transcripts from undergraduate to current level. SAQA evaluation documentation is required for international applications and on request for students with qualifications from South African institutions.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the postgraduate coordinator/head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 60

Elective credits: 75

### Core modules

[Linear models 710](#) (LMO 710) - Credits: 15.00

[Multivariate analysis 710](#) (MVA 710) - Credits: 15.00

[Research orientation 796](#) (STK 796) - Credits: 0.00

[Research report: Mathematical statistics 795](#) (WST 795) - Credits: 30.00

### Elective modules



Introduction to statistical learning 720 (EKT 720) - Credits: 15.00

Text and behavioural analytics 725 (EKT 725) - Credits: 15.00

Linear models 720 (LMO 720) - Credits: 15.00

Multivariate analysis 720 (MVA 720) - Credits: 15.00

Parametric stochastic processes 720 (PNP 720) - Credits: 15.00

Sampling techniques 720 (SFT 720) - Credits: 15.00

Simulation and computation 710 (STC 710) - Credits: 15.00

Capita selecta: Statistics 720 (STC 720) - Credits: 15.00

Linear mixed models 781 (STK 781) - Credits: 15.00

Distribution-free methods 710 (VMT 710) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Mathematics (02240182)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

An appropriate BSc or equivalent Bachelor's degree with a minimum of 60% for all Mathematics/Applied mathematics modules on third-year level. In the selection procedure the candidate's complete undergraduate academic record will be considered. In particular, it is required that the candidate has completed real analysis and algebra on third-year level each with a mark of at least 60% (UP modules WTW 310 and WTW 381).

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the postgraduate coordinator/head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 105



Elective credits: 30

### Core modules

Functional analysis 710 (WTW 710) - Credits: 15.00

Axiomatic set theory and mathematical logic 724 (WTW 724) - Credits: 15.00

Algebra 731 (WTW 731) - Credits: 15.00

Measure theory and probability 734 (WTW 734) - Credits: 15.00

Topology 790 (WTW 790) - Credits: 15.00

Project 795 (WTW 795) - Credits: 30.00

### Elective modules

Special topics 727 (WTW 727) - Credits: 15.00

Numerical analysis 733 (WTW 733) - Credits: 15.00

Finite element method 763 (WTW 763) - Credits: 15.00

Stochastic calculus 764 (WTW 764) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical methods and models 772 (WTW 772) - Credits: 15.00

Partial differential equations of mathematical physics 776 (WTW 776) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis (02240183)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The programme consists of seven honours modules (five modules of 15 credits each from the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics and two modules of 16 credits each from the Department of Science, Mathematics and Technology Education) as well as the compulsory research project (30 credits). Elective modules should be selected according to the prerequisites of these modules.

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and other requirements for honours degrees.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate bachelor's degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% at final-year level for all mathematics/applied mathematics modules
- Required that the candidate has completed the following modules with at least 60% each:
  - Real analysis at third-year level
  - Linear algebra at second-year level
- Complete preceding degree will be considered for selection.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the postgraduate coordinator/head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75%



in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 137

Select any two electives offered in the BScHons (Mathematics) or BScHons (Applied Mathematics) programmes, provided that the prerequisites are met with.

### Fundamental modules

Project 795 (WTW 795) - Credits: 30.00

### Core modules

Mathematics and mathematical literacy education 730 (MCE 730) - Credits: 16.00

Educational research methodology 745 (NMQ 745) - Credits: 16.00

Functional analysis 710 (WTW 710) - Credits: 15.00

Axiomatic set theory and mathematical logic 724 (WTW 724) - Credits: 15.00

Algebra 731 (WTW 731) - Credits: 15.00

Measure theory and probability 734 (WTW 734) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Special topics 727 (WTW 727) - Credits: 15.00

Main principles of analysis in application 735 (WTW 735) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical optimisation 750 (WTW 750) - Credits: 15.00

Finite element method 763 (WTW 763) - Credits: 15.00

Stochastic calculus 764 (WTW 764) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical methods and models 772 (WTW 772) - Credits: 15.00

Partial differential equations of mathematical physics 776 (WTW 776) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis (02240184)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The programme consists of seven honours modules (five modules of 15 credits each from the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics and two modules of 16 credits each from the Department of Science, Mathematics and Technology Education) as well as the compulsory research project (30 credits). Elective modules should be selected according to the prerequisites of these modules.

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and other requirements for honours degrees.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate bachelor's degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% at final-year level for all mathematics/applied mathematics modules
- required that the candidate has completed at least four of the following final-year modules or the equivalent:
  - Partial differential equations
  - Dynamical systems (ordinary differential equations)



- Real analysis
- Complex analysis
- Numerical analysis
- Continuum mechanics
- Complete preceding degree will be considered for selection.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the postgraduate coordinator/head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 137

Select any two electives offered in the BScHons (Mathematics) or BScHons (Applied Mathematics) programmes, provided that the prerequisites are met with.

#### Fundamental modules

[Project 795](#) (WTW 795) - Credits: 30.00

#### Core modules

[Mathematics and mathematical literacy education 730](#) (MCE 730) - Credits: 16.00

[Educational research methodology 745](#) (NMQ 745) - Credits: 16.00

[Functional analysis 710](#) (WTW 710) - Credits: 15.00

[Numerical analysis 733](#) (WTW 733) - Credits: 15.00

[Mathematical optimisation 750](#) (WTW 750) - Credits: 15.00

[Partial differential equations of mathematical physics 776](#) (WTW 776) - Credits: 15.00

#### Elective modules

[Special topics 727](#) (WTW 727) - Credits: 15.00

[Measure theory and probability 734](#) (WTW 734) - Credits: 15.00

[Main principles of analysis in application 735](#) (WTW 735) - Credits: 15.00

[Finite element method 763](#) (WTW 763) - Credits: 15.00

[Stochastic calculus 764](#) (WTW 764) - Credits: 15.00

[Mathematical methods and models 772](#) (WTW 772) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling (02240185)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The programme consists of seven honours modules (five modules of 15 credits each from the Department of



Mathematics and Applied Mathematics and two modules of 16 credits each from the Department of Science, Mathematics and Technology Education) as well as the compulsory research project (30 credits). Elective modules should be selected according to the prerequisites of these modules.

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and other requirements for honours degrees.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate bachelor's degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% at final-year level for all mathematics/applied mathematics modules
- Required that the candidate has completed at least four of the following final-year modules or the equivalent:
  - Partial differential equations
  - Dynamical systems (ordinary differential equations)
  - Real analysis
  - Complex analysis
  - Numerical analysis
  - Continuum mechanics
- Complete preceding degree will be considered for selection.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the postgraduate coordinator/head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 137

Select any two electives offered in the BScHons (Mathematics) or BScHons (Applied Mathematics) programmes, provided that the prerequisites are met with.

#### Fundamental modules

[Project 795](#) (WTW 795) - Credits: 30.00

#### Core modules

[Mathematics and mathematical literacy education 730](#) (MCE 730) - Credits: 16.00

[Educational research methodology 745](#) (NMQ 745) - Credits: 16.00

[Numerical analysis 733](#) (WTW 733) - Credits: 15.00

[Main principles of analysis in application 735](#) (WTW 735) - Credits: 15.00

[Mathematical optimisation 750](#) (WTW 750) - Credits: 15.00

[Partial differential equations of mathematical physics 776](#) (WTW 776) - Credits: 15.00

#### Elective modules

[Special topics 727](#) (WTW 727) - Credits: 15.00

[Measure theory and probability 734](#) (WTW 734) - Credits: 15.00



Finite element method 763 (WTW 763) - Credits: 15.00

Stochastic calculus 764 (WTW 764) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical methods and models 772 (WTW 772) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Mathematics of Finance (02240276)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate bachelor's degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% at final-year level for all mathematics/applied mathematics modules
- Required that the candidate has completed the following modules with at least 60% each:
  - Real analysis at third-year level
  - Linear algebra at second-year level
- Complete preceding degree will be considered for selection.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all honours candidates is monitored biannually by the postgraduate coordinator/head of department. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 120

Elective credits: 15

#### Additional information:

WTW 732 and WTW 762 are presented as weekly lectures together with some extra block lectures.



## Core modules

- Functional analysis 710 (WTW 710) - Credits: 15.00
- Mathematical models of financial engineering 732 (WTW 732) - Credits: 15.00
- Numerical analysis 733 (WTW 733) - Credits: 15.00
- Measure theory and probability 734 (WTW 734) - Credits: 15.00
- Mathematical models of financial engineering 762 (WTW 762) - Credits: 15.00
- Stochastic calculus 764 (WTW 764) - Credits: 15.00
- Project 792 (WTW 792) - Credits: 30.00
- Project 795 (WTW 795) - Credits: 30.00

## Elective modules

- Linear models 710 (LMO 710) - Credits: 15.00
- Linear models 720 (LMO 720) - Credits: 15.00
- Multivariate analysis 710 (MVA 710) - Credits: 15.00
- Multivariate analysis 720 (MVA 720) - Credits: 15.00
- Mathematical optimisation 750 (WTW 750) - Credits: 15.00
- Finite element method 763 (WTW 763) - Credits: 15.00
- Mathematical methods and models 772 (WTW 772) - Credits: 15.00
- Partial differential equations of mathematical physics 776 (WTW 776) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Medicinal Plant Science (02240706)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- BSc (Plant Science) or on recommendation from the head of department if the candidate did not major in Plant science.
- A minimum of 60% in Phytomedicine 365 (BOT 365)
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level

The recommended modules at BSc third-year level are as follows:

- BOT 366 Plant diversity
- BOT 356 Plant ecophysiology
- BCM 368 Molecular basis for disease
- BCM 357 Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism





5. FAR 382 Pharmacology
6. CMY 282 Physical chemistry
7. CMY 284 Organic chemistry

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 105

Elective credits: 30

### Additional information:

Students may register for modules to the maximum of 20 credits presented by another department, which forms part of the elective modules.

Apart from the compulsory and elective modules, a project, leading to a research report (60 credits), forms an essential part of the programme. One seminar (15 credits) must also be written and presented. Field excursions are undertaken. In addition to the compulsory modules, electives are selected in consultation with the supervisor.

### Core modules

Phytopharmacology 748 (BOT 748) - Credits: 10.00

Pharmacognosy/Phytotherapy 749 (BOT 749) - Credits: 10.00

Advanced phytomedicine 761 (BOT 761) - Credits: 10.00

Research report 782 (BOT 782) - Credits: 60.00

Seminar 783 (BOT 783) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Crop physiology 761 (APS 761) - Credits: 15.00

Statistics for biological sciences 780 (BME 780) - Credits: 15.00

Introduction to plant biotechnology 718 (BOT 718) - Credits: 10.00

Applied plant anatomy 741 (BOT 741) - Credits: 15.00

Plant classification and phytogeography 742 (BOT 742) - Credits: 20.00

Applications in plant biotechnology 746 (BOT 746) - Credits: 10.00

Trends in plant science 784 (BOT 784) - Credits: 10.00

Plant identification and herbarium curation 786 (BOT 786) - Credits: 15.00

Spatial analysis in ecology 788 (BOT 788) - Credits: 10.00

## BScHons Meteorology (02240074)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a



student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.

- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

## Admission requirements

- A BSc (Meteorology) degree or an appropriate bachelor's degree with second-year mathematics and first-year physics.

WKD 155 Atmospheric structure and processes

WKD 261 Physical meteorology

GMA 220 Remote sensing

WKD 263 Introduction to dynamical meteorology

WKD 352 Atmospheric vorticity and divergence

WKD 361 Quasi-geostrophic analysis

WKD 366 Fundamentals of weather forecasting

WTW 114 Calculus\*

WTW 124 Calculus\*

WTW 218 Calculus\*

WTW 248 Vector analysis\*

PHY 114 and 124

(\*or an equivalent module as approved by the head of department)

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 99

Elective credits: 36

### Additional information:

Appropriate honours modules from the other disciplines in the Department or Faculty may be taken on approval by the Honours coordinator or Head of Department.

### Core modules

[Numerical modelling: applications 704](#) (WKD 704) - Credits: 12.00

[Dynamic meteorology 706](#) (WKD 706) - Credits: 16.00

[Radar meteorology 707](#) (WKD 707) - Credits: 12.00

[Overview of tropical and mid-latitude meteorology 731](#) (WKD 731) - Credits: 12.00

[Satellite meteorology 733](#) (WKD 733) - Credits: 12.00



Research project 763 (WKD 763) - Credits: 35.00

### Elective modules

Statistics for biological sciences 780 (BME 780) - Credits: 15.00

Natural woodland and forests: Ecology and management 700 (BOT 700) - Credits: 15.00

Basis in environmental health 772 (EHM 772) - Credits: 5.00

Introduction to environmental and occupational health 775 (EOH 775) - Credits: 10.00

Advanced remote sensing 705 (GMA 705) - Credits: 15.00

Environmental management and risk assessment 716 (GTX 716) - Credits: 20.00

Seasonal and climate modelling 703 (WKD 703) - Credits: 12.00

Boundary layer meteorology 719 (WKD 719) - Credits: 12.00

Mesoscale meteorology 734 (WKD 734) - Credits: 12.00

Selected themes 736 (WKD 736) - Credits: 12.00

Cloud dynamics 781 (WKD 781) - Credits: 12.00

## BScHons Microbiology (02240601)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level modules presented by the Department of Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology.
- Module MBY 364 compulsory
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135



## Core modules

Research methods 751 (MCP 751) - Credits: 30.00

Seminar course 752 (MCP 752) - Credits: 15.00

Trends in microbiology 753 (MCP 753) - Credits: 15.00

Research project and literature study 754 (MCP 754) - Credits: 60.00

Molecular and cellular biology 721 (MLB 721) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Physics (02240232)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree or on recommendation from the head of department
- At least an average of 60% for all the physics modules at third-year level

## Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

## Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Additional information:

Students registered for the BScHons in Physics degree enrol for Physics 700. The programme comprises of 135 credits and consists of 220 lectures. It includes a research project of 35 credits comprising an individual research report that culminates in a seminar presentation. The programme may optionally include advanced experimental work. The curriculum is compiled in consultation with the Head of the Department of Physics, from whom details are available. With permission from the head of department a maximum of 30 credits may be taken from other postgraduate modules from other departments.

The modules listed below may be taken by students in other honours degree programmes. They must, however, first consult with the Head of the Department of Physics about the availability of a particular module in a particular year.



## Core modules

Physics 700 (FSK 700) - Credits: 135.00

## BScHons Plant Science (02240707)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- BSc (Plant Science) or on recommendation from the head of department if the candidate did not major in Plant Science.
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- Selection will be considered on the highest final grade point average of the preceding degree.
- Applicants may be subjected to an entrance evaluation examination.

### Other programme-specific information

BOT 705 and BTW 701 are for BScHons (Biotechnology) students. PB students who wish to take one of these modules as an elective need to apply to the programme leader.

The curriculum for the balance of the credits will be determined by the heads of department of the interdepartmental BScHons (Biotechnology) degree programme.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 75

Elective credits: 60

The programme consists of compulsory modules and elective modules. Students may register for modules to the maximum of 20 credits presented by another department, which forms part of the elective modules.

The following streams are presented in the BScHons in Plant Science programme:

- Plant Diversity (D)



- Plant Biotechnology/Physiology (PB)
- Plant Ecology (E)
- Plant Pathology (P)

Apart from the compulsory and elective modules, a project, leading to a research report (60 credits), forms an essential part of the training programme. One seminar (15 credits) must also be written and presented. Field excursions are undertaken.

In addition to the compulsory modules, electives are selected in consultation with the supervisor.

Suitably qualified candidates may also apply for the interdepartmental BScHons in Biotechnology degree (Code 02240393) with a supervisor in the Department of Plant and Soil Science.

Please consult Prof P Bloomer, Tel: +27 12 420 3259, for further details.

### Core modules

Research report 782 (BOT 782) - Credits: 60.00

Seminar 783 (BOT 783) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Crop physiology 761 (APS 761) - Credits: 15.00

Statistics for biological sciences 780 (BME 780) - Credits: 15.00

Natural woodland and forests: Ecology and management 700 (BOT 700) - Credits: 15.00

Molecular techniques 705 (BOT 705) - Credits: 15.00

Introduction to plant biotechnology 718 (BOT 718) - Credits: 10.00

Plant ecology 730 (BOT 730) - Credits: 10.00

Applied plant anatomy 741 (BOT 741) - Credits: 15.00

Plant classification and phytogeography 742 (BOT 742) - Credits: 20.00

Applications in plant biotechnology 746 (BOT 746) - Credits: 10.00

Advanced phytomedicine 761 (BOT 761) - Credits: 10.00

Trends in plant science 784 (BOT 784) - Credits: 10.00

Plant identification and herbarium curation 786 (BOT 786) - Credits: 15.00

Spatial analysis in ecology 788 (BOT 788) - Credits: 10.00

Land reclamation and restoration ecology 791 (BOT 791) - Credits: 15.00

Biotechnology in the workplace 701 (BTW 701) - Credits: 15.00

Advanced plant disease control 783 (PLG 783) - Credits: 15.00

Plant disease epidemiology 785 (PLG 785) - Credits: 15.00

Current concepts in plant pathology 786 (PLG 786) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science (02240600)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

#### Renewal of registration

- Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give



approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- Required modules:

Introductory soil science

Pedology and Soil chemistry

or on recommendation from the head of department

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

### Additional information:

The honours degree is awarded on the basis of formal modules passed. Students registered for the BScHons in Soil Science [Option: Environmental Soil Science] will register for all the soil science modules prescribed at honours level, as well as any other modules deemed necessary by the head of department.

### Core modules

Crop production systems (I): Field crops 785 (AGR 785) - Credits: 15.00

Statistics for biological sciences 780 (BME 780) - Credits: 15.00

Advanced environmental soil chemistry 771 (GDK 771) - Credits: 15.00

Advanced environmental soil physics 772 (GDK 772) - Credits: 15.00

Plant nutrition, soil biology and soil fertility 773 (GDK 773) - Credits: 15.00

Research project in environmental soil science 775 (GDK 775) - Credits: 30.00

Environmental biophysics 750 (LKM 750) - Credits: 15.00

Scientific communication 702 (PGW 702) - Credits: 15.00

## BScHons Statistics and Data Science (02240193)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Admission requirements

- A relevant bachelor's degree with Statistics at third-year level is required. A relevant degree must cover compatible content of required degrees at the University of Pretoria. An average mark of 65% or more is required in: statistics at third-year level, or an equivalent statistics module(s) at an accredited institution.
- Students from other accredited institutions must comply with the same requirements based on equivalent modules at their institutions. In addition, students from other accredited institutions must also pass an entrance evaluation.



- Student numbers are limited to a maximum of 40, collectively over all honours programmes in the Department of Statistics.
- Historical performance during prior studies will also be considered in selecting students. Specific attention will be given to modules repeated and duration of study.
- A compulsory language proficiency test must be completed at UP. The postgraduate committee of the department will help with the facilitation of the test through the universities language unit. It may be required, based on the outcome, that a student does additional language courses.
- Applications must include full academic transcripts from undergraduate to current level. SAQA evaluation documentation is required for international applications and on request for students with qualifications from South African institutions.

### Other programme-specific information

- Details of compilation of curriculum are available from the Head of the Department of Statistics as well as from the departmental postgraduate brochure.
- A candidate must compile his/her curriculum in consultation with the head of department or his/her representative. It is also possible to include postgraduate modules from other departments. Refer to the Departmental website for further information.
- All honours students in Statistics/Mathematical Statistics must enrol for STK 796 which is a compulsory but non-credit-bearing module.
- An external student who does not fully meet the requirements to enter this degree can register, with permission from the head of department and the postgraduate committee for STK 310, 320, 353 and WST 212 in year 1 full-time for non-degree purposes. Provided a 65% average for these is achieved, the student can then complete the BScHons (Statistics) modules in year 2.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 75

Elective credits: 60 (choose four electives from the list)

#### Core modules

[Introduction to statistical learning 720](#) (EKT 720) - Credits: 15.00

[Multivariate techniques 720](#) (MET 720) - Credits: 15.00

[Regression analysis 780](#) (RAL 780) - Credits: 15.00

[Research report: Statistics 795](#) (STK 795) - Credits: 30.00

[Research orientation 796](#) (STK 796) - Credits: 0.00

#### Elective modules

[Text and behavioural analytics 725](#) (EKT 725) - Credits: 15.00

[Sampling techniques 720](#) (SFT 720) - Credits: 15.00

[Statistical process control 780](#) (SPC 780) - Credits: 15.00

[Simulation and computation 710](#) (STC 710) - Credits: 15.00

[Capita selecta: Statistics 720](#) (STC 720) - Credits: 15.00

[Linear mixed models 781](#) (STK 781) - Credits: 15.00

### BScHons Wildlife Management (02240700)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year





## Programme information

### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.
- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- BSc (Ecology) or BSc (Zoology) or BSc (Plant Science) or BScAgric (Animal Science) or BScAgric (Plant Production) or BSc (Forestry) or BVSc or an appropriate BSc degree with a similar relevant biological major subject.
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- A relevant module in statistics must have been passed otherwise one module in statistics must be registered for.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

#### Core modules

Statistics for biological sciences 780 (BME 780) - Credits: 15.00

Plant identification and herbarium curation 786 (BOT 786) - Credits: 15.00

Wildlife ecology 780 (NLB 780) - Credits: 10.00

Wildlife management principles and techniques 781 (NLB 781) - Credits: 10.00

Wildlife nutrition 782 (NLB 782) - Credits: 15.00

Parasites, diseases and the capture of wildlife animals 783 (NLB 783) - Credits: 10.00

Research project 795 (NLB 795) - Credits: 50.00

Range management in wildlife systems 701 (WDE 701) - Credits: 10.00

## BScHons Zoology (02240703)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

### Renewal of registration

- i. Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, a student may not sit for an examination for the honours degree more than twice in the same module.



- ii. A student for an honours degree must complete his or her study, in the case of full-time students, within two years and, in the case of after-hours students, within three years of first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department, may give approval for a limited extension of this period.

In calculating marks, General Regulation G.12.2 applies.

Apart from the prescribed coursework, a research project is an integral part of the study.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BSc degree or on recommendation from the head of department
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary.

### Examinations and pass requirements

A pass mark is required for all the components of the honours study programme.

### Pass with distinction

The BScHons degree is awarded with distinction to a candidate who obtains a weighted average of at least 75% in all the prescribed modules and a minimum of 65% in any one module.

### Curriculum: Final year

Minimum credits: 135

Core credits: 81

Elective credits: 54

#### Core modules

[Statistics for biological sciences 780 \(BME 780\)](#) - Credits: 15.00

[Research project 701 \(ZEN 701\)](#) - Credits: 68.00

[Research methods and scientific communication 713 \(ZEN 713\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

#### Elective modules

[Land reclamation and restoration ecology 791 \(BOT 791\)](#) - Credits: 15.00

[Systematics, evolution and biogeography 703 \(ZEN 703\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

[Environmental physiology 704 \(ZEN 704\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

[Principles in applied ecology 705 \(ZEN 705\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

[Integrated pest management in Africa 707 \(ZEN 707\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

[Mammal ecology 710 \(ZEN 710\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

[Behavioural ecology 712 \(ZEN 712\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

[Insect-plant interactions 782 \(ZEN 782\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

[Global climate change and biodiversity 783 \(ZEN 783\)](#) - Credits: 13.00

[Contemporary research techniques 784 \(ZEN 784\)](#) - Credits: 13.00



## Master's

### **MAgric Animal Production Management (02256000)**

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

#### **Programme information**

##### **Residence**

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

##### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

##### **Curriculum**

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

##### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

#### **Admission requirements**

- BAgricHons or BScAgric degree in Animal Production or equivalent qualification
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level.

#### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

##### **Pass with distinction**

The MScAgric degree is conferred with distinction on candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of



the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Animal Production Management 802 (APZ 802) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Animal Production Management 802 (APZ 802) - Credits: 180.00

## MAgric Extension (02256001)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- A dissertation; and
- Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BAgricHons (Extension) – with an average of 60%;

or a Postgraduate Diploma in Extension and Rural Development with an average of 60% in each module and the completion of at least 60 credits at honours level;

or BInstAgrarHons (Extension) with an average of 60% plus. At least 120 credits of relevant extension modules at postgraduate level (honours level) with an average of 60% plus in each module.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Pass with distinction

The MScAgric degree is conferred with distinction on candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Agrarian Extension 890 (AGV 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Agrarian Extension 890 (AGV 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MAgric Rural Development (02256003)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.



## Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.
- c. Please note that not all modules will be offered in any one year.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- The BInstAgrarHons/BAgricHons degree of the University of Pretoria or another appropriate degree equivalent to or higher than the status thereof as evaluated by the Director of the School and the head(s) of the relevant department(s).

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Pass with distinction

The MScAgric degree is conferred with distinction on candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Programme information:

Minimum credits: 180

Core credits: 105

Elective credits: 75

Please note: LEK 885 (15 credits) to be taken in the second semester.

### Core modules

[Food policy 833](#) (LEK 833) - Credits: 15.00

[Measuring and monitoring food security 834](#) (LEK 834) - Credits: 15.00



Institutional economics 882 (LEK 882) - Credits: 15.00  
Advanced rural finance 884 (LEK 884) - Credits: 15.00  
Agricultural and rural development 885 (LEK 885) - Credits: 15.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Mini-dissertation: Rural development 891 (ARD 891) - Credits: 105.00

## MConSci (02253014)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Admission requirements

- For the MConsumer Science degree in Clothing, Interior, Foods and Nutrition, a four-year BConsumer Science degree that is BCom-based, is required.
- For the MConsumer Science General, other applicable four-year degrees will be considered.
- A minimum average of 60% in the broad area of specialisation that the student wishes to pursue is required for admission.

## Other programme-specific information

Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.

A basic course in statistics is compulsory when a quantitative approach is used for the research for the dissertation.

Work on the dissertation consists of three parts, namely a research proposal, project execution, and writing the dissertation. It is compulsory to give an oral presentation of the proposal as well as of the research on completion of the degree.

## Pass with distinction

The degree is conferred with distinction on a student who obtains a final average of at least 75%, as well as at least 75% for the dissertation and provided that all the members of the Examination Commission indicate in writing that the degree be conferred with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MConSci Clothing Management (02253012)



**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Admission requirements

- For the MConsumer Science degree in Clothing, Interior, Foods and Nutrition, a four-year BConsumer Science degree that is BCom-based, is required.
- For the MConsumer Science General, other applicable four-year degrees will be considered.
- A minimum average of 60% in the broad area of specialisation that the student wishes to pursue is required for admission.

### Other programme-specific information

Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.

A basic course in statistics is compulsory when a quantitative approach is used for the research for the dissertation.

Work on the dissertation consists of three parts, namely a research proposal, project execution, and writing the dissertation. It is compulsory to give an oral presentation of the proposal as well as of the research on completion of the degree.

### Pass with distinction

The degree is conferred with distinction on a student who obtains a final average of at least 75%, as well as at least 75% for the dissertation and provided that all the members of the Examination Commission indicate in writing that the degree be conferred with distinction.

### Curriculum: Year 1

#### Core modules

Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890) - Credits: 180.00

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MConSci Food Management (02253013)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Admission requirements

- For the MConsumer Science degree in Clothing, Interior, Foods and Nutrition, a four-year BConsumer Science degree that is BCom-based, is required.
- For the MConsumer Science General, other applicable four-year degrees will be considered.
- A minimum average of 60% in the broad area of specialisation that the student wishes to pursue is required





## Other programme-specific information

Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.

A basic course in statistics is compulsory when a quantitative approach is used for the research for the dissertation.

Work on the dissertation consists of three parts, namely a research proposal, project execution, and writing the dissertation. It is compulsory to give an oral presentation of the proposal as well as of the research on completion of the degree.

## Pass with distinction

The degree is conferred with distinction on a student who obtains a final average of at least 75%, as well as at least 75% for the dissertation and provided that all the members of the Examination Commission indicate in writing that the degree be conferred with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MConSci Interior Merchandise Management (02253011)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Admission requirements

- For the MConsumer Science degree in Clothing, Interior, Foods and Nutrition, a four-year BConsumer Science degree that is BCom-based, is required.
- For the general MConsumer Science, other applicable four-year degrees will be considered.
- A minimum average of 60% in the broad area of specialisation that the student wishes to pursue is required for admission.

## Other programme-specific information

Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.

A basic course in statistics is compulsory when a quantitative approach is used for the research for the dissertation.

Work on the dissertation consists of three parts, namely a research proposal, project execution, and writing the dissertation. It is compulsory to give an oral presentation of the proposal as well as of the research on completion of the degree.



## Pass with distinction

The degree is conferred with distinction on a student who obtains a final average of at least 75%, as well as at least 75% for the dissertation and provided that all the members of the Examination Commission indicate in writing that the degree be conferred with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Actuarial Science (02250396)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScHons (Actuarial Science)
- At least a final grade point average of 60% for the preceding degree
- Complete undergraduate and preceding degree will be considered for selection.
- Admission is furthermore contingent on the availability of supervisors and/or research projects within the Department.

## Additional requirements

Admission is also subject to the availability of a suitable supervisor for the study.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.



Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Actuarial science 890 (AKW 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Advanced Data Analytics (Coursework) (02250194)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Programme information

Details of compilation of curriculum are available from the Head of the Department of Statistics as well as from the departmental postgraduate brochure.

A candidate must compile his/her curriculum in consultation with the head of department or his representative. Refer to the Departmental website for further information.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- A relevant honours degree in Mathematical Statistics is required. A relevant degree must cover compatible content of required degrees at the University of Pretoria.
- For the MSc (Mathematical Statistics) an average mark of at least 65% or more in BScHons (Mathematical Statistics) module, with a minimum of 65% for the research component. Students from other accredited institutions must comply with the same requirements based on equivalent models at their institutions. In addition, students from other accredited institutions must also pass an entrance evaluation.
- Student numbers are limited to a maximum of 26, collectively over all master's programmes in the Department of Statistics.



- Historical performance during prior studies will also be considered in selecting students. Specific attention will be given to modules repeated and duration of study.
- The proposed research of applicants should be in line with the research focus of the department.
- The head of department, in consultation with the departmental postgraduate selection committee reserves the right to prescribe additional modules.
- Applications must include full academic transcripts from undergraduate to current level. SAQA evaluation documentation is required for international applications and on request for students with qualifications from South African institutions.

### **Other programme-specific information**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of registration of a master's student will be accepted for a second year of study in the case of a full-time student. Renewal of registration for a third and subsequent years for a full-time student will only take place when Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation (the required form can be obtained from the relevant head of department) that is supported by the head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee. (Also see the General Regulations.)

Details of compilation of curriculum are available from the Head of the Department of Statistics as well as from the departmental postgraduate brochure.

A candidate must compile his/her curriculum in consultation with the head of department or his representative. Refer to the Departmental website for further information.

### **Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### **Pass with distinction**

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

All master's students in Statistics/Mathematical Statistics should enrol for STK 899 which is a compulsory but non-credit-bearing module. The satisfactory completion of this module is a prerequisite for embarking on the research component of the degree programme.

Students should choose any four (4) of the elective modules in the list, to the maximum of 80 credits.

#### **Fundamental modules**

[Research orientation 899](#) (STK 899) - Credits: 0.00

#### **Elective modules**

[Statistical and machine learning 880](#) (MVA 880) - Credits: 20.00



Capita selecta: Statistics 880 (STK 880) - Credits: 20.00

Analysis of time series 880 (TRA 880) - Credits: 20.00

Data science: analytics and visualisation 880 (TRG 880) - Credits: 20.00

Cyber analytics 802 (WST 802) - Credits: 20.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Fundamental modules

Research orientation 899 (STK 899) - Credits: 0.00

### Core modules

Mini-dissertation: Mathematical statistics 895 (WST 895) - Credits: 100.00

## MSc Air Quality Management (02250520)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

Coordinated by the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

The extensions to the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) promulgated after 2005 affect environmental management in South Africa in a profound way. In particular, the Air Quality Act brings South African legislation into line with international trends. The metro councils are charged with the responsibility of implementing the Act at the local level. In addition, companies need appropriate expertise to obtain licenses for their air quality management plans. This focus area serves to provide suitable expertise for the implementation of the above legislation by industry by training graduates specialised for careers in air quality management. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning the legislative requirements with respect to air quality management, modelling of and measurement of air pollution and the interpretation of pollution plumes, the measurement and interpretation of chemical air pollution as well as dust pollution, international agreements and requirements as well as the effects of air pollution on humans.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.



## Admission requirements

- BScHons degree (or equivalent degree with the status thereof)
- In the selection procedure the candidate's complete undergraduate and honours academic record will be considered.
- Additional modules in related topics may be prescribed for students, depending on their academic background.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

## Additional requirements

Candidates must demonstrate proficiency in the English language up to the level required by either the TOEFL test ([www.ets.org/toefl](http://www.ets.org/toefl)) or the IELTS language proficiency test ([www.ielts.org](http://www.ielts.org)).

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Air quality management 898](#) (ENV 898) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Air Quality Management (Coursework) (02250408)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

Coordinated by the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

The extensions to the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) promulgated after 2005 affect environmental management in South Africa in a profound way. In particular, the Air Quality Act brings South African legislation into line with international trends. The metro councils are charged with the responsibility of implementing the Act at the local level. In addition, companies need appropriate expertise to obtain licenses for their air quality management plans. This focus area serves to provide suitable expertise for the implementation

of the above legislation by industry by training graduates specialised for careers in air quality management. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning the legislative requirements with respect to air quality management, modelling of and measurement of air pollution and the interpretation of pollution plumes, the measurement and interpretation of chemical air pollution as well as dust pollution, international agreements and requirements as well as the effects of air pollution on humans.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- BScHons or an appropriate four-year degree, or equivalent degree status which includes mathematics and chemistry at first-year level.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

### **Additional requirements**

Candidates must demonstrate proficiency in the English language up to the level required by either the TOEFL test ([www.ets.org/toefl](http://www.ets.org/toefl)) or the IELTS language proficiency test ([www.ielts.org](http://www.ielts.org)).

### **Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### **Pass with distinction**

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.



## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

- Boundary layer meteorology 811 (AQM 811) - Credits: 15.00
- Atmospheric chemistry 812 (AQM 812) - Credits: 15.00
- Atmospheric thermodynamics 813 (AQM 813) - Credits: 15.00
- Air pollution: society and environment 814 (AQM 814) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental paradigms 810 (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental law 816 (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00
- Mini-dissertation 891 (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

- Boundary layer meteorology 811 (AQM 811) - Credits: 15.00
- Atmospheric chemistry 812 (AQM 812) - Credits: 15.00
- Atmospheric thermodynamics 813 (AQM 813) - Credits: 15.00
- Air pollution: society and environment 814 (AQM 814) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental paradigms 810 (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental law 816 (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00
- Mini-dissertation 891 (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

## MSc Applied Geoinformatics (Coursework) (02250417)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

**Contact** Prof SM Coetsee [serena.coetsee@up.ac.za](mailto:serena.coetsee@up.ac.za) +27 (0)124203823

### Programme information

A minimum of 180 credits is required to obtain the MSc (Applied Geoinformatics) Coursework degree, made up of coursework (110 credits) and a research component (90 credits).

### Other programme-specific information

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and other requirements for master's degrees.

### Promotion to next study year

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75%, with a minimum of 65% in each module, and a mark of at least 75% for the mini-dissertation.





## Curriculum: Year 1

Total credits required: 180

First year credits: 110

Elective modules - special note:

Select two of the electives listed in the fixed curriculum OR take modules of a least 30 credits offered as part of ONE of the coursework master's programmes in the Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences, Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and IT or the Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences. In this instance, the prerequisites of the repective modules selected must be met and permission from the relevant HOD is required.

**Contact:** Prof Serena Coetzee

Tel: +27 (0) 12 420 3823

Email: serena.coetzee@up.ac.za

### Core modules

[Introduction to GIS 800](#) (GIS 800) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced GIS 801](#) (GIS 801) - Credits: 15.00

[Introduction to remote sensing 802](#) (GIS 802) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced remote sensing 803](#) (GIS 803) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

[Introduction to geospatial programming and databases 804](#) (GIS 804) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced geospatial programming and databases 805](#) (GIS 805) - Credits: 15.00

[Special topics in geoinformatics 806](#) (GIS 806) - Credits: 15.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Total credits: 180

Final year Core credits: 90

### Core modules

[Mini-dissertation: Applied Geoinformatics 891](#) (GIS 891) - Credits: 90.00

## MSc Applied Mathematics (02250172)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.



## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% for the preceding degree
- Complete undergraduate and preceding degree will be considered for selection.
- Recommend modules at honours level:
  - Measure and integration theory
  - Functional analysis
  - Partial differential equations
  - Numerical analysis.
- Admission is furthermore contingent on the availability of supervisors and/or research projects within the Department.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Applied mathematics 890](#) (TWS 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Biochemistry (02250512)

**Minimum duration of study**                      1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student



Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScHons (Biochemistry) or on recommendation from the head of department
- At least a final grade point average of 60% for the preceding degree

## Additional requirements

A recommendation from the head of department and depending on availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Biochemistry: Dissertation 890 (BCM 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Bioinformatics (02250514)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student

Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScHons (Bioinformatics) or the equivalent thereof.
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

## Additional requirements

Admission is additionally dependent on availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Bioinformatics: Dissertation 803 (BIF 803) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Biotechnology (02250537)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department

and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of department
- Applicants may be subjected to an entrance evaluation examination.

## Additional requirements

Preference will be given to applicants with the highest final grade point averages for their preceding degree and qualifying applicants may be subjected to an entrance evaluation examination. Admission is furthermore contingent on the availability of supervisors and/or research projects within the participating departments.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Agronomy 890 (AGR 890) - Credits: 180.00

Biochemistry: Dissertation 890 (BCM 890) - Credits: 180.00

Dissertation: Plant science 890 (BOT 890) - Credits: 180.00

Dissertation: Genetics 890 (GTK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Chemistry (02250123)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as



may be prescribed.

### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary.

### **Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### **Pass with distinction**

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Dissertation: [Chemistry 890](#) (CHM 890) - Credits: 180.00

## **MSc Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology (02250376)**

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### **Programme information**

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the



second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Hydrogeology 890](#) (GTX 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Engineering and Environmental Geology (02250375)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General



Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Engineering Geology 890](#) (IGL 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Engineering Geology (02250374)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.





## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Engineering Geology 890 (IGL 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Entomology (02250518)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary.



## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: **Entomology 890** (ENT 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Environment and Society (02250522)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

The programme is coordinated by the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in the humanities. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in the management of human-environment interactions. This includes social impact assessments, policy formulation, social development and planning, participatory appraisal assessments, demographic pattern and trend interpretations, resource appraisals and management.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General



Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScHons degree (or equivalent degree with the status thereof)
- In the selection procedure the candidate's complete undergraduate and honours academic record will be considered.
- Additional courses in related topics may be prescribed for students, depending on their academic background.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Environment and society 893](#) (ENV 893) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Environment and Society (Coursework) (02250403)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

The programme is coordinated by the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in the humanities. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in the management of human-environment interactions. This includes social impact assessments, policy formulation, social development and planning, participatory appraisal assessments, demographic pattern and trend interpretations, resource appraisals and management.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.



## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScHons or a four-year degree qualification, or equivalent degree status which includes appropriate subjects in the humanities, geography or planning.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

## Additional requirements

Candidates must demonstrate proficiency in the English language up to the level required by either the TOEFL test ([www.ets.org/toefl](http://www.ets.org/toefl)) or the IELTS language proficiency test ([www.ielts.org](http://www.ielts.org)).

## Other programme-specific information

At least one additional elective module must be selected in consultation with the Director of the Centre and the Head of the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology. Options will be based on the academic background and/or anticipated career of the candidate.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Programme information:

Minimum credits: 180

Core credits: 150

Elective credits: 30



### Core modules

- Environment and development 811 (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00
- Strategic environmental management 822 (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental paradigms 810 (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental law 816 (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00
- Mini-dissertation 891 (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

### Elective modules

- Environment and land reform 823 (ENS 823) - Credits: 15.00
- Social modelling and assessment 824 (ENS 824) - Credits: 15.00
- International environmental management systems 822 (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00
- Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833 (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00
- Water quality management 810 (EWM 810) - Credits: 15.00
- Water conservation and demand management 821 (EWM 821) - Credits: 15.00
- Water supply and sanitation 822 (EWM 822) - Credits: 15.00
- Forest ecology and management 835 (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental change 881 (OMS 881) - Credits: 15.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

- Environment and development 811 (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00
- Strategic environmental management 822 (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental paradigms 810 (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental law 816 (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00
- Mini-dissertation 891 (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

### Elective modules

- Environment and land reform 823 (ENS 823) - Credits: 15.00
- Social modelling and assessment 824 (ENS 824) - Credits: 15.00
- International environmental management systems 822 (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00
- Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833 (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00
- Water quality management 810 (EWM 810) - Credits: 15.00
- Water conservation and demand management 821 (EWM 821) - Credits: 15.00
- Water supply and sanitation 822 (EWM 822) - Credits: 15.00
- Forest ecology and management 835 (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental change 881 (OMS 881) - Credits: 15.00

## MSc Environmental Ecology (02250524)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

Coordinated by the Department of Zoology and Entomology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in the ecology of

the environment, including conservation planning, environmental management and air quality management. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in the management of the ecological consequences of human existence. This includes a thorough grounding in ecosystem structure, composition and function, ecosystem services, notions of ecosystem health, the management of declining and small populations, captive propagation, control of invasive species, species and community restoration, conservation education, local communities and conservation, as well as aspects of biogeography and macro-ecology, conservation planning and monitoring, the structure, composition and function of biological communities, population and community variability.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- BScHons degree or equivalent degree
- In the selection procedure the candidate's complete undergraduate and honours academic record will be considered.
- Additional courses in related topics may be prescribed for students, depending on their academic background.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

### **Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### **Pass with distinction**

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### **Curriculum: Final year**



## Core modules

Dissertation: Environmental ecology 892 (ENV 892) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Environmental Ecology (Coursework) (02250404)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

Coordinated by the Department of Zoology and Entomology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in the ecology of the environment, including conservation planning, environmental management and air quality management. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in the management of the ecological consequences of human existence. This includes a thorough grounding in ecosystem structure, composition and function, ecosystem services, notions of ecosystem health, the management of declining and small populations, captive propagation, control of invasive species, species and community restoration, conservation education, local communities and conservation, as well as aspects of biogeography and macro-ecology, conservation planning and monitoring, the structure, composition and function of biological communities, population and community variability.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScHons or four-year degree qualification or the equivalent degree status which includes appropriate subjects in ecology.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required).

### Other programme-specific information

One of the listed specialisation modules may be substituted with an elective module subject to the approval of the Director of the Centre. Choice of an elective is based on the academic background and/or anticipated career of the student but is expected to be relevant to either conservation biology or sustainable forestry management.



## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Programme information:

Minimum credit: 180

Core credits: 120

Elective credits: 60

### Core modules

[Environmental paradigms 810](#) (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental law 816](#) (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

[Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833](#) (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00

[Mini-dissertation 891](#) (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

### Elective modules

[Environment and development 811](#) (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00

[Strategic environmental management 822](#) (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Environment and land reform 823](#) (ENS 823) - Credits: 15.00

[Social modelling and assessment 824](#) (ENS 824) - Credits: 15.00

[International environmental management systems 822](#) (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Water quality management 810](#) (EWM 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Water conservation and demand management 821](#) (EWM 821) - Credits: 15.00

[Water supply and sanitation 822](#) (EWM 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Forest ecology and management 835](#) (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

[Environmental paradigms 810](#) (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental law 816](#) (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

[Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833](#) (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00

[Mini-dissertation 891](#) (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00





### Elective modules

Environment and development 811 (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00

Strategic environmental management 822 (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

Environment and land reform 823 (ENS 823) - Credits: 15.00

Social modelling and assessment 824 (ENS 824) - Credits: 15.00

International environmental management systems 822 (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00

Water quality management 810 (EWM 810) - Credits: 15.00

Water conservation and demand management 821 (EWM 821) - Credits: 15.00

Water supply and sanitation 822 (EWM 822) - Credits: 15.00

Forest ecology and management 835 (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00

## MSc Environmental Economics (Coursework) (02250405)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

This programme is coordinated in the Department of Agricultural Economics, Extension and Rural Development. The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScHons, BScAgric or BScAgric (Agricultural Economics) or equivalent degree status, with appropriate subjects in economics and statistics.
- Final admission is subject to the approval of the Director of the Centre of Environmental Economics and Policy (CEEPA) and/or the Head of the Department of Agricultural Economics, Extension and Rural Development

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a



mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Applied econometrics 810 (LEK 810) - Credits: 15.00

Applied micro-economics 815 (LEK 815) - Credits: 15.00

Environmental valuation and policy 826 (LEK 826) - Credits: 15.00

Natural resource and environmental economics 880 (LEK 880) - Credits: 15.00

Mini-dissertation: Agricultural economics 892 (LEK 892) - Credits: 90.00

### Elective modules

Production economics 811 (LEK 811) - Credits: 15.00

Quantitative methods for agricultural and environmental policy 814 (LEK 814) - Credits: 15.00

Institutional economics 882 (LEK 882) - Credits: 15.00

The economics of natural resources 886 (LEK 886) - Credits: 15.00

## MSc Environmental Education (02250528)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

This programme is coordinated by the Faculty of Education.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in environmental education. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in the transfer of environmental principles by education. This includes the transfer of relevant ethical, social and ecological principles to learners, the roles of the NQF and outcomes-based education for approaches towards environmental education, the roles of facilitation, engagement, meta-learning, creative problem solving, cooperative learning and feedback in the learning task.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of

registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScHons degree or equivalent degree
- In the selection procedure the candidate's complete undergraduate and honours academic record will be considered.
- Additional courses in related topics may be prescribed for students, depending on their academic background

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Environmental education 897](#) (ENV 897) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Environmental Education (Coursework) (02250531)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

This programme is coordinated by the Faculty of Education.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in environmental education. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in the transfer of environmental principles by education. This includes the transfer of relevant ethical, social and ecological principles to learners, the roles of the NQF and outcomes-based education for approaches towards environmental education, the roles of facilitation, engagement, meta-learning, creative problem solving, cooperative learning and feedback in the learning task.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScHons or an appropriate four-year degree qualification, or equivalent degree which includes appropriate education subjects.

## Additional requirements

Candidates must demonstrate proficiency in the English language up to the level required by either the TOEFL test ([www.ets.org/toefl](http://www.ets.org/toefl)) or the IELTS language proficiency test ([www.ielts.org](http://www.ielts.org)).

## Other programme-specific information

At least one additional elective module must be selected in consultation with the Director of the Centre and the Head of the Department of Curriculum Studies, Faculty of Education. Choices will be based on the academic background and/or anticipated career of the candidate.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

[Environmental paradigms 810](#) (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental law 816](#) (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

[Mini-dissertation 891](#) (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

[Research methods in science education 881](#) (SCE 881) - Credits: 15.00



## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Environmental paradigms 810 (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

Environmental law 816 (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

Mini-dissertation 891 (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

Research methods in science education 881 (SCE 881) - Credits: 15.00

## MSc Environmental Management (02250526)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

**Contact** Ms MA Cilliers [marinda.cilliers@zoology.up.ac.za](mailto:marinda.cilliers@zoology.up.ac.za) +27 (0)124204048

### Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

Coordinated by the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates considered generalists for managing the full spectrum of human-environment-economic interactions. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in managing social, economic and environmental processes in a sustainable manner. This includes social and environmental impact assessment, policy formulation, social development and planning, eco-system structure, composition and function, ecosystem services, ecosystem health, invasive species, species and community restoration, conservation education, local communities and conservation, economic inefficiency, misallocation, market failure, policy failure, the economics of renewable and non-renewable resources, cost-benefit analysis, valuation of environmental goods and services and environmental accounting.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScHons degree or equivalent
- In the selection procedure the candidate's complete undergraduate and honours academic record will be considered.
- Additional courses in economics or related topics may be prescribed for students, depending on their academic



background.

- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### Curriculum: Final year

**Total credits: 180**

#### **Contact:**

Ms Marinda Cilliers

Tel: +27 (0) 12 420 4048

Email: marinda.cilliers@up.ac.za

#### **Core modules**

**Dissertation: Environmental management 894** (ENV 894) - Credits: 180.00

### **MSc Environmental Management (Coursework) (02250407)**

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

**Contact** Ms MA Cilliers [marinda.cilliers@zoology.up.ac.za](mailto:marinda.cilliers@zoology.up.ac.za) +27 (0)124204048

### **Programme information**

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

Coordinated by the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates considered generalists for managing the full spectrum of human-environment-economic interactions. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in managing social, economic and environmental processes in a sustainable manner. This includes social and environmental impact

assessment, policy formulation, social development and planning, eco-system structure, composition and function, ecosystem services, ecosystem health, invasive species, species and community restoration, conservation education, local communities and conservation, economic inefficiency, misallocation, market failure, policy failure, the economics of renewable and non-renewable resources, cost-benefit analysis, valuation of environmental goods and services and environmental accounting.

**There are two independent foci of the master's option in Environmental Management:**

- Focus area: Sustainable Development
- Focus area: Environmental Economics

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

**Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

**General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

**Admission requirements**

- BScHons degree or equivalent degree.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

**Additional requirements**

Candidates must demonstrate proficiency in the English language up to the level required by either the TOEFL test ([www.ets.org/toefl](http://www.ets.org/toefl)) or the IELTS language proficiency test ([www.ielts.org](http://www.ielts.org)).

**Other programme-specific information**

**Note:**

For the focus on Sustainable Development, final admission is subject to the approval of the Director of the Centre for Environmental Studies.

For the focus on Environmental Economics, students without a formal background in economics will be considered. Admission is subject to the approval of the Head of the Department of Agricultural Economics, Extension and Rural Development and the Director of the Centre for Environmental Studies. Additional courses in economics or related topics may be prescribed for students, depending on their academic background.

**Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where



applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Programme information:

Minimum credits: 180

Core credits: 150

Elective credits: 30

### Contact:

Ms Marinda Cilliers

Tel: +27 (0) 12 420 4048

Email: marinda.cilliers@up.ac.za

### Core modules

[Environment and development 811](#) (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00

[Strategic environmental management 822](#) (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental paradigms 810](#) (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental law 816](#) (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

[Mini-dissertation 891](#) (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

### Elective modules

[Environment and development 811](#) (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00

[Strategic environmental management 822](#) (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Environment and land reform 823](#) (ENS 823) - Credits: 15.00

[Social modelling and assessment 824](#) (ENS 824) - Credits: 15.00

[International environmental management systems 822](#) (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833](#) (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00

[Forest ecology and management 835](#) (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental valuation and policy 826](#) (LEK 826) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental change 881](#) (OMS 881) - Credits: 15.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

[Environment and development 811](#) (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00

[Strategic environmental management 822](#) (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental paradigms 810](#) (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental law 816](#) (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

[Mini-dissertation 891](#) (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00





### Elective modules

- Environment and development 811 (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00
- Strategic environmental management 822 (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00
- Environment and land reform 823 (ENS 823) - Credits: 15.00
- Social modelling and assessment 824 (ENS 824) - Credits: 15.00
- International environmental management systems 822 (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00
- Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833 (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00
- Forest ecology and management 835 (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental valuation and policy 826 (LEK 826) - Credits: 15.00
- Environmental change 881 (OMS 881) - Credits: 15.00

## MSc eScience (Coursework) (02250193)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

The curriculum for the MSc (eScience) coursework degree programme comprises 180 credits of coursework and a research component. One of the key features of the curriculum is a capstone project that runs parallel with coursework modules in the first year of study. During the capstone project, students will go through the entire cycles of solving a real-world data science problem, collecting and processing real-world data, designing methods to solve the problem, and implementing a solution. The capstone project and coursework prepare the student for the mini-dissertation problem supervised by an expert.

### Admission requirements

- An honours degree in either statistics, mathematics, computer science, physics, or related fields; and demonstrable knowledge of basic principles of probability and statistics, computing, calculus and linear algebra;
- or
- Passing an entrance evaluation designed by the academic advisory committee of the programme within the consortium. An average of 65% or more at honours level is the minimum for consideration. Admission will be competitive and an honours average of at least 70% is highly recommended.
- Student numbers are limited to a maximum of 30 over the consortium (6 at the University of Pretoria).
- Admission is additionally dependent on availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the participating departments.
- Historical performance during prior studies will also be considered in selecting students. Specific attention will be given to modules repeated and duration of study.
- The research proposal of applicants should be in line with the research focus of the participating departments.
- Any further additional entrance requirements as specified by the head of department in consultation with the departmental postgraduate selection committee and the academic advisory committee of the programme.
- Applications must include full academic transcripts from undergraduate to current level. SAQA evaluation documentation is required for international applications and on request for students with qualifications from South African institutions.

### Other programme-specific information



Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and other requirements for master's degrees.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75%, with a minimum of 65% in each module, and a mark of at least 75% for the mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Choose 4 modules to the value of 60 credits from the list of electives.

#### Core modules

Research methods and capstone project in data science 801 (NEP 801) - Credits: 15.00

Data privacy and ethics 802 (NEP 802) - Credits: 15.00

#### Elective modules

Adaptive computation and machine learning 803 (NEP 803) - Credits: 15.00

Data visualisation and exploration 804 (NEP 804) - Credits: 15.00

Large-scale computing systems and scientific computing 805 (NEP 805) - Credits: 15.00

Mathematical foundations of data science 806 (NEP 806) - Credits: 15.00

Special topics in data science 807 (NEP 807) - Credits: 15.00

Statistical foundations of data science 808 (NEP 808) - Credits: 15.00

Large-scale optimisation for data science 809 (NEP 809) - Credits: 15.00

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Fundamental modules

Mini-dissertation: eScience 800 (NEP 800) - Credits: 90.00

## MSc Financial Engineering (02250188)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The candidate must complete a dissertation in one of the fields of Financial Engineering in which research is actively being done in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.

The programme consists of 180 credits all allocated to the dissertation. If deemed necessary and depending on the candidate's academic background and the scope of the study, additional requirements will be set. These additional requirements are non-credit bearing and will be assessed. The composition of the additional requirements is to be decided in consultation with the supervisor and Head of Department or nominated representative. The successful completion of any additional requirements is mandatory and forms part of the degree requirements.

Full details of the compilation of the curriculum, research fields and names of possible supervisors are available in the departmental postgraduate brochure at: [www.up.ac.za/math/postgrad](http://www.up.ac.za/math/postgrad)

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- BScHons (Financial Engineering)
- At least a final grade point average of 60% for the preceding degree
- Complete undergraduate and preceding degree will be considered for selection.
- Admission is furthermore contingent on the availability of supervisors and/or research projects within the Department.

### **Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### **Pass with distinction**

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**



---

Dissertation: Financial engineering 894 (WTW 894) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Food Science (02250506)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

Candidates must write a dissertation on their research project in food science and/or food technology and at least a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Dissertation: Food science 890 (FST 890) - Credits: 180.00



---

## MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework) (02250415)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

This programme is coordinated by the Department of Plant and Soil Science.

The purpose of this option is to equip graduates with a biological and/or agricultural background to specialise further to obtain skills in environmental management and in sustainable forest resource use and management. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant with the multifunctional nature of the forest resource base and be equipped to render advice concerning forest resource use and management with an understanding of the environmental consequences associated with exploitative use of natural resources. This includes grounding in forest resource use and management, including yield regulations in natural and commercial forest systems, participatory approaches to natural resource management, ecosystem structure, composition and function, ecosystem services, notions of ecosystem health, control of invasive species and community restoration, understanding of local communities, forestry and rural development, participatory planning and monitoring, the forest harvesting schedules and logistics, non-timber forest products, the science of wood and forest wood products utilisation, understanding of the basic economics of natural resources and social development and planning.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- Candidates must have either a three-year BSc and a BScHons or a four-year degree qualification in agricultural, forestry or biological sciences.
- Admission is subject to the approval of the Forestry Chair in consultation with the Director of the Centre for Environmental Studies.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable



to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Programme information:

Minimum credits: 180

Core credits: 135

Elective credits: 45

### Core modules

[Environmental paradigms 810](#) (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental law 816](#) (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

[Mini-dissertation 891](#) (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

[General introduction to forestry 831](#) (FOR 831) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

[Strategic environmental management 822](#) (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Environment and land reform 823](#) (ENS 823) - Credits: 15.00

[International environmental management systems 822](#) (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833](#) (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00

[Forest resource use planning and management 832](#) (FOR 832) - Credits: 15.00

[Forest engineering 833](#) (FOR 833) - Credits: 15.00

[Wood science and forest products 834](#) (FOR 834) - Credits: 15.00

[Forest ecology and management 835](#) (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00

[Silviculture 836](#) (FOR 836) - Credits: 15.00

[Forest resource economics and policy 831](#) (LEK 831) - Credits: 20.00

[Environmental change 881](#) (OMS 881) - Credits: 15.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

[Environmental paradigms 810](#) (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental law 816](#) (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

[Mini-dissertation 891](#) (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

[General introduction to forestry 831](#) (FOR 831) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

[Strategic environmental management 822](#) (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Environment and land reform 823](#) (ENS 823) - Credits: 15.00



International environmental management systems 822 (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00

Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833 (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00

Forest resource use planning and management 832 (FOR 832) - Credits: 15.00

Forest engineering 833 (FOR 833) - Credits: 15.00

Wood science and forest products 834 (FOR 834) - Credits: 15.00

Forest ecology and management 835 (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00

Silviculture 836 (FOR 836) - Credits: 15.00

Forest resource economics and policy 831 (LEK 831) - Credits: 20.00

Environmental change 881 (OMS 881) - Credits: 15.00

## MSc Forest Science (02250532)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

*This is an interdepartmental programme.*

The curriculum is to be determined by the heads of department in the biological sciences. Please consult with Prof P Chirwa, Tel: 012 420 3213, for further details.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- A prior four-year bachelor qualification in Forestry or Forest Science or an equivalent honours degree in a related field.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required.)

### Other programme-specific information

Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of department where deemed necessary.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where



applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Dissertation: Forest science 890 (FOR 890) - Credits: 180.00

### MSc Genetics (02250535)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of department
- Preference will be given to applicants with the highest final grade point averages for their preceding degree.
- Applicants may be subjected to an entrance evaluation examination.

### Other programme-specific information

Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of department where deemed necessary.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.



---

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### **Pass with distinction**

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Dissertation: [Genetics 890](#) (GTK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## **MSc Geography (02250413)**

**Minimum duration of study**                      1 year

### **Programme information**

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 65% for the preceding degree

### **Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate



coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Dissertation: Geography 890 (GGF 890) - Credits: 180.00

### MSc Geoinformatics (02250414)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 65% for the preceding degree

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.



---

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Geoinformatics 890 (GIS 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Geology (02250142)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation,



that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Geology 890](#) (GLG 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Mathematics (02250185)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The candidate must complete a dissertation in one of the fields of Mathematics in which research is actively being done in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.

The programme consists of 180 credits all allocated to the dissertation. If deemed necessary and depending on the candidate's academic background and the scope of the study, additional requirements will be set. These additional requirements are non-credit bearing and will be assessed. The composition of the additional requirements is to be decided in consultation with the supervisor and Head of Department or nominated representative. The successful completion of any additional requirements is mandatory and forms part of the degree requirements.

Full details of the compilation of the curriculum, research fields and names of possible supervisors are available in the departmental postgraduate brochure at: <http://www.up.ac.za/math/postgrad>

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% for the preceding degree
- Complete undergraduate and preceding degree will be considered for selection.
- Recommend modules at honours level:
  - Measure and integration theory
  - Functional analysis
  - Topology and Algebra



## Other programme-specific information

The minimum duration for this degree is one year. Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a master's degree must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the head of department, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period. (Also see the General Regulations.)

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

[Dissertation Mathematics 890](#) (WIS 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Mathematics Education (02250187)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The candidate must complete a dissertation in one of the fields of Mathematics Education in which research is actively being done in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.

The programme consists of 180 credits all allocated to the dissertation. If deemed necessary and depending on the candidate's academic background and the scope of the study, additional requirements will be set. These additional requirements are non-credit bearing and will be assessed. The composition of the additional requirements is to be decided in consultation with the supervisor and Head of Department or nominated representative. The successful completion of any additional requirements is mandatory and forms part of the degree requirements.

Full details of the compilation of the curriculum are available in the departmental postgraduate brochure at: <http://www.up.ac.za/math/postgrad>

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the

second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% for the preceding degree
- Complete undergraduate and preceding degree will be considered for selection
- Recommend modules at honours level:
  - Measure and integration theory
  - Functional analysis

## Other programme-specific information

The minimum duration for this degree is one year. Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a master's degree must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the head of department, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period. (Also see the General Regulations.)

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Mathematics education 893](#) (WTW 893) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Mathematics of Finance (02250186)

**Minimum duration of study**                      1 year

## Programme information

The candidate must complete a dissertation in one of the fields of Mathematics of Finance in which research is actively being done in the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.

The programme consists of 180 credits all allocated to the dissertation. If deemed necessary and depending on the candidate's academic background and the scope of the study, additional requirements will be set. These additional requirements are non-credit bearing and will be assessed. The composition of the additional requirements is to be decided in consultation with the supervisor and Head of Department or nominated representative. The successful completion of any additional requirements is mandatory and forms part of the degree requirements.

Full details of the compilation of the curriculum, research fields and names of possible supervisors are available in the departmental postgraduate brochure at: [www.up.ac.za/math/postgrad](http://www.up.ac.za/math/postgrad)

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- At least a final grade point average of 60% for the preceding degree
- Complete undergraduate and preceding degree will be considered for selection.
- Recommend modules at honours level:
  - Measure and integration theory
  - Functional analysis
  - Financial mathematics
  - Financial engineering.

## Other programme-specific information

The minimum duration for this degree is normally one year. Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a master's degree must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the head of department, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period. (Also see the General Regulations.)

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.



Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Mathematics of finance 892](#) (WTW 892) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Medicinal Plant Science (02250539)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

1. BScHons (Medicinal Plant Science) degree **or** relevant honours degree
2. An average of at least 60% for each of the following or equivalent modules:

- Advanced Phytomedicine,
- Phytopharmacology, and
- Pharmacognosy/Phytotherapy

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where





applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Dissertation: Medical plant science 890 (MPS 890) - Credits: 180.00

### MSc Meteorology (02250073)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 65% for the preceding degree

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel.



Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Meteorology 890 (AWM 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Microbiology (02250504)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.



---

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Microbiology 890 (MBY 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Nutrition (02250416)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The degree is conferred based on a dissertation.

Candidates must write a dissertation on their research project in Nutrition and at least a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.



---

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Nutrition 890 (VDG 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Physics (02250232)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The programme consists of:

- Dissertation (determined by supervisor and head of department)
- Theoretical modules (maximum of 60 lectures) may be taken and are determined by the supervisor and head of department. These modules are to supplement the subject of the dissertation of the student.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

### Additional requirements

Permission from the head of department and depending on availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel.



Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Physics 890 (FSK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Plant Pathology (02250500)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.



---

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Plant pathology 890 (PPT 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Plant Science (02250541)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScHons (Plant Science) or BScHons (Medicinal Plant Science)
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of department

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Plant science 890 (BOT 890) - Credits: 180.00



## MSc Science Education (02250445)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

This programme is offered by the Centre for Science, Mathematics and Technology Education. Students are registered in a discipline department. The MSc (Science Education) is designed for educators who wish to pursue their postgraduate studies in both a scientific discipline and in science education. Science, in this context, is interpreted in its broadest sense, and includes the physical, biological and earth sciences, as well as mathematics and technology.

At the end of this programme the student will be capable of doing research in both scientific and educational disciplines. Candidates achieve an adequate background to pursue further qualifications in either content disciplines or the discipline of Science Education.

Related master's degree: MSc in Mathematics Education.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScHons or equivalent degree

### Other programme-specific information

Postgraduate modules may be required by the head of the department concerned. The dissertation will be supervised jointly by the Centre for Science Education and a discipline department.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel.



Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Chemistry 890 (CHM 890) - Credits: 180.00

Dissertation: Science education 890 (SCE 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Soil Science (02250502)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BSc (Soil Science) and BScHons (Soil Science) or equivalent qualification
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree
- A motivation letter reflecting research interest
- Prospective students – depending on their academic background and the chosen area of study – may be required to do additional coursework.

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation,



that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Soil science 890 (GDK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Water Resource Management (02250530)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

Coordinated by the Department of Microbiology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in the sustainable management of water resources. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in water resource management in Southern Africa. This includes principles of quality management, water conservation, water demand management, water supply and sanitation technologies.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScHons or equivalent degree.
- In the selection procedure the candidate's complete undergraduate and honours academic record will be considered.
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

### Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.



Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Water resource management 896](#) (ENV 896) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Water Resource Management (Coursework) (02250406)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

This programme is coordinated by the Department of Microbiology and Plant Pathology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in the sustainable management of water resources. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in water resource management in Southern Africa. This includes principles of quality management, water conservation, water demand management, water supply and sanitation technologies.

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScHons or a four-year degree qualification, or equivalent degree which includes appropriate subjects in water management and/or water ecology.



- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)

### **Additional requirements**

Candidates must demonstrate proficiency in the English language up to the level required by either the TOEFL test ([www.ets.org/toefl](http://www.ets.org/toefl)) or the IELTS language proficiency test ([www.ielts.org](http://www.ielts.org)).

### **Other programme-specific information**

At least one additional elective module must be selected in consultation with the Director of the Centre and the Head of the Department of Microbiology and Plant Pathology. Choice of electives will be based on the academic background and/or anticipated career of the candidate.

### **Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### **Pass with distinction**

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

At least one additional elective module must be selected in consultation with the Director of the Centre and the Head of the Department of Microbiology and Plant Pathology. Choice of electives will be based on the academic background and/or anticipated career of the candidate.

#### **Core modules**

[Environmental paradigms 810](#) (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental law 816](#) (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

[Mini-dissertation 891](#) (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

[Water quality management 810](#) (EWM 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Water conservation and demand management 821](#) (EWM 821) - Credits: 15.00

[Water supply and sanitation 822](#) (EWM 822) - Credits: 15.00

#### **Elective modules**

[Environment and development 811](#) (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00

[Strategic environmental management 822](#) (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Social modelling and assessment 824](#) (ENS 824) - Credits: 15.00

[International environmental management systems 822](#) (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833](#) (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00



Forest ecology and management 835 (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00

Environmental change 881 (OMS 881) - Credits: 15.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Environmental paradigms 810 (ENV 810) - Credits: 15.00

Environmental law 816 (ENV 816) - Credits: 15.00

Mini-dissertation 891 (ENV 891) - Credits: 90.00

Water quality management 810 (EWM 810) - Credits: 15.00

Water conservation and demand management 821 (EWM 821) - Credits: 15.00

Water supply and sanitation 822 (EWM 822) - Credits: 15.00

### Elective modules

Environment and development 811 (ENS 811) - Credits: 15.00

Strategic environmental management 822 (ENS 822) - Credits: 15.00

Social modelling and assessment 824 (ENS 824) - Credits: 15.00

International environmental management systems 822 (ENV 822) - Credits: 15.00

Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833 (ENV 833) - Credits: 15.00

Forest ecology and management 835 (FOR 835) - Credits: 15.00

Environmental change 881 (OMS 881) - Credits: 15.00

## MSc Wildlife Management (02250510)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

### Programme information

The degree programme entails a research project with dissertation. Please contact the programme manager at the Centre for Wildlife Management for the available options - Prof Michael Somers, Tel: (012) 420 6091 or [michael.somers@up.ac.za](mailto:michael.somers@up.ac.za)

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScHons (Wildlife Management) or an equivalent qualification
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree



## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

## Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Wildlife management 890](#) (NLB 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MSc Zoology (02250516)

**Minimum duration of study** 1 year

## Programme information

The MSc degree is conferred on the grounds of a dissertation and such additional postgraduate coursework as may be prescribed.

## Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation that is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all master's candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable



to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

Subject to exceptions approved by the Dean, on recommendation of the relevant head of department, and where applicable, a student may not enter for the master's examination in the same module more than twice.

### Pass with distinction

The MSc degree is conferred with distinction to candidates who obtain a final average mark of at least 75% and a mark of at least 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation from each of the members of the examination panel. Where a member of the examination panel awards a mark of less than 75% for the dissertation/mini-dissertation, that member of the examination panel must offer, in writing, support for his/her decision, or indicate in writing that he/she supports the examination committee's decision to confer the degree with distinction.

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Dissertation: Zoology 890 (ZOO 890) - Credits: 180.00

### MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework) (02255001)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

**Contact** Mrs C Kock [charlotte.kock@up.ac.za](mailto:charlotte.kock@up.ac.za) +27 (0)124205074

### Programme information

#### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

#### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

#### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.
- c. Please note that not all modules will be offered in any one year.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.



## Admission requirements

- BScAgric major in agricultural economics
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level

## Other programme-specific information

Students should complete a module in research methodology as preparation for the dissertation module.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Minimum credits:

Core = 60 credits

Electives = 30 credits

### **ADDITIONAL PROGRAMME INFORMATION**

Select TWO electives to the value of 30 credits according to the area of specialisation:

(Note: not all electives are presented each year. The presentation of an elective module is dependent on the number of students interested in enrolling for the module)

Areas of specialisation with relevant elective modules:

Agricultural and rural development:

*For this area LEK 885 is compulsory*

LEK 885 - Agricultural and rural development 885

*Take one additional module from the following:*

LEK 812 - Agricultural policy 812

LEK 833 - Food policy 833

LEK 884 - Advanced rural finance 884

Agricultural and rural finance:

LEK 822 - Advanced agricultural finance and risk management 822

LEK 884 - Advanced rural finance 884

Food and agribusiness management:

LEK 811 - Production economics 811

LEK 813 - Agribusiness marketing management 813

LEK 823 - Advanced agribusiness management 823

LEK 883 - Agricultural supply chain management 883

Food and agricultural policy:



LEK 811 - Production economics 811

LEK 812 - Agricultural policy 812

LEK 827 - International agricultural trade and policy 827

LEK 833 - Food policy 833

LEK 834 - Measuring and monitoring food security 834

Resource and environmental economics:

LEK 811 - Production economics 811

LEK 826 - Environmental evaluation and policy 826

LEK 886 - The economics of natural resources 886

LEK 887 - Selected topics in environmental economics 887

**Core modules**

[Applied econometrics 810](#) (LEK 810) - Credits: 15.00

[Applied micro-economics 815](#) (LEK 815) - Credits: 15.00

[Institutional economics 882](#) (LEK 882) - Credits: 15.00

[Research methodology 888](#) (LEK 888) - Credits: 15.00

**Elective modules**

[Production economics 811](#) (LEK 811) - Credits: 15.00

[Agricultural policy analysis 812](#) (LEK 812) - Credits: 15.00

[Agribusiness marketing management 813](#) (LEK 813) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced agricultural finance and risk management 822](#) (LEK 822) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced agribusiness management 823](#) (LEK 823) - Credits: 15.00

[Environmental valuation and policy 826](#) (LEK 826) - Credits: 15.00

[Food policy 833](#) (LEK 833) - Credits: 15.00

[Measuring and monitoring food security 834](#) (LEK 834) - Credits: 15.00

[Agricultural supply chain management 883](#) (LEK 883) - Credits: 15.00

[Advanced rural finance 884](#) (LEK 884) - Credits: 15.00

[Agricultural and rural development 885](#) (LEK 885) - Credits: 15.00

[The economics of natural resources 886](#) (LEK 886) - Credits: 15.00

[Selected topics in environmental economics 887](#) (LEK 887) - Credits: 15.00

**Curriculum: Final year**

Minimum credits:

Core = 90 credits

**Core modules**

[Mini-dissertation: Agricultural economics 892](#) (LEK 892) - Credits: 90.00

**MScAgric Agricultural Extension (02255014)**

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years





## Programme information

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- A four-year BScAgric degree in any field of specialisation; or completion of the BAgricHons (Extension); or at least 120 credits of relevant Extension modules at postgraduate level (honours level) with an average of 65%.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Agrarian Extension 890 (AGV 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Agrarian Extension 890 (AGV 890) - Credits: 180.00



## MScAgric Agronomy (02255010)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

#### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

#### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScAgric (Applied Plant Sciences) or equivalent qualification
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- A motivation letter reflecting research interest
- Prospective students depending on their academic background and the chosen area of study, may be required to do additional coursework

### Additional requirements

In addition to the set admission requirements, a motivation letter reflecting research interest should accompany the application form. Selection of students will be based on academic performance, the motivation letter, available supervisory capacity and research project funding.

### Other programme-specific information

Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.



## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Agronomy 890 (AGR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Agronomy 890 (AGR 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MScAgric Animal Science Animal Breeding and Genetics (02255013)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

The curriculum consists of the following:

A dissertation of 180 credits; or

A dissertation of 150 credits and advanced study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules to the maximum of 30 credits that may be prescribed by the Dean on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.



## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScAgric (Animal Science) or an equivalent degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level

Admission is additionally dependent on the availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MScAgric Animal Science Animal Nutrition (02255008)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

The curriculum for the MScAgric degree (Animal Science) (Animal Nutrition) consists of the following:

A dissertation of 180 credits; or

A dissertation of 150 credits and advanced study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules to the maximum of 30 credits that may be prescribed by the Dean on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of



department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScAgric (Animal Science) or an equivalent degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level

Admission is additionally dependent on the availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MScAgric Animal Science Livestock Production and Ecology (02255009)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

The curriculum consists of the following:

A dissertation of 180 credits; or

A dissertation of 150 credits and advanced study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules to the



maximum of 30 credits that may be prescribed by the Dean on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

### **Residence**

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### **Renewal of registration**

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### **Curriculum**

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- BScAgric (Animal Science) or an equivalent degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level Admission is additionally dependent on availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890) - Credits: 180.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**



## Core modules

Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890) - Credits: 180.00

# MScAgric Animal Science Production Physiology and Product Quality (02255007)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Programme information

The curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of a dissertation of 180 credits

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScAgric (Animal Science) or an equivalent degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level

Admission is additionally dependent on the availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.



---

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MScAgric Entomology (02255003)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

#### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

#### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

#### Admission requirements

- BScHons or an equivalent degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level

#### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the





examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Entomology 890 (ENT 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Entomology 890 (ENT 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MScAgric Genetics (02255005)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

#### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

#### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScAgric/BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- Preference for the applicant with the highest final grade point average
- Applicants may be subjected to an entrance evaluation examination.



## Other programme-specific information

Students registered for the MScAgric programme will be required to complete ancillary modules concurrently with the abovementioned dissertation during their first year of registration. These modules will be selected from the Genetics honours modules (700-level). Candidates in possession of a BScAgricHons may be exempted from these modules.

**Note:** Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of department where deemed necessary.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Genetics 890](#) (GTK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: [Genetics 890](#) (GTK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MScAgric Horticulture (02255002)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.



## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScAgric (Applied Plant Sciences) or equivalent qualification
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- A motivation letter reflecting research interest
- Prospective students depending on their academic background and the chosen area of study, may be required to do additional coursework.

## Other programme-specific information

**Note:** Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Horticultural science 890 (TBK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Horticultural science 890 (TBK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MScAgric Pasture Science (02255011)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Programme information

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of

department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

## Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- BScAgric (Applied Plant/Animal Sciences) or equivalent qualification
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- A motivation letter reflecting research interest
- Prospective students depending on their academic background and the chosen area of study, may be required to do additional coursework.

## Other programme-specific information

**Note:** Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Pasture science 890 (WDE 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Pasture science 890 (WDE 890) - Credits: 180.00

## MScAgric Plant Pathology (02255006)

**Minimum duration of study**            2 years

## Programme information

### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate BScAgric/BScHons degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Plant pathology 890 (PPT 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Plant pathology 890 (PPT 890) - Credits: 180.00



## MScAgric Soil Science (02255012)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Residence

On the recommendation of the relevant head of department, the Dean may set specific residential requirements for the MScAgric degree.

#### Renewal of registration

As long as progress is satisfactory, renewal of the registration of a master's student will be accepted for the second year of the study. Registration for a third and subsequent years will only take place when the Student Administration of the Faculty receives a written motivation which is supported by the relevant head of department and Postgraduate Studies Committee.

#### Curriculum

Subject to programme-specific requirements, the curriculum for the MScAgric degree consists of the following:

- a. A dissertation; and
- b. Further study in the major subject/s, augmented by ancillary modules prescribed by the Postgraduate Studies Committee, on the recommendation of the head of department. Such ancillary modules may be taken simultaneously with the major subject/s. Candidates in possession of the BScAgricHons degree may be exempted from additional ancillary modules.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum period of registration and the requirements on the submission of a draft article for publication.

### Admission requirements

- BScAgric (Applied Plant and Soil Science) or equivalent qualification
- A final grade point average of at least 60% at final-year level
- A motivation letter reflecting research interest
- Prospective students, depending on their academic background and the chosen area of study, may be required to do additional coursework.

### Other programme-specific information

Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. The examinations in the ancillary modules should be successfully completed prior to, or simultaneously with, the examinations in the major subject/s, unless the Faculty Board decides otherwise.
- ii. General Regulation G.12.2 applies to the calculation of marks.
- iii. In order to obtain the MScAgric degree, the candidate must pass all prescribed modules, including the examination in the major subject/s, as well as the dissertation.



## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Dissertation: Soil science 890 (GDK 890) - Credits: 180.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Dissertation: Soil science 890 (GDK 890) - Credits: 180.00



## Doctorate

### PhD Actuarial Science (02260772)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

#### Programme information

A candidate must complete a thesis in one of several fields in which research is actively being done in the Department.

The programme consists of a thesis. Additional modules (as approved by the postgraduate coordinator) may be required depending on the candidate's background and the scope of the study. The research fields and the names of possible supervisors are available from the department at [www.up.ac.za/actuarial](http://www.up.ac.za/actuarial).

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

#### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

#### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

#### Admission requirements

- An appropriate master's degree
- Master's programme must have included a dissertation.
- Complete honours and master's academic record will be considered for selection.
- Admission is furthermore contingent on the availability of supervisors and/or research projects within the Department.





## Other programme-specific information

The minimum duration for this degree is two years. Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctoral degree must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the head of department, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period. (In accordance with General Regulations G.47 and G.51.)

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all doctoral candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Actuarial science 990 (AKW 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Actuarial science 990 (AKW 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Agricultural Economics (02261030)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

This programme consists of a thesis and an oral examination.

All students need to follow a preparatory programme for the thesis which is not part of the degree programme. This preparatory programme should at least cover the following modules or their equivalents:

- Any two modules in economic or applied economic theory (eg Microeconomics or Macroeconomics)
- One module in quantitative methods (Econometrics, Applied econometrics, Quantitative methods, or Partial equilibrium modelling)
- One module in the field of specialisation (institutional economics, science and technology policy, food policy, etc)

If these modules or their equivalents have been completed successfully and a PhD proposal has been presented successfully to and approved by the Department's postgraduate committee, the student may proceed to the research phase and the thesis. Students can be exempted from this preparatory programme if equivalent modules are completed at other universities and students could provide evidence that these prerequisites have

been met.

For students with an MInstAgrar or similar qualification, additional modules might be recommended in order to ensure that the candidates' quantitative abilities are at the same level as someone entering the programme with an MScAgric.

### **Duration of studies**

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- MScAgric or an equivalent applicable degree.
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**



## Core modules

Thesis: Agricultural economics 991 (LEK 991) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Agricultural economics 991 (LEK 991) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Agronomy (02260803)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

This programme is coordinated in the Department of Plant and Soil Science.

In addition to further theoretical studies as prescribed by the head(s) of the relevant department(s), the study will involve a doctoral research thesis under guidance of a supervisor selected by the head of department. The supervisor will be a member of the Faculty staff.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- MScAgric (Agronomy) or applicable research master's qualification



- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree
- A research proposal
- Prospective students depending on their academic background and the chosen area of study, may be required to do additional coursework

### Additional requirements

In addition to meeting the admission requirements, a research proposal should accompany the application form. Selection of students will be based on academic performance, the written research proposal, available supervisory capacity and research project funding.

### Other programme-specific information

Depending on the academic background of the student and the chosen area of study, it may be required of the student to do additional coursework.

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### Curriculum: Year 1

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Agronomy 990](#) (AGR 990) - Credits: 360.00

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Agronomy 990](#) (AGR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Air Quality Management (02261045)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

### Programme information

Coordinated by the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

The extensions to the National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) promulgated after 2005 affect environmental management in South Africa in a profound way. In particular, the Air Quality Act brings South African legislation into line with international trends. The metro councils are charged with the responsibility of implementing the Act at the local level. In addition, companies need appropriate expertise to obtain licenses for their air quality management plans. This focus area serves to provide suitable expertise for the implementation

of the above legislation by industry by training graduates specialised for careers in air quality management. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning the legislative requirements with respect to air quality management, modelling of and measurement of air pollution and the interpretation of pollution plumes, the measurement and interpretation of chemical air pollution as well as dust pollution, international agreements and requirements as well as the effects of air pollution on humans.

### **Duration of studies**

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- MSc (Air Quality Management) or an equivalent degree
- Applicants need to prove that they published one research paper in an open scientific literature (i.e. peer-reviewed professional research journals)
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 9 required)

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:

- pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
- pass the thesis; and



- pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Air quality management 998 (ENV 998) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Air quality management 998 (ENV 998) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Animal Production Management (02260548)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

This programme is coordinated in the Department of Animal and Wildlife Sciences.

In addition to further theoretical studies as prescribed by the head(s) of the relevant department(s), the study will involve a doctoral research thesis under guidance of a supervisor selected by the head of department. The supervisor will be a member of the Faculty staff.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.



## Admission requirements

The minimum admission requirements are an MAgric or MScAgric degree in Animal Production or an equivalent appropriate qualification. Dependent on availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Animal production 990 (APZ 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Animal production 990 (APZ 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Animal Science (02261050)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

The curriculum for the PhD degree programme consists of the following:

- i. A theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed (Animal science modules at 800-level).
- ii. A thesis.

## Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

## Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the



relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MScAgric (Animal Science) or an equivalent applicable degree.
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree
- A research proposal

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Animal science 990 (VKU 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Animal science 990 (VKU 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Biochemistry (02260442)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since





registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- MSc (Biochemistry)
- At least an average of 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of the department

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Project and thesis 990 (BCM 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Project and thesis 990 (BCM 990) - Credits: 360.00

## **PhD Bioinformatics (02261020)**

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

### **Programme information**



## Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

## Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MSc (Bioinformatics)
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:

- pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
- pass the thesis; and
- pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Bioinformatics 990 (BIF 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year



## Core modules

Thesis: Bioinformatics 990 (BIF 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Biotechnology (02261021)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

*This is an interdepartmental programme.*

The curriculum is to be determined by the heads of the participating departments. Please consult with Prof P Bloomer, Tel: 012 420 3259, for further details.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of the department

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.



ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:

- pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
- pass the thesis; and
- pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Agronomy 990](#) (AGR 990) - Credits: 360.00

Project and thesis [990](#) (BCM 990) - Credits: 360.00

Thesis: [Plant science 990](#) (BOT 990) - Credits: 360.00

Thesis: [Genetics 990](#) (GTK 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Agronomy 990](#) (AGR 990) - Credits: 360.00

Project and thesis [990](#) (BCM 990) - Credits: 360.00

Thesis: [Plant science 990](#) (BOT 990) - Credits: 360.00

Thesis: [Genetics 990](#) (GTK 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Chemistry (02260453)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

#### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.



ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or recommendation from the head of the department
- Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of the department where deemed necessary.

### Examinations and pass requirements

- Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### Curriculum: Year 1

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Chemistry 990](#) (CHM 990) - Credits: 360.00

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Chemistry 990](#) (CHM 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Consumer Science Clothing Management (02263006)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

### Programme information

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.



## Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MConsumer Science or applicable master's degree with a pass mark of at least 60%.
- To proceed with the thesis a student should have:
  - fulfilled the requirements for the master's degree;
  - completed Research methodology 814 (NMN 814) or similar module of the same level and scope; and
  - published at least one article in an accredited/refereed research journal during the two years prior to registration for the PhD degree or prove that one has been accepted in an accredited/refereed journal.
- It must be evident from the master's dissertation or publications based on it, that the candidate is able to undertake research independently. Note: It may be required from the student to do additional coursework.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Consumer Science Development (02263007)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years



---

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MConsumer Science or applicable master's degree with a pass mark of at least 60%.
- To proceed with the thesis a student should have:
  - fulfilled the requirements for the master's degree;
  - completed Research methodology 814 (NMN 814) or similar module of the same level and scope; and
  - published at least one article in an accredited/refereed research journal during the two years prior to registration for the PhD degree or prove that one has been accepted in an accredited/refereed journal.
- It must be evident from the master's dissertation or publications based on it, that the candidate is able to undertake research independently.

Note: It may be required from the student to do additional coursework.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:

- pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
- pass the thesis; and
- pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.



---

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Consumer Science Food Management (02263008)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

#### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

#### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- MConsumer Science or applicable master's degree with a pass mark of at least 60%.
- To proceed with the thesis a student should have:
  - fulfilled the requirements for the master's degree;
  - completed Research methodology 814 (NMN 814) or similar module of the same level and scope; and





- published at least one article in an accredited/refereed research journal during the two years prior to registration for the PhD degree or prove that one has been accepted in an accredited/refereed journal.
- It must be evident from the master's dissertation or publications based on it, that the candidate is able to undertake research independently.

Note: It may be required from the student to do additional coursework.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Consumer Science Interior Merchandise Management (02263005)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.



## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MConsumer Science or applicable master's degree with a pass mark of at least 60%.
- To proceed with the thesis a student should have:
  - fulfilled the requirements for the master's degree;
  - completed Research methodology 814 (NMN 814) or similar module of the same level and scope; and
  - published at least one article in an accredited/refereed research journal during the two years prior to registration for the PhD degree or prove that one has been accepted in an accredited/refereed journal.
- It must be evident from the master's dissertation or publications based on it, that the candidate is able to undertake research independently.

Note: It may be required from the student to do additional coursework.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology (02260524)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.



- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or recommendation from the head of the department

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Hydrogeology 990](#) (GTX 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Hydrogeology 990](#) (GTX 990) - Credits: 360.00



---

## PhD Engineering and Environmental Geology (02260547)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

#### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

#### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or recommendation from the head of the department

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.



---

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Engineering geology 990](#) (IGL 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Engineering geology 990](#) (IGL 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Engineering Geology (02260546)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Engineering geology 990](#) (IGL 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Engineering geology 990](#) (IGL 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Entomology (02260242)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:



- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of the department

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### Curriculum: Year 1

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Entomology 990](#) (ENT 990) - Credits: 360.00

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Entomology 990](#) (ENT 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Environment and Society (02261040)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

### Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

The programme is coordinated by the Department of Geography, Geoinformatics and Meteorology.

The purpose of this focus area is to train environmental graduates who specialised in careers in the humanities. On completion of the training, candidates should be conversant and be able to partake in, or render advice concerning, all aspects involved in the management of human-environment interactions. This includes social impact assessments, policy formulation, social development and planning, participatory appraisal assessments, demographic pattern and trend interpretations, resource appraisals and management.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:



- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- MSc (Environment and Society) or an equivalent degree
- Applicants need to prove that they published one research paper in an open scientific literature (i.e. peer-reviewed professional research journals)

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Environment and society 991](#) (ENV 991) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Environment and society 991](#) (ENV 991) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Environmental Economics (02261041)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

This programme is coordinated in the Department of Agricultural Economics, Extension and Rural Development. All students need to follow a preparatory programme for the thesis which is not part of the degree programme. This preparatory programme should at least cover the following modules or their equivalents:

- Any two modules in economic or applied economic theory (e.g. Microeconomics or Macroeconomics)
- One module in quantitative methods (Econometrics, Applied econometrics, Quantitative methods, or Partial equilibrium modelling)
- One module in the field of specialisation (institutional economics, science and technology policy, food policy, etc)

If these modules or their equivalents are successfully completed and a PhD proposal has been successfully presented and approved by the Department's postgraduate committee, the student may proceed to the research phase and the thesis. Students can be exempted from this preparatory programme if equivalent modules are completed at other universities and students could provide evidence that these prerequisites have been met.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.





## Admission requirements

- MSc (Environmental Economics) or an equivalent degree

## Examinations and pass requirements

- Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Environmental economics 993](#) (ENV 993) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Environmental economics 993](#) (ENV 993) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Environmental Management (02261042)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

The Centre for Environmental Studies is a graduate school for multidisciplinary training and research focusing on the environment. Training aims to satisfy the need for environmental professionals for implementing current environmental legislation as well as industry-driven environmental management systems.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.



## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MSc or MAgric in Environmental Management, or an equivalent degree.
- Applicants need to prove that they published one research paper in an open scientific literature (i.e. peer-reviewed professional research journals)

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Environmental management 994](#) (ENV 994) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Environmental management 994](#) (ENV 994) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Extension (02260900)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

The programme consists of:

- Original research leading to a thesis
- An examination on the thesis

## Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.

- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- MScAgric or an equivalent applicable degree.
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### Curriculum: Year 1

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Extension 990](#) (AGV 990) - Credits: 360.00

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Extension 990](#) (AGV 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Food Science (02261060)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years



## Programme information

The degree is awarded based on a thesis and other requirements as follows: Candidates must write a thesis on their research project in Food Science and have at least a research paper accepted for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MSc or MScAgric degree.
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1



## Core modules

Thesis: Food science 990 (FST 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Food science 990 (FST 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Forest Science (02260802)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Programme information

This is an interdepartmental programme. The curriculum is to be determined by the heads of department in the biological sciences.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MSc or MScAgric degree
- At least a final grade point average of 65% for the preceding degree.
- SAQA evaluation compulsory. (NQF level 8 required)



## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Forest Science 990 (FOR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Forest Science 990 (FOR 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Genetics (02260502)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General



Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of the department

## Examinations and pass requirements

- Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Genetics 990](#) (GTK 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Genetics 990](#) (GTK 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Geography (02260513)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of



this period.

## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 65% for the preceding degree or recommendation from the head of the department

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Geography 990](#) (GGF 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Geography 990](#) (GGF 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Geoinformatics (02260514)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.





The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 65% for the preceding degree or recommendation from the head of the department

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Geoinformatics 990](#) (GIS 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Geoinformatics 990](#) (GIS 990) - Credits: 360.00

## **PhD Geology (02260523)**

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

### **Programme information**

#### **Duration of studies**

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- An appropriate MSc degree
- At least an average of 60% for the preceding degree or recommendation from the head of the department

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Geology 990](#) (GLG 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Geology 990](#) (GLG 990) - Credits: 360.00



---

## PhD Horticultural Science (02260806)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

#### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

#### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- MScAgric (Horticultural Science) or an equivalent applicable degree.
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree
- A research proposal
- Additional coursework may be required.

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:

- pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
- pass the thesis; and
- pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.



---

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Horticultural science 990 (TBK 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Horticultural science 990 (TBK 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Mathematical Sciences (02260762)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

A candidate must complete a thesis in one of several fields in which research is actively being done in the Department. The research fields and the names of possible supervisors are available from the departmental postgraduate brochure at: [www.up.ac.za/math/postgrad](http://www.up.ac.za/math/postgrad)

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- MSc (Mathematics) or MSc (Applied Mathematics)



- Master's degree must have included a significant research component that led to a dissertation.
- Complete honours and master's academic record will be considered for selection.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Promotion to next study year

The progress of all doctoral candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

## Curriculum: Year 1

Students choose between TWS 990 and WIS 990.

### Core modules

Thesis: [Applied Mathematics 990](#) (TWS 990) - Credits: 360.00

Thesis: [Mathematics 990](#) (WIS 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

Students choose between TWS 990 and WIS 990.

### Core modules

Thesis: [Applied Mathematics 990](#) (TWS 990) - Credits: 360.00

Thesis: [Mathematics 990](#) (WIS 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Mathematical Statistics (02260612)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

A candidate must complete a thesis in one of several fields in Applied Statistics or Mathematical Statistics in which research is actively being done within the Department. Details are available from the Head of Department of Statistics as well as in the departmental brochure. Refer to the Departmental website for further information.

## Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.

- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- A relevant master's degree in Mathematical Statistics is required. A minimum average mark of 65% or more in the MSc (Mathematical Statistics) or in an applicable master's degree at an accredited institution is required.
- Students from other accredited institutions will be required to pass an entrance examination.
- Student numbers are limited to a maximum of 10, collectively over all doctoral programmes in the Department of Statistics. Selection is based on performance in the prior degree.
- Admission is also subject to the availability of a suitable supervisor for the study.
- Additional entrance requirements as specified by the head of the department.

### **Other programme-specific information**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctoral degree must complete his or her studies within four years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the head of department, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period. (Also see the General Regulations.)

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Promotion to next study year**

The progress of all doctoral candidates is monitored biannually by the supervisor and the postgraduate



coordinator. A candidate's study may be terminated if the progress is unsatisfactory or if the candidate is unable to finish his/her studies during the prescribed period.

## Curriculum: Year 1

All doctoral students in Statistics/Mathematical Statistics should enrol for STK 911 which is a compulsory but non-credit-bearing module. The satisfactory completion of this module is a prerequisite for embarking on the research component of the degree programme.

### Core modules

Research orientation 911 (STK 911) - Credits: 0.00

Thesis: Mathematical statistics 990 (WST 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Research orientation 911 (STK 911) - Credits: 0.00

Thesis: Mathematical statistics 990 (WST 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Medicinal Plant Science (02260800)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General



Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MSc (Medicinal Plant Science) or an MSc (Plant Science) or on recommendation by the head of department.
- A minimum of 60% in the compulsory modules, BOT 761, BOT 748, and BOT 749

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Medicinal plant science 990 (MPS 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Medicinal plant science 990 (MPS 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Meteorology (02260632)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.





## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- In addition to the requirements of General Regulations G.1.3 and G.62 an appropriate MSc degree is a prerequisite for admission to PhD studies. Additional requirements and conditions can be specified by the Dean on the recommendation of the head of department and the supervisor.
- Admission is additionally dependent on availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Meteorology 990](#) (AWM 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Meteorology 990](#) (AWM 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Microbiology (02260562)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.



The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of the department

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Microbiology 990](#) (MBY 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Microbiology 990](#) (MBY 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **PhD Nutrition (02260742)**

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

### **Programme information**

Candidates must write a thesis on their research project in Nutrition and have at least a research paper accepted

for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

### **Duration of studies**

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- MSc (Nutrition) or an equivalent applicable degree.
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree
- A research proposal
- An accepted research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:

- pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
- pass the thesis; and
- pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Nutrition 990](#) (VDG 990) - Credits: 360.00



## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Nutrition 990 (VDG 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Pasture Science (02260804)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

This programme is coordinated in the Department of Plant and Soil Science.

In addition to further theoretical studies as prescribed by the head(s) of the relevant department(s), the study will involve a doctoral research thesis under guidance of a supervisor selected by the head of the department. The supervisor will be a member of the Faculty staff.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- MScAgric (Animal/Pasture Science) or applicable research master's degree
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree
- A research proposal



## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Pasture science 990 (WDE 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Pasture science 990 (WDE 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Physics (02260482)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General



Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or recommendation from the head of the department

### Other programme-specific information

Additional modules may be prescribed by the head of department. The contents of the coursework will be determined by the supervisor and head of department to supplement the subject of the thesis of the student.

### Examinations and pass requirements

- Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### Curriculum: Year 1

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Physics 990](#) (FSK 990) - Credits: 360.00

### Curriculum: Final year

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Physics 990](#) (FSK 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Plant Pathology (02261070)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.



## Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

## Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

## General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- An appropriate MSc degree
- At least an average of 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of the department

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Plant pathology 990](#) (PPT 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Plant pathology 990](#) (PPT 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Plant Science (02260801)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.



- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- MSc (Plant Science) or an MSc (Medicinal Plant Science)
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of the department

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Plant science 990](#) (BOT 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Plant science 990](#) (BOT 990) - Credits: 360.00

## **PhD Rural Development (02260901)**

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years





## Programme information

In addition to further theoretical studies as prescribed by the head(s) of the relevant department(s), the study will involve a doctoral research thesis under guidance of a supervisor selected by the head of the department. The supervisor will be a member of the Faculty staff.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

## Admission requirements

- MAgric degree or an equivalent appropriate degree with the status thereof as evaluated by the head(s) of the particular department(s).
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree.

Admission is additionally dependent on availability of supervisor/s and/or projects within the department.

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.



---

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: Rural development 990 (ARD 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: Rural development 990 (ARD 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Science and Mathematics Education (02260754)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

The programme is designed for science educators at all levels who wish to pursue their postgraduate studies in science education but closely allied with a scientific discipline. Science, in this context, is interpreted in its broadest sense, and includes the physical, biological and earth sciences, as well as mathematics and technology.

At the end of this programme the student will be capable of doing independent research within the values and approaches of the sciences, and their impact and role in the broader social and economic environment with an educational focus.

For admission to the PhD in Science and Mathematics Education, the programme composition of the master's degree must have included a reasonable research component that led to a dissertation.

Applicants seeking admission in the PhD Science and Mathematics Education programme should indicate their particular field of specialization, i.e. Science Education or Mathematics Education. For Science Education, please refer to the Centre for Science, Mathematics and Technology Education. For students specialising in Mathematics Education, the contact department is the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

---



The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- An appropriate master's degree
- A candidate must demonstrate expertise in education research methodology (including relevant statistical methods) and in current thinking in the field, with the understanding that a candidate who does not satisfy the required level of expertise may be admitted on condition that additional agreed study assignments are completed and/or examinations passed.

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### Curriculum: Year 1

Students choose between SCE 990 and WTW 993.

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Science education 990](#) (SCE 990) - Credits: 360.00

Thesis: [Mathematics Education 993](#) (WTW 993) - Credits: 360.00

### Curriculum: Final year

Students choose between SCE 990 and WTW 993.

#### Core modules

Thesis: [Science education 990](#) (SCE 990) - Credits: 360.00

Thesis: [Mathematics Education 993](#) (WTW 993) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Soil Science (02260805)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

### Programme information

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.



- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### **Renewal of registration**

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### **Curriculum**

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- MScAgric (Soil Science) or applicable research master's degree
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree
- A research proposal

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: Soil science 990 (GDK 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: Soil science 990 (GDK 990) - Credits: 360.00



---

## PhD Water Resource Management (02261043)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

#### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

#### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

#### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

#### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### Admission requirements

- MSc (Water Resource Management) or an equivalent degree
- Applicants need to prove that they published one research paper in an open scientific literature (i.e. peer-reviewed professional research journals)

### Other programme-specific information

#### Additional possible electives in Environmental studies

Any module at master's level in either diplomatic studies or political policy studies as approved by the Head of the Department of Political Sciences and the Director of the Centre for Environmental Studies.

### Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:



- pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
- pass the thesis; and
- pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Water resource management 990](#) (ENV 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Water resource management 990](#) (ENV 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Wildlife Management (02260662)

**Minimum duration of study** 2 years

### Programme information

Research project with thesis only.

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

### Curriculum

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- A thesis.

### General

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.



## Admission requirements

- MSc (Wildlife Management) or an equivalent applicable degree.
- At least 60% for the dissertation component in the preceding degree
- A research proposal

## Examinations and pass requirements

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

## Curriculum: Year 1

### Core modules

Thesis: [Wildlife management 990](#) (NLB 990) - Credits: 360.00

## Curriculum: Final year

### Core modules

Thesis: [Wildlife management 990](#) (NLB 990) - Credits: 360.00

## PhD Zoology (02260462)

**Minimum duration of study**                      2 years

## Programme information

### Duration of studies

The doctorate is conferred on a student only if one of the following periods has expired:

- i. At least four years after complying with all the requirements for a three-year bachelor's degree.
- ii. At least three years after complying with all the requirements for a four-year bachelor's degree.
- iii. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a bachelor's degree of five years or more.
- iv. At least two years after complying with all the requirements for a master's degree.
- v. With the exception of a shorter period that may be approved by the Dean, at least 12 months since registration for the doctorate at this University has expired.

The relevant head of department may set specific residential requirements for students who are required to live on campus.

### Renewal of registration

Subject to other faculty regulations, a student for a doctorate must complete his or her studies within three years after first registering for the degree. Under special circumstances, the Dean, on the recommendation of the relevant head of department or the Postgraduate Committee, may give approval for a limited fixed extension of this period.

## Curriculum



---

The curriculum for the PhD degree consists of the following:

- i. Theoretical knowledge of the major subject/s and such additional modules as may be prescribed.
- ii. A thesis.

### **General**

Candidates are required to familiarise themselves with the General Regulations regarding the maximum duration of study and the requirements to submit an article/s for publication.

### **Admission requirements**

- An appropriate MSc degree
- A final grade point average of at least 60% for the preceding degree or on recommendation from the head of the department

### **Examinations and pass requirements**

- i. Consult the General Regulations that apply to the calculation of marks.
- ii. In order to obtain the PhD degree the candidate must:
  - pass the examinations and the prescribed modules, as determined in the study programme;
  - pass the thesis; and
  - pass the final examination on the thesis and general subject knowledge.

### **Curriculum: Year 1**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Zoology 990](#) (ZOO 990) - Credits: 360.00

### **Curriculum: Final year**

#### **Core modules**

Thesis: [Zoology 990](#) (ZOO 990) - Credits: 360.00





## Modules

### Labour relations 320 (ABV 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BCom](#)  
[BCom Human Resource Management](#)  
[BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BEng Industrial Engineering](#)  
[BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE](#)  
[BSocSci Industrial Sociology and Labour Studies](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Human Resource Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

The theoretical basis of Labour Relations

In this section the basic concepts, historical context and theoretical approaches to the field of labour relations will be discussed. The institutional framework in which labour relations operates, will be addressed with particular emphasis on the structural mechanisms and institutional processes. The service relationship that forms the basis of labour relations practices, will also be analysed.

Labour Relations practice

In this section students are taught the conceptual and practical skills related to practice aspects such as handling of grievances, disciplining, retrenchments, collective bargaining, industrial action and dispute resolution.

### Field crops 361 (AGR 361)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Prerequisites** PPK 251

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences



**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Botanical characteristics, classification, growth requirements, production practices and utilization of crops rich in starch, oil, sugar and protein, fibre crops, narcotic and medicinal plants. The use of conservation agriculture (CA) in field crop production is becoming ever increasingly important, especially since it is directly related to Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) 2 (food), 6 (water), 7 (energy) 13 (climate) and 15 (soil). During the semester applicable AC and SDG examples will be highlighted. Practicals will consist out of a trial on the experimental farm and visits to research institutions and producers.

## Vegetable crops 410 (AGR 410)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Integration of agronomic, pedological, botanical, economic and management considerations in crop production systems with a view to sustainable maximum economic yield. The importance of vegetables in Sustainable Development Goals 1 (poverty), 2 (food), 3 (health), 4 (education), and 12 (reduced wastage) will be highlighted in case studies of specific vegetable crops. Practicals will consist out of a trial on the experimental farm and a visit to the Tshwane fresh produce market.

## Crop production systems (I): Field crops 785 (AGR 785)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgricHons Crop Science](#)  
[BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Integrated agronomic, climatic, soil, botanical, economic and managerial considerations in crop production systems aimed at maximum economic yield and sustainability. The use of conservation agriculture (CA) in field crop production is becoming ever increasingly important, especially since it is directly related to Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) 2 (food), 6 (water), 7 (energy) 13 (climate) and 15 (soil). During the semester applicable AC and SDG examples will be highlighted in case studies of specific field crops. Practicals will consist out of a trial on the experimental farm.

## Crop production systems (II): Vegetable crops 786 (AGR 786)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgricHons Crop Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Integrating agronomic, climatic, soil, botanical, economic and managerial considerations in crop production systems aimed at maximum economic yield and sustainability. The importance of vegetables in Sustainable Development Goals 1 (poverty), 2 (food), 3 (health), 4 (education), and 12 (reduced wastage) will be highlighted in case studies of specific vegetable crops. Practicals will consist out of a trial on the experimental farm and a visit to the Tshwane fresh produce market.

## Advanced coursework 801 (AGR 801)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 120.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Any module and/or assignment(s) at the advanced level chosen in consultation with the head of department.

## Dissertation: Agronomy 890 (AGR 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00



**Programmes** [MSc Biotechnology](#)  
[MScAgric Agronomy](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

This module involves the development, presentation and approval of a research proposal, the execution of the research project, and the writing up and presentation of the research results. In addition to the dissertation, the student is also expected to compile a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed UP accredited scientific journal.

## Mini-dissertation: Agronomy 891 (AGR 891)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 120.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Each candidate must write a mini-dissertation on his/her research project in Agronomy and at least prepare a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

## Thesis: Agronomy 990 (AGR 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Agronomy](#)  
[PhD Biotechnology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

This module involves the development, presentation and approval of a research proposal, the execution of the research project, and the writing up and presenting of the research results. In addition to the thesis, the student is also expected to publish at least one research paper in a peer-reviewed, UP accredited scientific journal. An oral examination covering Pasture Science and other fields related to the thesis will be conducted after the thesis has been accepted by examiners. A candidate needs to pass both the written thesis and oral examination to qualify for the degree.

### Communication 421 (AGV 421)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Second Year - Academic level
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Separate classes for Afrikaans and English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Communication: Definition and clarification of concepts. Theory and elements of communication. Verbal and non-verbal communication. Determinants of interpersonal communication. Abating factors impeding communication. Nature, classification and efficiency of communication channels.

### Leadership and group dynamics 712 (AGV 712)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BAgricHons Extension</a> <a href="#">BAgricHons Rural Development</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year



## Module content

Nature, philosophy and objectives of Extension. The group as channel and instrument in extension; definitions and characteristics of groups; group formation; theories regarding the functioning of groups; group norms; group goals; small group techniques; rural groups and their engagement; definitions and theories of leadership; behaviour and attitude in group work; the extensionist as professional leader; group analysis in group context and process; training of leaders. Conflict resolution, mediation and negotiation. Ethics in extension and agricultural development. Management in extension; Strategic planning; functions of management.

## Communication for sustainable rural development 713 (AGV 713)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BAgricHons Extension](#)  
[BAgricHons Rural Development](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Introduction to the Communication Process, its role and importance. Communication and perception - role of Extension in AKIS. Clarification of principles and definitions; theory of communication; Strategies for communication and Extension methods. Key elements and channels of communication; credibility; persuasion; public speaking; audio visual aids; mass media and their effect; new reporting; articles and newsletters. Designing communication interventions. Impact assessment approaches and tools. Appreciative Communication Inquiry: 5-D Approach.

## Principles and approaches of rural development and extension 715 (AGV 715)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BAgricHons Extension](#)  
[BAgricHons Rural Development](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

Overview of the origin, role, development of extension; Philosophy and principles of extension. International approaches to extension delivery: Training and Visit, Farming system development, Project approach, Farmer Field Schools, Participatory Extension and Participatory Technology Development. Extension's role in sustainable agriculture development; Adult learning principles, privatizing and outsourcing of agricultural extension; the role of non-governmental organisations (NGO's) in extension delivery. Decentralisation of extension. Participation and coordination of stakeholders in the planning of linkages between extension, research and the farming community.

## Extension programme planning and management 726 (AGV 726)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BAgricHons Extension](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Nature, purpose and principles of a programmed and purposeful Extension. The philosophy, principles and assumptions of program development. Institutional framework for community participation, ownership and empowerment; linking with complementary and support services. Overview of the program cycle: consideration, survey, planning, action and evaluation phases. Participatory need appraisal, problem identification and delimitation; problem conceptualisation and development of survey instrument; situation surveys and analysis; formulation of objectives; identification and scheduling of methods and activities; Work plan of calendar construction, budgeting. The project management process. Personnel management and administration.

## Extension programme evaluation and research 728 (AGV 728)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BAgricHons Extension](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year



### Module content

Meaning, scope and place of evaluation in extension; the research- and evaluation process; problem identification; theory and hypotheses; objectives; literature research and information sources; sampling; methods of data collection; evaluation criteria; quality of measuring instruments; scale construction; interviewing. Conducting research and reporting research findings. Preparation of an evaluation report of an extension programme/project.

## Human and organisational behaviour change and management 729 (AGV 729)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BAgricHons Extension</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Understanding change and the time lag phenomenon. Principles of human behaviour and its influence on change. Theoretical perspectives on behaviour change. Understanding resistance and barriers to change. Adoption and diffusion of new innovations. Theories and models of decision-making. Introduction to organisational dynamics; Role of Extension organisations in Rural Development. Theoretical perspectives on organisational change; organisations as rationale and open systems. Understanding organisations and society; organisational pathologies; organisational effectiveness.

## Agrarian extension 800 (AGV 800)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Dissertation: Agrarian Extension 890 (AGV 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MAgric Extension</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Extension</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.





---

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Mini-dissertation: Extension 891 (AGV 891)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	120.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Extension 990 (AGV 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Extension</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Academic information management 101 (AIM 101)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	6.00



**Programmes**

- BA
- BA Audiology
- BA Extended programme
- BA Fine Arts
- BA Information Design
- BA Languages
- BA Speech-Language Pathology
- BA Visual Studies
- BDiv
- BDram
- BEd Foundation Phase Teaching
- BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BIS Information Science
- BIS Multimedia
- BIS Publishing
- BIT Information Systems
- BMus
- BMus Extended programme
- BPolSci International Studies
- BPolSci Political Studies
- BRad in Diagnostics
- BSW
- BSc Computer Science
- BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
- BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism
- BSocSci Industrial Sociology and Labour Studies
- BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics
- BTRP
- BTh

**Service modules**

- Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
- Faculty of Education
- Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
- Faculty of Humanities
- Faculty of Law
- Faculty of Health Sciences
- Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
- Faculty of Theology and Religion
- Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites**

No prerequisites.

**Contact time**

2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition**

Module is presented in English

**Department**

Information Science

**Period of presentation**

Semester 1



---

## Module content

Find, evaluate, process, manage and present information resources for academic purposes using appropriate technology. Apply effective search strategies in different technological environments. Demonstrate the ethical and fair use of information resources. Integrate 21st-century communications into the management of academic information.

## Academic information management 102 (AIM 102)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00



BA Law  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Architecture  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Interior Architecture  
BSc Landscape Architecture  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology  
BVSc  
LLB

**Programmes**

**Service modules**

Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Law  
Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences  
Faculty of Theology and Religion  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites**

No prerequisites.



---

<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Information Science
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### **Module content**

Find, evaluate, process, manage and present information resources for academic purposes using appropriate technology. Apply effective search strategies in different technological environments. Demonstrate the ethical and fair use of information resources. Integrate 21st-century communications into the management of academic information.

## **Academic information management 111 (AIM 111)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	4.00



**Programmes**

BA  
BA Extended programme  
BA Fine Arts  
BA Languages  
BA Law  
BA Visual Studies  
BAdmin Public Management and International Relations  
BCMP  
BChD  
BCom  
BCom Accounting Sciences  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Econometrics  
BCom Economics  
BCom Extended programme  
BCom Financial Sciences  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Investment Management  
BCom Law  
BCom Marketing Management  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BDietetics  
BDiv  
BDram  
BEd Foundation Phase Teaching  
BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BIS Multimedia  
BIS Publishing  
BIT Information Systems  
BNurs  
BOH  
BOccTher  
BPhysio  
BPolSci International Studies  
BPolSci Political Studies  
BRad in Diagnostics  
BSW  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Architecture  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Construction Management  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Interior Architecture  
BSc Landscape Architecture  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Quantity Surveying  
BSc Real Estate  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism  
BSocSci Industrial Sociology and Labour Studies  
BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics  
BSportSci  
BTRP  
BTh  
BVetNurs  
Diploma in Theology  
MBChB



<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Law Faculty of Health Sciences Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences Faculty of Theology and Religion
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Information Science
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Find, evaluate, process, manage and present information resources for academic purposes using appropriate technology.

## Academic information management 121 (AIM 121)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	4.00



**Programmes**

BA  
BA Extended programme  
BA Fine Arts  
BA Languages  
BA Law  
BA Visual Studies  
BAdmin Public Management and International Relations  
BCMP  
BChD  
BCom  
BCom Accounting Sciences  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Econometrics  
BCom Economics  
BCom Extended programme  
BCom Financial Sciences  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Investment Management  
BCom Law  
BCom Marketing Management  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BDietetics  
BDiv  
BDram  
BEd Foundation Phase Teaching  
BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BIS Multimedia  
BIS Publishing  
BIT Information Systems  
BNurs  
BOH  
BOccTher  
BPhysio  
BPolSci International Studies  
BPolSci Political Studies  
BRad in Diagnostics  
BSW  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Architecture  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Construction Management  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Interior Architecture  
BSc Landscape Architecture  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Quantity Surveying  
BSc Real Estate  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism  
BSocSci Industrial Sociology and Labour Studies  
BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics  
BSportSci  
BTRP  
BTh  
BVetNurs  
Diploma in Theology  
MBChB





<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Law Faculty of Health Sciences Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences Faculty of Theology and Religion Faculty of Veterinary Science
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Informatics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Apply effective search strategies in different technological environments. Demonstrate the ethical and fair use of information resources. Integrate 21st-century communications into the management of academic information.

### Dissertation: Actuarial science 890 (AKW 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Actuarial Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Actuarial Science
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Actuarial science 990 (AKW 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Actuarial Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Actuarial Science
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Introduction: Human anatomy and embryology 121 (ANA 121)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	4.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Medical Sciences</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	MLB 111 and CMY 117; Only for BSc Medical Sciences students.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Anatomy

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Terminology, musculo-skeletal system, nervous system, surface anatomy, cardiovascular system, respiratory system, urogenital system, gastro-intestinal system, endocrine system, introductory osteology and joints, introductory embryology.

## Human osteology 122 (ANA 122)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 4.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSc Medical Sciences](#)  
[BScHons Anatomy](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 and MLB 111; Only for BSc Medical Sciences students

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Anatomy

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to osteology, bone function and classification, humerus, radius, ulna, femur, tibia, fibula, clavicle, scapula, ribs, sternum, vertebrae, pelvis, hand and foot bones, sesamoid bones, skull, mandible, joints.

## Basic human histology 126 (ANA 126)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 4.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSc Medical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 and MLB 111; Only for BSc Medical Sciences students.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Anatomy

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

General introduction to cells and tissue, terminology, the cell and cytoplasm, organelles and inclusions, surface and glandular epithelium, general connective tissue, specialised connective tissue, namely cartilage, bone, blood and haemopoietic tissue, muscle and nervous tissue.

## Human cell and developmental biology 214 (ANA 214)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Medical Sciences</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ANA 121 and ANA 126 and CMY 127
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Anatomy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Functional review of the cell and cell content. Normal and abnormal cell function in relation to structure. Control of the human cell, heredity and the human genome. Cell communication, growth and development, adhesion and division. Aspects of cellular research. Techniques on how to study cells. Medical cell and molecular biology application.

NOTE: This module is not open to all students and may only be taken by BSc: Medical Sciences students.

## Paleoanthropology 215 (ANA 215)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Medical Sciences</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ANA 122 and GTS 161
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Anatomy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Introduction to paleoanthropology, focusing on hominid fossil record, principles of evolution, principles of heredity, human variation, introduction to primatology, hominid taxonomy, time-frames and dating methods, fossilisation and taphonomy, trends in hominid evolution, hominid sites. Australopithecus, homo habilis, homo erectus, homo sapiens neanderthalensis, the origin of anatomically modern human beings, DNA studies, palaeo-environments, hominid diets, introduction to the development of culture, South African populations, human adaptation and modernisation.

## Human histology 226 (ANA 226)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BSc Medical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** ANA 126

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Anatomy

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

General introduction to organ structure.

Terminology. The eye, ear, skin, circulatory system, nervous system, lymphoid system, gastrointestinal tract, gastrointestinal tract glands, respiratory system, urinary system, male and female reproductive systems, endocrine system.

NOTE: This module is not open to all students and may only be taken by BSc: Medical Sciences students.

## Human anatomy Part 1 247 (ANA 247)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BSc Medical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** ANA 121, ANA 122 and CMY 127

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Anatomy

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Regional approach to human anatomy. Cadaver dissection of the head, neck as well as neuro-anatomy. Anatomical techniques.

NOTE: This module is not open to all students and may only be taken by BSc (Medical Sciences) students.

## Forensic anthropology 315 (ANA 315)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Medical Sciences</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ANA 122, ANA 215
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Anatomy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Introduction to forensic anthropology, detection of graves, excavation of graves, human vs. animal bone, forensic entomology, osteometry, cranial and post-cranial measurements, non-metric features of the skeleton, age determination, sex determination, race determination, ante-mortem stature, dental analysis, osteopathology, factors of individualisation, measurements of the face, introduction to face mapping and skull-photo superimposition, legal aspects. NOTE: This module is not open to all students and may only be taken by BSc: Medical Sciences students.

## Cell and tissue techniques 316 (ANA 316)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Medical Sciences</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ANA 226
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Anatomy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

General introduction to light and electron microscopic techniques: fixation, processing, imbedding, staining. Principles of different staining techniques for LM and EM: routine stains, proteins, carbohydrates, amino acids, metachromasia, immunocytochemistry, lectin stains, specialised stains. Principles of the operation of LM and EM: general LM, fluorescent microscopy, differential contrast microscopy, dark field microscopy, phase contrast microscopy, transmission and scanning electron microscopy.

## Human cell and developmental biology 324 (ANA 324)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Medical Sciences</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ANA 214, ANA 226
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Anatomy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Practical aspects of cell biology. Cell, tissue, organ, and organism culture. The biology of the culture environment. Cellular basis of morphogenesis, cleavage patterns and gastrulation. The early vertebrate development; neurulation, ecto-, meso- and endoderm derivatives. Cell destiny and embryonic axis including malformations. Development of the tetrapod limb and cell death. Cell interactions at a distance through hormones and metamorphosis.

NOTE: This module is not open to all students and may only be taken by BSc: Medical Sciences students.

## Comparative anatomy 327 (ANA 327)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ANA 121, ANA 122, ANA 217, ANA 227
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Anatomy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Introduction to comparative anatomy. Introduction to comparative osteology. Comparative anatomy of the appendicular skeleton. Comparative anatomy of the axial skeleton.

NOTE: This module is not open to all students and may only be taken by BSc: Medical Sciences students.



## Applied research techniques 328 (ANA 328)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ANA 315#, ANA 316#
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Anatomy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to research. Development of research project. Research skills. Completion of literature review.  
NOTE: This module is not open to all students and may only be taken by BSc: Medical Sciences students.

## Human anatomy Part 2 347 (ANA 347)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Medical Sciences</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ANA 247
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Anatomy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Regional approach to human anatomy.  
Cadaver dissection of the head, neck as well as neuro-anatomy. Anatomical techniques.  
NOTE: This module is not open to all students and may only be taken by BSc: Medical Sciences students.

## Crop physiology 461 (APS 461)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GKD 250 and BOT 356
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

An overview of photosynthesis and respiration, with the aim of examining the physiological basis of yield in cropping systems. This includes an assessment of parameters for determining plant growth, factors governing yield, partitioning of photoassimilates within plants and opportunities for increasing yield. Crop growth and yield will be put into context of a changing global climate. Evaluation of the manner in which plants respond to various abiotic stresses and how plants sense changing environments. The various roles of plant growth regulators in plants and the importance of these compounds in agriculture.

## Crop physiology 761 (APS 761)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgricHons Crop Science](#)  
[BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, Fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

An overview of photosynthesis and respiration, with the aim of examining the physiological basis of yield in cropping systems. This includes an assessment of parameters for determining plant growth, factors governing yield, partitioning of photoassimilates within plants and opportunities for increasing yield. Crop growth and yield will be put into context of a changing global climate. Evaluation of the manner in which plants respond to various abiotic stresses and how plants sense changing environments. The various roles of plant growth regulators in plants and the importance of these compounds in agriculture.

## Livestock breeding 325 (APZ 325)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Prerequisites** GTS 261

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2





### Module content

Introduction to applied animal breeding and genetics: Genetic defects in farm and companion animals (single gene and multifactor characteristics). Phenotypic expression of genes in qualitative and quantitative inheritance. Principles of breeding and selecting farm and companion animals, breeding systems, application and interpretation of breeding values and animal recording schemes.

### Dissertation: Animal Production Management 802 (APZ 802)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MAgric Animal Production Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Animal production 990 (APZ 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Animal Production Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Air Quality Management 810 (AQM 810)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 80.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 seminar per week, 2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Meteorology: Physical laws of atmospheric flow, turbulence, fine resolution flow modelling. Atmospheric chemistry: persistent organic pollutants, aerosols, airborne particles, dispersion modelling of trace gases, measurement techniques, quality control in measurements. Toxicology and physiology of air quality, Air pollution control technology. Inspection of industrial plants.



## Boundary layer meteorology 811 (AQM 811)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Air Quality Management (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Introduction to global circulation and South African weather and climate. Mathematical functions and atmospheric balance laws. Stability and mixing heights. The atmospheric boundary layer over urban and rural areas. Turbulence. Earth's energy budget. Transfer and exchange of energy. Introduction to atmospheric and chemical dispersion modelling. Practical modelling of air pollution: Box models, Gaussian puff or plume models, stochastic models, trajectory models.

## Atmospheric chemistry 812 (AQM 812)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Air Quality Management (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

The history of atmospheric pollution. Cycles of matter and atmospheric transformations. Gaseous inorganic pollutants. Gas phase organic pollutants. Particulates. The chemistry of atmospheric environmental problems, including acid rain; global warming; ozone depletion; persistent organic pollutants; and photochemical smog. Atmospheric monitoring: sampling methods; sampling strategies; and analytical techniques.

## Atmospheric thermodynamics 813 (AQM 813)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Air Quality Management (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week



<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Gas laws. Virtual temperature. The hydrostatic and hypsometric equations. Dry adiabatic processes. The first law of thermodynamics. Latent heat. Stabilities and instabilities. Dry adiabatic temperature lapse rate. Potential temperature. Inversion layers. Atmospheric moisture and saturated-adiabatic processes. Vapour pressure. Saturation and condensation. Dew and frost point. Relative humidity. Saturated adiabatic temperature lapse rate. Cloud and rain formation. The second law of thermodynamics

## Air pollution: society and environment 814 (AQM 814)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Air Quality Management (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

International air quality criteria and standards. Ambient air quality and meteorological monitoring. Domestic pollution. Household fuel burning. Vehicle emissions. Toxicology and physiology. Industrial pollution. Emissions inventory and report sources. Air pollution and biomass. Air pollution control. Identification of alert air quality thresholds and associate information reporting, investigation and mitigation requirements. Renewable energy. Air pollution and climate. Practical experience.

## Agriculture and rural development studies 480 (ARD 480)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	32.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year



## Module content

Overview of the concepts and theories of rural development; the role of agriculture in rural development. Rural livelihood systems: household farming systems; decisions and the operation of farming systems; non-farm enterprises and SMMEs in the rural economy; household food security. Rural institutions: definitions and role of institutions; land tenure; rural financial markets; local institutional development; human capital, knowledge systems. Methodologies for rural development: the farming systems approach; participatory techniques; assessment of land use patterns (zoning techniques); typology techniques; technology transfer and decision-making support; communication for rural development; planning rural development at local level.

## Research project: Rural development studies 780 (ARD 780)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BAgricHons Extension](#)  
[BAgricHons Rural Development](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Overview of the concepts and theories of rural development including evolution of rural development theories, role of agriculture in rural developments, natural resource base and role of government. Rural livelihood systems focusing on household farming systems, decisions and operation of farming systems, the farm as a social system, nonfarm, off-farm small, micro and medium enterprises in the rural economy, development intervention and household food security. Rural institutions including local governance, community based and farmer organisations, agricultural credit and rural finance, input and output markets, human capital formation, land tenure and land reform, policy making institutions, and institutions of the agricultural knowledge triangle (research, teaching and extension). The relationship between rural sociology, community development and extension; physical and social structures of communities; cultural relativism; sustainability; indigenous knowledge; social stratification; development as change; principles and functions of community development; development barriers; participatory development methodologies, rural poverty. Methodologies for rural development including farming systems approach, participatory appraisal techniques, assessment of land-use patterns and agrarian systems in rural settings: zoning techniques, socio-economic and technical assessment of the farming system, topological techniques and gender sensitive methodologies. Communication for rural development and planning rural development at local levels. Practical assignment in collaboration with rural communities managed by the School's outreach department.

## Research project 784 (ARD 784)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BAgricHons Rural Development](#)



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Research project and case study of rural problems, challenges and dynamics in rural communities. The research project should address an important contemporary rural development problem or challenge and contribute towards the solution thereof.

### Mini-dissertation: Rural development 891 (ARD 891)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	105.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MAgric Rural Development</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Rural development 990 (ARD 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Rural Development</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Dissertation: Meteorology 890 (AWM 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

---



## Thesis: Meteorology 990 (AWM 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Basic business mathematics 133 (BAM 133)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Extended programme</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	BCom students: At least 3 (40-49%) in Mathematics in the Grade 12 examination.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

The number system, decimals, fractions, exponentials and order of operations. Percentages, decimals as fractions and percentages. Equations and formulas, application of equations and formulas. Ratio and proportion. Functions, graphs, application of functions, interpreting graphs. Average rate of change, simple interest, compound interest and inflation. Present value and future value. Depreciation, annuities, sinking funds, investments, mortgages.

*This module is offered in English at the Mamelodi Campus only for the BCom – Extended programme.*

## Industrial analysis 780 (BAN 780)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Applied Science Industrial Systems</a> <a href="#">BScHons Financial Engineering</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Not for Industrial Engineering students
<b>Contact time</b>	24 contact hours per semester
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Industrial and Systems Engineering



**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

**Module content**

- Monte Carlo Simulation
- Continuous Simulation
- System Dynamics
- Multi-objective Decision-making
- Operations Research
- Decision Analysis
- Discrete Simulation

**Introduction to proteins and enzymes 251 (BCM 251)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

BDietetics  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Programmes**

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 GS and CMY 127 GS and MLB 111 GS

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Structural and ionic properties of amino acids. Peptides, the peptide bond, primary, secondary, tertiary and quaternary structure of proteins. Interactions that stabilise protein structure, denaturation and renaturation of proteins. Introduction to methods for the purification of proteins, amino acid composition, and sequence determinations. Enzyme kinetics and enzyme inhibition. Allosteric enzymes, regulation of enzyme activity, active centres and mechanisms of enzyme catalysis. Examples of industrial applications of enzymes and in clinical pathology as biomarkers of diseases. Introduction to practical laboratory techniques and Good Laboratory Practice. Techniques for the quantitative and qualitative analysis of biological molecules, enzyme activity measurements. Processing and presentation of scientific data.

## Carbohydrate metabolism 252 (BCM 252)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

BDietetics  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Animal Science

### Programmes

**Service modules** Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 GS and CMY 127 GS and MLB 111 GS

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1





## Module content

Carbohydrate structure and function. Blood glucose measurement in the diagnosis and treatment of diabetes. Bioenergetics and biochemical reaction types. Glycolysis, gluconeogenesis, glycogen metabolism, pentose phosphate pathway, citric acid cycle and electron transport. Total ATP yield from the complete oxidation of glucose. A comparison of cellular respiration and photosynthesis. Practical techniques for the study and analysis of metabolic pathways and enzymes. PO ratio of mitochondria, electrophoresis, extraction, solubility and gel permeation techniques. Scientific method and design.

## Lipid and nitrogen metabolism 261 (BCM 261)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

BDietetics  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Animal Science

## Programmes

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS and BCM 252 GS.

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Biochemistry of lipids, membrane structure, anabolism and catabolism of lipids. Total ATP yield from the complete catabolism of lipids. Electron transport chain and energy production through oxidative phosphorylation. Nitrogen metabolism, amino acid biosynthesis and catabolism. Biosynthesis of neurotransmitters, pigments, hormones and nucleotides from amino acids. Catabolism of purines and pyrimidines. Therapeutic agents directed against nucleotide metabolism. Examples of inborn errors of metabolism of nitrogen containing compounds. The urea cycle, nitrogen excretion. Practical training in scientific reading skills: evaluation of a scientific report. Techniques for separation analysis and visualisation of biological molecules. Hypothesis design and testing, method design and scientific controls.



## Biochemical principles of nutrition and toxicology 262 (BCM 262)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Animal Science

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS and BCM 252 GS.

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Biochemistry of nutrition and toxicology. Proximate analysis of nutrients. Review of energy requirements and expenditure, starvation, marasmus and kwashiorkor. Respiratory quotient. Requirements and function of water, vitamins and minerals. Interpretation and modification of RDA values for specific diets, eg growth, exercise, pregnancy and lactation, aging and starvation. Interactions between nutrients. Cholesterol, polyunsaturated, essential fatty acids and dietary anti-oxidants. Oxidation of fats. Biochemical mechanisms of water- and fat-soluble vitamins and assessment of vitamin status. Mineral requirements, biochemical mechanisms, imbalances and diarrhoea. Biochemistry of xenobiotics: absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion (ADME); detoxification reactions: oxidation/reduction (Phase I), conjugations (Phase II), export from cells (Phase III); factors affecting metabolism and disposition. Examples of genetic abnormalities, phenotypes and frequencies. Examples of toxins: biochemical mechanisms of common toxins and their antidotes. Natural toxins from fungi, plants and animals: goitrogens, cyanogens, cholineesterase inhibitors, ergotoxin, aflatoxins Practical training in scientific writing skills: evaluating scientific findings. Introduction to practical techniques in nutrition and toxicology. Experimental design and calculations in experiments: determining nutritional value of metabolites and studying the ADME of toxins.

## Macromolecules of life: Structure-function and Bioinformatics 356 (BCM 356)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Chemistry BSc Genetics BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Microbiology BSc Nutrition BSc Plant Science BSc Zoology
-------------------	---

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS and BCM 252 GS and BCM 261 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Structure, function, bioinformatics and biochemical analysis of (oligo)nucleotides, amino acids, proteins and ligands – and their organisation into hierarchical, higher order, interdependent structures. Principles of structure-function relationships, protein folding, sequence motifs and domains, higher order and supramolecular structure, self-assembly, conjugated proteins, post-translational modifications. Molecular recognition between proteins, ligands, DNA and RNA or any combinations. The RNA structural world, RNAi, miRNA and ribosomes. Cellular functions of coding and non-coding nucleic acids. Basic principles of mass spectrometry, nuclear magnetic resonance spectroscopy, X-ray crystallography and proteomics. Protein purification and characterisation including, pI, molecular mass, amino acid composition and sequence. Mechanistic aspects and regulation of information flow from DNA via RNA to proteins and back. Practical training includes hands-on nucleic acid purification and sequencing, protein production and purification, analysis by SDS-PAGE or mass spectrometry, protein structure analysis and 3D protein modelling.

## Biocatalysis and integration of metabolism 357 (BCM 357)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Chemistry BSc Genetics BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science BSc Zoology
-------------------	--

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS and BCM 252 GS and BCM 261 GS.

**Contact time** 1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Regulation of metabolic pathways. Analysis of metabolic control. Elucidation of metabolic pathways with isotopes. Metabolomics. Coordinated regulation of glycolysis/gluconeogenesis and glycogen breakdown/synthesis. Enzyme defects in metabolism and consequences. Hormonal regulation and integration of mammalian metabolism. Regulation of fuel metabolism after a meal, period between meals and starvation. Metabolic adaptations during diabetes. Obesity and the regulation of body mass. Obesity, metabolic syndrome and Type 2 diabetes (T2D). Management of T2D with diet, exercise and medication. Practical sessions cover tutorials on case studies and biochemical calculations, isolation of an enzyme, determination of pH and temperature optima, determination of  $K_m$  and  $V_{max}$ , enzyme activation and enzyme inhibition.

### Cell structure and function 367 (BCM 367)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 and BCM 252 and BCM 261 GS.

**Contact time** 1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Visualising cell structure and localisation of proteins within cells. Cell ultrastructure. Purification of subcellular organelles. Culturing of cells. Biomembrane structure. Transmembrane transport of ions and small molecules and the role of these processes in disease. Moving proteins into membranes and organelles. Vesicular traffic, secretion, exocytosis and endocytosis. Cell organisation and movement motility based on the three types of cytoskeletal structures including microfilaments, microtubules and intermediate filaments as well as their associated motor proteins. Cell-cell and cell-matrix adhesion through corresponding proteins and morphological structures. Practical training includes tutorials on cytometry and microscopy, mini-research projects where students are introduced and guided through aspects of research methodology, experimental planning techniques associated with cellular assays, buffer preparation, active transport studies in yeast cells, structure-function analyses of actin and binding partners.



## Molecular basis of disease 368 (BCM 368)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Biochemistry</a> <a href="#">BSc Biotechnology</a> <a href="#">BSc Chemistry</a> <a href="#">BSc Genetics</a> <a href="#">BSc Human Genetics</a> <a href="#">BSc Human Physiology</a> <a href="#">BSc Microbiology</a> <a href="#">BSc Nutrition</a> <a href="#">BSc Plant Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Zoology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	BCM 251 and BCM 252 and BCM 261 GS.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Molecular mechanisms behind exogenous and endogenous diseases. Foundational knowledge of the immune system, with innate-, adaptive- and auto-immunity (molecular mechanisms of the maintenance and failure of the recognition of foreign in the context of self in the mammalian body) being some of the key concepts. Molecular pathology and immunobiochemistry of exogenous diseases against viral, bacterial and parasitic pathogens with a focus on the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), tuberculosis (TB) and malaria. Endogenous disease will describe the biochemistry of normal cell cycle proliferation, quiescence, senescence, differentiation and apoptosis, and abnormal events as illustrated by cancer. Tutorials will focus on immunoassays, vaccines, diagnostic tests for diseases and drug discovery towards therapeutics.

## Trends in biochemical research 771 (BCM 771)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Biochemistry</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Study and discussion of topical research results from recent scientific publications.



## Research project and report 773 (BCM 773)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	60.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Biochemistry</a> <a href="#">BScHons Biotechnology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 other contact session per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Research methods 774 (BCM 774)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	30.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Biochemistry</a> <a href="#">BScHons Biotechnology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Admission into BSc Hons Biochemistry, Biotechnology, Genetics, Microbiology, Bioinformatics or Human Physiology
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 2 web-based periods per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Students are guided through the methodology of research planning and data handling, as well as science communication skills. They are offered hands-on experience in a range of advanced techniques employed in biochemistry, molecular technologies and biochemical analysis. Scientific writing and presentation skills required for research in biochemistry, are also addressed. Ethical and philosophical issues in the broader field of the Cellular and Molecular Sciences are also addressed. Several of these aspects will be presented collaboratively by the Department of Genetics and the Department of Microbiology and Plant Pathology.

## Advanced biochemistry 775 (BCM 775)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Biochemistry</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Admission into BSc Hons Biochemistry, Genetics, Microbiology, Bioinformatics or Human Physiology
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week, 4 web-based periods per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

The latest trends towards a biological systems approach of metabolism, functional genomics and control. This includes integration of metabolic pathways, mechanisms of regulation and metabolic control analysis.

## Biochemistry: Dissertation 890 (BCM 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Biochemistry](#)  
[MSc Biotechnology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Project and thesis 990 (BCM 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Biochemistry](#)  
[PhD Biotechnology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Industrial and organisational psychology 181 (BDO 181)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 5.00

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Human Resource Management

**Period of presentation** Quarter 2



## Module content

Capita selecta

This module will provide an introduction to personnel psychology, organisational behaviour and labour relations. It will refer to the selection of employees and the training and development of human resources in order to adapt to changing circumstances. The role of leadership in group utilisation and motivation will be treated both theoretically and practically. Labour relations will be studied in terms of institutional processes and the service relationship and will include practical aspects such as the handling of grievances, disciplining and dispute resolution.

## Marketing management 120 (BEM 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

### Programmes

BA Visual Studies  
BCom  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Marketing Management  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BIS Publishing  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Marketing Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

This module provides an overview of the fundamentals of marketing by considering the exchange process, customer value, marketing research and the development of a marketing plan. It also addresses the marketing mix elements with specific focus on the seven service marketing elements namely the service product, physical evidence, people, process, distribution, pricing and integrated marketing communication.

## Consumer behaviour 212 (BEM 212)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00





<b>Programmes</b>	BA Visual Studies BCom BCom Business Management BCom Informatics Information Systems BCom Marketing Management BCom Supply Chain Management BConSci Clothing Retail Management BConSci Food Retail Management BConSci Hospitality Management BSc Culinary Science BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	BEM 120 GS
----------------------	------------

<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
---------------------	---------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Marketing Management
-------------------	----------------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

Internal and external influencing factors of consumer behaviour, the consumer's decision process and application fields of consumer behaviour, consumerisms and social responsibility, buying behaviour of consumers in both product and service related industries, consumer psychology and the influence thereof on buying behaviour, psychology of pricing, influencing factors in consumer buying behaviour, the impact of various forms of marketing communication on buying behaviour.

## Integrated brand communications 224 (BEM 224)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	BA Visual Studies BCom BCom Informatics Information Systems BCom Marketing Management BConSci Clothing Retail Management BConSci Food Retail Management
-------------------	--

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	BEM 120 GS
----------------------	------------

<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
---------------------	---------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Marketing Management
-------------------	----------------------



**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Integrated brand communications approach, marketing communication planning, objectives and budgets for integrated marketing communications, principles and strategising of marketing communication elements, new media, the brand name communication process, marketing metrics and evaluation for marketing communication effectiveness.

## Marketing research 314 (BEM 314)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes**  
BA Visual Studies  
BCom  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Marketing Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management

**Service modules**  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BEM 120 and STK 110 GS

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Marketing Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The role of marketing research, the process of marketing research, interpretation of secondary research, qualitative research, survey research, observation, measurement and attitude scaling, questionnaire design, sampling design and sampling procedures, basic data analysis, descriptive statistical analysis, interpretation and reporting of results, research report writing.

## Marketing management 321 (BEM 321)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes**  
BA Visual Studies  
BCom  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Marketing Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management



**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BEM 120

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Marketing Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Strategic issues in marketing, strategic marketing, strategic analysis (market analysis, customer analysis, competitor analysis and internal analysis), market strategies (competitive strategies, strategies in the product life cycle and relationship building strategies) and strategy implementation and control.

## Business law 210 (BER 210)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Economics  
BCom Financial Sciences  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Marketing Management  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mercantile Law

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Basic principles of law of contract. Law of sales, credit agreements, lease.



## Business law 220 (BER 220)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** BCom  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Economics  
BCom Financial Sciences  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** Examination entrance for BER 210

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mercantile Law

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Labour law. Aspects of security law. Law of insolvency. Entrepreneurial law; company law, law concerning close corporations. Law of partnerships.

## Bioinformatics theory and applications 701 (BIF 701)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** BScHons Bioinformatics

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

General concepts in bioinformatics; sequence motifs and features; sequence databases; common bioinformatics tools; programming in Python; the bioinformatics toolkit for Python; pairwise and multiple sequence alignments; genome analysis; data visualisation; specialised statistics for bioinformatics; specialised algorithms for bioinformatics; nucleic acid modelling; transcription analysis; microarray data analysis; genome annotation; phylogenetics; mapping and markers; structural modelling.

## Trends in bioinformatics and literature seminar 702 (BIF 702)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Bioinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Study and discussion of topical research results from recent scientific publications.

## Research project and report 703 (BIF 703)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 60.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Bioinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 other contact session per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Introduction to molecular biology for bioinformatics 704 (BIF 704)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Bioinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Atoms and molecules; the chemistry of life, organisation of the cell; energy; chromosomes; heredity; DNA; RNA and protein synthesis; gene regulation; genetic engineering; genomes; genes and development; evolution; speciation; diversity.

## Bioinformatics: Dissertation 803 (BIF 803)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Bioinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Thesis: Bioinformatics 990 (BIF 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Bioinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## General microbiology 260 (BLG 260)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Microbiology and Plant Pathology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

General anatomy and morphology of bacteria, viruses and fungi. Basic nutritional requirements of micro-organisms and the effect of environmental factors on microbial growth. Micro-organisms as essential components of ecospheres: plant, water and soil ecosystems. Food decay, food poisoning and preservation of food by micro-organisms. Basic principles involved in disinfections, sterilization and control of microbes; techniques for microbial repression: sterilization by using heat, radiation, filtration, chemicals; decimation of numbers.

## Biometry 120 (BME 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

BIT Information Systems  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geography  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology  
BVSc

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

### Prerequisites

At least 4 (50-59%) in Mathematics in the Grade 12 examination, or at least 50% in both Statistics 113, 123

### Contact time

1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

### Language of tuition

Module is presented in English



**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Simple statistical analysis: Data collection and analysis: Samples, tabulation, graphical representation, describing location, spread and skewness. Introductory probability and distribution theory. Sampling distributions and the central limit theorem. Statistical inference: Basic principles, estimation and testing in the one- and two-sample cases (parametric and non-parametric). Introduction to experimental design. One- and two-way designs, randomised blocks. Multiple statistical analysis: Bivariate data sets: Curve fitting (linear and non-linear), growth curves. Statistical inference in the simple regression case. Categorical analysis: Testing goodness of fit and contingency tables. Multiple regression and correlation: Fitting and testing of models. Residual analysis. Computer literacy: Use of computer packages in data analysis and report writing.

## Biometry 210 (BME 210)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 24.00

### Programmes

[BSc Biotechnology](#)  
[BSc Nutrition](#)  
[BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BME 120

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Analysis of variance: Multi-way classification. Testing of model assumptions, graphics. Multiple comparisons. Fixed, stochastic and mixed effect models. Block experiments. Estimation of effects. Experimental design: Principles of experimental design. Factorial experiments: Confounding, single degree of freedom approach, hierarchical classification. Balanced and unbalanced designs. Split-plot designs. Analysis of covariance. Computer literacy: Writing and interpretation of computer programmes. Report writing.

## Statistics for biological sciences 410 (BME 410)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 Block weeks

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English





**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The principles of experimental design as required for the selection of an appropriate research design. Identification of the design limitations and the impact thereof on the research hypotheses and the statistical methods. Identification and application of the appropriate statistical methods needed. Interpreting of statistical results and translating these results to the biological context.

## Statistics for biological sciences 780 (BME 780)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

[BScHons Bioinformatics](#)  
[BScHons Entomology](#)  
[BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)  
[BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Meteorology](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science](#)  
[BScHons Wildlife Management](#)  
[BScHons Zoology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 Block weeks

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The principles of experimental design as required for the selection of an appropriate research design. Identification of the design limitations and the impact thereof on the research hypotheses and the statistical methods. Identification and application of the appropriate statistical methods needed. Interpreting of statistical results and translating these results to the biological context.

## Plant biology 161 (BOT 161)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00



BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

## Programmes

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education
<b>Prerequisites</b>	MLB 111 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Basic plant structure and function; introductory plant taxonomy and plant systematics; principles of plant molecular biology and biotechnology; adaptation of plants to stress; medicinal compounds from plants; basic principles of plant ecology and their application in natural resource management.

## South African flora and vegetation 251 (BOT 251)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00



BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences

**Programmes**

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** BOT 161

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

**Module content**

Origin and affinity of South African flora and vegetation types; principles of plant geography; plant diversity in southern Africa; characteristics, environments and vegetation of South African biomes and associated key ecological processes; centre of plant endemism; rare and threatened plant species; biodiversity conservation and ecosystem management; invasion biology; conservation status of South African vegetation types.

**Plant physiology and biotechnology 261 (BOT 261)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Programmes**

**Service modules** Faculty of Education



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	BOT 161 and CMY 127.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Nitrogen metabolism in plants; nitrogen fixation in Agriculture; plant secondary metabolism and natural products; photosynthesis and carbohydrate metabolism in plants; applications in solar energy; plant growth regulation and the Green Revolution; plant responses to the environment; developing abiotic stress tolerant and disease resistant plants. Practicals: Basic laboratory skills in plant physiology; techniques used to investigate nitrogen metabolism, carbohydrate metabolism, pigment analysis, water transport in plant tissue and response of plants to hormone treatments.

### Plant ecophysiology 356 (BOT 356)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**  
[BSc Biochemistry](#)  
[BSc Biotechnology](#)  
[BSc Ecology](#)  
[BSc Genetics](#)  
[BSc Microbiology](#)  
[BSc Plant Science](#)  
[BSc Zoology](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** BOT 161

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

The emphasis is on the efficiency of the mechanisms whereby C3-, C4 and CAM-plants bind CO<sub>2</sub> and how it impacted upon by environmental factors. The mechanisms and factors which determine the respiratory conversion of carbon skeletons and how production is affected thereby will be discussed. Insight into the ecological distribution and manipulation of plants for increased production is gained by discussing the internal mechanisms whereby carbon allocation, hormone production, growth, flowering and fruitset are influenced by external factors. To understand the functioning of plants in diverse environments, the relevant structural properties of plants, and the impact of soil composition, water flow in the soil-plant air continuum and long distance transport of assimilates will be discussed. Various important techniques will be used in the practicals to investigate aspects such as water-use efficiency, photosynthesis and respiration of plants.

## Plant ecology 358 (BOT 358)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology

**Prerequisites** BOT 161 and BOT 251.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Theory of plant community concepts, floristic and structural composition, plant diversity, ecological succession, landscape ecology. Data processing techniques. Species interactions and an evaluation of their effects on interacting species. Fundamentals of plant population biology: life tables; plant breeding systems and pollination; population dynamics; life history strategies; intraspecific competition; interspecific competition and co-existence.

## Phytomedicine 365 (BOT 365)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Genetics BSc Human Genetics BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science BSc Zoology
-------------------	---

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** BOT 161

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The module will include a review on the discovery and use of plant medicines and phyto-therapeutically important molecules obtained from plants. Certain aspects of natural product chemistry i.e. the biosynthesis, ecological role and toxicity of the three main classes of secondary compounds; terpenoids, phenolics, and alkaloids are discussed. An introduction to the principles and applications of metabolomics is presented. The role of these natural products in defense against microorganisms and herbivores is reviewed during the module. The importance of ethnobotany and phylogenetics in modern drug discovery from biodiversity will be presented along with legal and ethical considerations surrounding bioprospecting. This will follow on with modern theories and practices regarding sustainable utilisation and conservation of medicinal plants. The basics of alternative medicines, with an emphasis on traditional African and Chinese medicines, are also discussed as well as current evidence-based research and product development derived from these. Biotechnological approaches to medicinal natural product production, 'farmer to pharma', will be covered, including plant cell culture and bioreactors. Practical sessions on drug discovery approaches using chromatographic techniques for phytochemical analysis of secondary metabolites such as tannins, alkaloids, and saponins are conducted. Bioassays on micro-organisms are also done during the practical sessions in order to develop the skills for the potential discovery of new antibiotics.

### Plant diversity 366 (BOT 366)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Ecology BSc Environmental Sciences BSc Genetics BSc Plant Science BSc Zoology
-------------------	--

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** BOT 161



**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Basic principles and methods of plant classification. Sources of plant variation. Modern methods to ascertain evolutionary relationships among plants. The extent and significance of vascular plant diversity. General structural and biological characteristics of evolutionary and ecologically important plant groups. Botanical nomenclature. Plant identification in practice; identification methods, keys, herbaria and botanical gardens. Diagnostic characters for the field identification of trees, wild flowers and grasses. Family recognition of southern African plants. Available literature for plant identification. Methods to conduct floristic surveys. Nature and significance of voucher specimens.

## Natural woodland and forests: Ecology and management 700 (BOT 700)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

[BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)

[BScHons Meteorology](#)

[BScHons Plant Science](#)

[BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Definitions of woodlands and forests and vegetation and forest resources in southern Africa; Classification of forest and woodland in southern Africa; Woodland dynamics including disturbance, recruitment, growth and mortality, recovery after disturbance; Ecosystem services (microclimate and nutrient cycling, carbon sequestration etc); Sustainable forest resource management (resource assessment, socio-economic assessment e.g. wood and non-forest products, participatory resource management processes); Forest health; Monitoring of resource-use impacts and adaptive management; Development of a framework for sustainable conservation and use of non-timber forest products; Climate change and resilience. Forest disease and pathology.

## Molecular techniques 705 (BOT 705)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

[BScHons Biotechnology](#)

[BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** Admission into BSc Hons in Plant Science (Plant Biotechnology/Physiology)



---

<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week, 5 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Students are guided through the methodology of research planning and data handling. They are offered hands-on experience in a range of advanced techniques employed in molecular research and analysis.

### Introduction to plant biotechnology 718 (BOT 718)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Plant genome: structure and composition of the plant genome (nuclear, mitochondrial and chloroplast); applications in plant biotechnology: plant tissue culture (micropropagation, somatic embryogenesis and cell suspension cultures). Genetic manipulation and gene transfer technology (Agrobacterium-based and other) and DNA-marker technology.

### Plant ecology 730 (BOT 730)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 8 hours per day for 5 days

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Practical applications of plant ecology principles. Designing and executing field studies. Exposure to skills of field ecology and plant identification. This module includes a compulsory 5-day field component.





## Applied plant anatomy 741 (BOT 741)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Medicinal Plant Science</a> <a href="#">BScHons Plant Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	BOT 161 or permission from the Head of Department.
<b>Contact time</b>	Block of 4 weeks for lectures with practical compo
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Theory of plant anatomy, understanding of basic tissue types and arrangement within organs. Evolutionary modifications to the basic anatomy. Introduction to seed anatomy/palynology. Understanding of developmental anatomy – ontogeny of tissues/organs. Advantages/disadvantages of different stains/techniques. Microscopy, including electron microscopy. Ethics and protocols of image manipulation. Practical understanding of tissue preservation, staining and sectioning techniques will be learnt and a portfolio of evidence submitted for assessment.

## Plant classification and phytogeography 742 (BOT 742)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Medicinal Plant Science</a> <a href="#">BScHons Plant Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	BOT 366
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

An overview of phylogenetics sets the scene, and sources of taxonomic information (morphology, anatomy, chemotaxonomy, cytogenetics, reproductive biology, palynology, ethnobotany and paleobotany) and how these data are used are discussed. This is followed by a section on the use of phylogenies as tools to understand ecological and geographical patterns and processes. Modern plant distribution patterns are assessed from the framework of the competing explanations of dispersal and vicariance.

## Applications in plant biotechnology 746 (BOT 746)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00



**Programmes** BScHons Medicinal Plant Science  
BScHons Plant Science

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Creation of genetically modified plants and their impact on modern agriculture.

### Phytopharmacology 748 (BOT 748)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** BScHons Medicinal Plant Science

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Pharmacological action of low molecular plant constituents and high molecular weight compounds. Plant constituents as anticancer, antibacterial, antiviral, hypoglycaemic, freeradical scavengers, hypotensive and as anti-inflammatory agents. Cell culturing, cell growth and apoptosis, cell mediated immune responses. Drug development in TB as models for research. Enzymes, receptors and plant constituents. The unique challenges of plant-based medicines.

### Pharmacognosy/Phytotherapy 749 (BOT 749)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** BScHons Medicinal Plant Science

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



### Module content

Basic concepts of toxicology. Systemic, developmental, genetic and organ-specific toxic effects. Hallucinogenic, allergenic, teratogenic and other toxic plants. Plant constituents, contradictions and interactions. Phytotoxicity unrelated to plant constituents. Safety and efficacy issues of commonly used Phyto-drugs with emphasis on pharmaceutical applications. Practical aspects related to the manufacture of good quality plant-based medicines. Phyto-drug formulation, standardisation and aspects concerning different dosage forms.

### Advanced phytomedicine 761 (BOT 761)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Metabolism and functions of secondary compounds such as tannins, alkaloids, terpenoids, flavonoids and free amino acids. Importance of secondary compounds in the defence mechanisms of plants. Isolation and identification of medicinal bioactive compounds from plants. Their current scope and potential applications in ethnobotany. Strategies to discover new pharmaceuticals from ethnomedicine.

### Research report 782 (BOT 782)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 60.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Biotechnology](#)  
[BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Teaching and planning, execution and documentation of a research project.

### Seminar 783 (BOT 783)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

**Module content**

Literature study, discussion and oral presentation of a subject related to the main discipline.

**Trends in plant science 784 (BOT 784)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Literature study of recent publications in a subject related to one of the elective disciplines.

**Plant identification and herbarium curation 786 (BOT 786)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Wildlife Management](#)

**Prerequisites** BOT 161 or permission from the Head of Department.

**Contact time** 2 Block weeks, 2 practicals per week, 3 Block weeks

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Principles of identification, classification and nomenclature; identification of plants; family recognition; collection of plant specimens for identification; herbarium as a source of information. Variation in seed plants and breeding systems. Legal and ethical aspects of plant collection and permit requirements. Specimen preparation, including pressing, sterilisation, mounting, labelling and data capture. Introduction to herbarium databases. Herbarium curation and upkeep, including nomenclatural and taxonomic updates and classification systems, and aspects of pest control and health and safety. Practical work involves an excursion.

## Spatial analysis in ecology 788 (BOT 788)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medicinal Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Mapping and analysing spatial data. Theory and basic techniques of analysing and manipulating spatial data using geographical information systems. Mapping of vegetation types, species distributions and diversity, species traits. Understanding the spatial drivers of biodiversity patterns. The influence of scale on biodiversity analyses. Relevance for conservation planning for mapping biodiversity risk and prioritising conservation, especially in a South African context.

## Land reclamation and restoration ecology 791 (BOT 791)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Entomology](#)  
[BScHons Plant Science](#)  
[BScHons Zoology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Humanities

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** Block: 6 weeks per semester, 3 discussions per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

This module will provide students with the skills to use biophysical information and data obtained by undertaking a natural resource inventory. This will be supported by taught methods of critically evaluating data and information obtained through assessment methodologies and an understanding of sampling design (choosing reference sites, spatial replication) and monitoring methods (e.g. recording biomass vs vegetation cover vs species richness; aspects of seed biology etc.). Through the additional understanding of ecological and agricultural concepts (e.g. productivity, decomposition rate, carbon uptake, pollinator abundance, erosion protection, dust reduction) students will acquire the skills to provide reclamation and restoration solutions to land degradation challenges in South Africa.

A site visit or field trip during which students will get exposed to the realities of reclamation and restoration and apply their knowledge and skills will be a compulsory component of this module.

## Plant systematics 802 (BOT 802)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 5 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Plant variation and evolution; theory and practice of plant classification; concept of categories in the taxonomic hierarchy; sources and handling of taxonomic data; taxonomic collections (herbaria and curating of collections); the process of plant identification; code of nomenclature; taxonomic publication.

## Dissertation: Plant science 890 (BOT 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Biotechnology](#)  
[MSc Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

## Thesis: Plant science 990 (BOT 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00



<b>Programmes</b>	PhD Biotechnology PhD Plant Science
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Plant genetics and crop biotechnology 361 (BTC 361)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00

<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Genetics BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Information and Knowledge Systems BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science BSc Zoology BScAgric Plant Pathology
-------------------	--

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GTS 251 and {GTS 261 GS or BOT 261}
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Plant genetics and genomics: gene control in plants, epigenetics, co-suppression, forward and reverse genetics, structural and functional genomics. Plant development: flowering, genetics imprinting. Plant-environment interactions. Crop genetic modification: food security, GMO regulation, plant transformation, whole-chromosome transformation, synthetic biology, homologous recombination. Crop molecular markers: marker types, genotyping, QTL mapping, marker-assisted breeding. Future of crop biotechnology: applications of genomics, biopharming, genetical genomics, systems biology

### Biotechnology in the workplace 701 (BTW 701)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------

<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	BScHons Biotechnology BScHons Plant Science
-------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
----------------------	-------------------



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Introduction to the principles and realities of working in the field of biotechnology. Discussions on various aspects, including entrepreneurship; intellectual property; patent rights; financial management; grant applications and product marketing. The module will be assessed by way of a simulated grant application for the development of a hypothetical biotechnological venture.

## Introductory physics 152 (CGS 152)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Heat and temp: Thermal interaction; operational definition of temperature; expansion; temperature in the kinetic molecular model; work, energy and heat; phase transitions and mechanisms of heat transfer. Measurements: What is measuring; the scientific method; measuring error; significant figures. Geometric optics: Light travels straight; shadow formation; plane, convex and concave mirrors; refraction and lenses (thin); optical instruments. Practical related to the topics.

## Introductory physics 162 (CGS 162)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Prerequisites** CGS 152

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2





## Module content

Kinematics: Basic concepts in kinematics in vector notation; different representations to describe motions; instantaneous velocity; acceleration; equations of motion (constant acceleration). Dynamics: Interactions, Newton's third law, Newton's first and second law; gravitation; normal force and friction. Forces in two dimensions: resolving and adding forces. Work energy and power. Electricity: Static and flowing electricity, current, potential difference, power, resistance, simple DC-circuits.

Practicals related to the topics.

## General chemistry 171 (CHM 171)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

BEng Chemical Engineering  
BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Civil Engineering  
BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electrical Engineering  
BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electronic Engineering  
BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mining Engineering  
BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 1 web-based period per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

General introduction to inorganic, analytical and physical chemistry. Nomenclature of inorganic ions and compounds, stoichiometric calculations concerning chemical reactions, redox reactions, solubilities and solutions, atomic structure, periodicity. Molecular structure and chemical bonding using the VSEPR model. Principles of reactivity, electrochemistry, energy and chemical reactions, entropy and free energy. Appropriate tutorial classes and practicals.

## General chemistry 172 (CHM 172)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BEng Industrial Engineering BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE BEng Mechanical Engineering BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 1 web-based period per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

General introduction to inorganic, analytical and physical chemistry. Nomenclature of inorganic ions and compounds, stoichiometric calculations concerning chemical reactions, redox reactions, solubilities and solutions, atomic structure, periodicity. Molecular structure and chemical bonding using the VSEPR model. Principles of reactivity, electrochemistry, energy and chemical reactions, entropy and free energy. Appropriate tutorial classes and practicals.

### General chemistry 181 (CHM 181)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BEng Chemical Engineering BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	CHM 171
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 1 web-based period per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

One quarter general physical-analytical chemistry: Physical behaviour of gases, intermolecular forces, solutions, liquids and solids (phase changes), chemical equilibrium, acids and bases, applications of aqueous equilibria (e.g. buffers, titrations, solubility) precipitation. One quarter organic chemistry: Structure and bonding, functional groups and drawing of structures of organic compounds, nomenclature, isomerism, introductory stereochemistry, introduction to chemical reactions and chemical properties of organic compounds. Appropriate tutorial classes and practicals. Quality theoretical and practical teaching with an ethical approach provides a broad understanding of fundamental chemistry, e.g. predicting the behaviour of specific functional groups present in organic compounds, essential for new drug development, purification of mixtures and proper waste management to protect the environment and ultimately human and animal life, thereby meeting some of the UN sustainable development goals.

## Chemistry 215 (CHM 215)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BEng Chemical Engineering](#)  
[BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** CHM 171 or CHM 172 and CHM 181

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Organic chemistry. Chemical properties of organic (including aromatic) compounds. Functional group transformation and synthesis.

## Chemistry 226 (CHM 226)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BEng Chemical Engineering](#)  
[BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** CHM 171 or CHM 172 and CHM 181

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 6 ppw

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Theory: Introduction to instrumental chemical analysis. Integration of electronic, chemical, optical and computer principles for the construction of analytical instrumentation. Detail discussion of principles and some instrumental methods from three disciplines within analytical chemistry, namely electrochemistry, spectroscopy and chromatography. This includes potentiometry, (AA) atomic absorption-, (ICP) atomic emission-, ultraviolet (UV)-, and infrared (IR) spectroscopy, potentiometric and photometric titrations, gas chromatography, liquid chromatography as well as combinations of these techniques. Practical: IR spectroscopy, UV spectroscopy, AA spectroscopy, potentiometric titration, gas chromatography.

### Dissertation: Chemistry 890 (CHM 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Chemistry](#)  
[MSc Science Education](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Chemistry 990 (CHM 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Chemistry](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Year

### General chemistry 117 (CMY 117)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



**Programmes**

BDietetics  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geology  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Service modules**

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites**

A candidate must have Mathematics for at least 60% and 60% for Physical Sciences.

**Contact time**

1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition**

Module is presented in English

**Department**

Chemistry

**Period of presentation**

Semester 1



## Module content

General introduction to inorganic, analytical and physical chemistry. Atomic structure and periodicity. Molecular structure and chemical bonding using the VSEOR model. Nomenclature of inorganic ions and compounds. Classification of reactions: precipitation, acid-base, redox reactions and gas-forming reactions. Mole concept and stoichiometric calculations concerning chemical formulas and chemical reactions. Principles of reactivity: energy and chemical reactions. Physical behaviour gases, liquids, solids and solutions and the role of intermolecular forces. Rate of reactions: Introduction to chemical kinetics.

## General chemistry 127 (CMY 127)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

## Programmes

BDietetics  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geology  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology



<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Health Sciences Faculty of Veterinary Science
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Natural and Agricultural Sciences students: CMY 117 GS or CMY 154 GS Health Sciences students: none
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Theory: General physical-analytical chemistry: Chemical equilibrium, acids and bases, buffers, solubility equilibrium, entropy and free energy, electrochemistry. Organic chemistry: Structure (bonding), nomenclature, isomerism, introductory stereochemistry, introduction to chemical reactions and chemical properties of organic compounds and biological compounds, i.e. carbohydrates and aminoacids. Practical: Molecular structure (model building), synthesis and properties of simple organic compounds.

## Chemistry 133 (CMY 133)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** Admission to the relevant programme.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 3 discussion classes per week, Fortnightly practicals, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Bonding and molecular geometry: VSEPR theory; bonding and organic compounds (structural formulas, classification and nomenclature); matter and its properties; mole concept; reaction stoichiometry; reactions in aqueous solutions: precipitation, acid base and redox. Practical laboratory exercises and assignments are based on the themes covered in the module theory component. The UN sustainable development goals #6, 7 & 12 are addressed in a practical on industrial pollution.

## Chemistry 143 (CMY 143)

**Qualification** Undergraduate



**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes**

BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences

**Service modules**

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites**

CMY 133

**Contact time**

2 lectures per week, 3 discussion classes per week, Fortnightly practicals, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition**

Module is presented in English

**Department**

Chemistry

**Period of presentation**

Semester 1

**Module content**

Bonding and molecular geometry: VSEPR theory; bonding and organic compounds (structural formulas, classification and nomenclature); matter and its properties; mole concept; reaction stoichiometry; reactions in aqueous solutions: precipitation, acid base and redox.

## Chemistry 151 (CMY 151)

**Qualification**

Undergraduate

**Module credits**

16.00

**Programmes**

BChD  
BPhysio  
BVSc  
MBChB

**Service modules**

Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites**

A candidate must have Mathematics for at least 60% and 60% for Physical Sciences.

**Contact time**

1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition**

Module is presented in English

**Department**

Chemistry

**Period of presentation**

Semester 1





## Module content

Theory: Introduction to general chemistry: Measurement in chemistry, matter and energy, atomic theory and the periodic table, chemical compounds and chemical bonds; quantitative relationships in chemical reactions, states of matter and the kinetic theory; solutions and colloids, acids, bases and ionic compounds, chemical equilibria. Introduction to organic chemistry: Chemical bonding in organic compounds, nature, physical properties and nomenclature of simple organic molecules, isomerism, chemical properties of alkanes and cycloalkanes, alkenes, alcohols, aldehydes and ketones, carboxylic acids and esters, amines and amides, carbohydrates, proteins, and lipids.  
Practicals.

## Chemistry 154 (CMY 154)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 133 and CMY 143

**Contact time** 2 tutorials per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Principles of reactivity: energy and chemical reactions. Physical behaviour of gasses, liquids, solids and solutions and the role of intermolecular forces. Rate of reactions: Introduction to Chemical kinetics. Introduction to chemical equilibrium. Introduction to organic chemistry: hybridisation, isomers (structural, geometrical and conformational), additions reactions and reaction mechanisms.

## Physical chemistry 282 (CMY 282)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Biochemistry BSc Chemistry BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology BSc Genetics BSc Geology BSc Human Physiology BSc Mathematics BSc Microbiology BSc Physics BSc Plant Science
-------------------	---

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 and CMY 127

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Quarter 2

### Module content

Theory: Classical chemical thermodynamics, gases, first and second law and applications, physical changes of pure materials and simple compounds. Phase rule: Chemical reactions, chemical kinetics, rates of reactions.

## Analytical chemistry 283 (CMY 283)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

<b>Programmes</b>	BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Biochemistry BSc Chemistry BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology BSc Genetics BSc Geology BSc Human Physiology BSc Mathematics BSc Microbiology BSc Physics BSc Plant Science
-------------------	---

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 and CMY 127

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry



**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

### Module content

Statistical evaluation of data in line with ethical practice, gravimetric analysis, aqueous solution chemistry, chemical equilibrium, precipitation-, neutralisation- and complex formation titrations, redox titrations, potentiometric methods, introduction to electrochemistry. Examples throughout the course demonstrate the relevance of the theory to meeting the sustainable development goals of clean water and clean, affordable energy.

## Organic chemistry 284 (CMY 284)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

[BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Biochemistry](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Genetics](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Human Physiology](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Microbiology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)  
[BSc Plant Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 and CMY 127

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1

### Module content

Resonance, conjugation and aromaticity. Acidity and basicity. Introduction to <sup>13</sup>C NMR spectroscopy. Electrophilic addition: alkenes. Nucleophilic substitution, elimination, addition: alkyl halides, alcohols, ethers, epoxides, carbonyl compounds: ketones, aldehydes, carboxylic acids and their derivatives Training in an ethical approach to safety that protects self, others and the environment is integral to the practical component of the course.

## Inorganic chemistry 285 (CMY 285)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science

## Programmes

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 and CMY 127

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Quarter 4

## Module content

Atomic structure, structure of solids (ionic model). Coordination chemistry of transition metals: Oxidation states of transition metals, ligands, stereochemistry, crystal field theory, consequences of d-orbital splitting, chemistry of the main group elements, electrochemical properties of transition metals in aqueous solution, industrial applications of transition metals. Fundamentals of spectroscopy and introduction to IR spectroscopy. During practical training students learn to acquire and report data ethically. Practical training also deals with the misuse of chemicals and appropriate waste disposal to protect the environment and meet the UN sustainable development goals.

## Physical chemistry 382 (CMY 382)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Geology  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Physics

## Programmes

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284 and CMY 285

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Quarter 4

### Module content

Theory: Molecular quantum mechanics. Introduction: Shortcomings of classical physics, dynamics of microscopic systems, quantum mechanical principles, translational, vibrational and rotational movement. Atomic structure and spectra: Atomic hydrogen, multiple electron systems, spectra of complex atoms, molecular structure, the hydrogen molecule ion, diatomic and polyatomic molecules, structure and properties of molecules. Molecules in motion: Viscosity, diffusion, mobility. Surface chemistry: Physisorption and chemisorption, adsorption isotherms, surface tension, heterogeneous catalytic rate reactions, capillarity.

## Analytical chemistry 383 (CMY 383)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Biochemistry](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Computer Science](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Human Physiology](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284 and CMY 285

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1

### Module content

Separation methods: Extraction, multiple extraction, chromatographic systems. Spectroscopy: Construction of instruments, atomic absorption and atomic emission spectrometry, surface analysis techniques. Mass spectrometry. These techniques are discussed in terms of their use in environmental analysis and the value they contribute to meeting the UN sustainable development goals (#3,6 & 11). Instrumental electrochemistry. The relevance of electrochemistry to providing affordable and clean energy (UN SDG#7) is addressed.

## Organic chemistry 384 (CMY 384)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Biochemistry BSc Chemistry BSc Computer Science BSc Geology BSc Human Physiology BSc Mathematics BSc Physics
-------------------	---

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284 and CMY 285

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

### Module content

Theory: NMR spectroscopy: applications. Aromatic chemistry, Synthetic methodology in organic chemistry. Carbon-carbon bond formation: alkylation at nucleophilic carbon sites, aldol and related condensations, Wittig and related reactions, acylation of carbanions (Claisen condensation). Practical: Laboratory sessions are designed to develop the rational thinking behind the design of organic chemistry experiments. An industrial project specifically prepares students for work in SA industry context and honours projects. As part of this practical programme the UN sustainable development goals must be considered in evaluating the best industrial process.

## Inorganic chemistry 385 (CMY 385)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Biochemistry BSc Chemistry BSc Geology BSc Human Physiology BSc Mathematics BSc Physics
-------------------	---

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** CMY 282, CMY 283, CMY 284 and CMY 285

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Quarter 2



### Module content

Theory: Structure and bonding in inorganic chemistry. Molecular orbital approach, diatomic and polyatomic molecules, three-centre bonds, metal-metal bonds, transition metal complexes, magnetic properties, electronic spectra, reactivity and reaction mechanisms, reaction types, acid-base concepts, non-aqueous solvents, special topics.

### Analytical chemistry A 706 (CMY 706)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Chemistry](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week for 4 weeks, 6 lectures per week for 4 weeks

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Selected aspects of: Mass spectrometry: ion sources, analysers, detectors, isotope ratios, accurate mass, ion fragmentation, tandem mass spectrometry. Chromatography: theory and instrumentation of gas, liquid and supercritical fluid chromatography, multidimensional systems and coupling to mass spectrometry.

### Analytical chemistry B 707 (CMY 707)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Chemistry](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week for 4 weeks, 6 lectures per week for 4 weeks

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Selected aspects: Electrochemistry: fundamental theory, voltammetry, metal-ligand equilibria, modelling and measurement of solution composition. Statistics: precision and accuracy, random errors, hypothesis testing, method of least squares, curve fitting, multivariate statistics, interpreting patterns of data. Chemical metrology: propagation of errors, quality control of quantitative and qualitative analytical information, international standards, interlaboratory calibration

### Organic chemistry A 708 (CMY 708)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Chemistry</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week for 4 weeks, 6 lectures per week for 4 weeks
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

Stereocontrolled organic synthesis: substrate stereocontrol in diastereoselective synthesis. Retrosynthesis: principles and applications. Protecting groups in synthesis. Aromatic and heteroaromatic chemistry.

### Organic chemistry B 709 (CMY 709)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Chemistry</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week for 4 weeks, 6 lectures per week for 4 weeks
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

Stereocontrolled organic synthesis: chiral auxiliaries in synthesis; reagent controlled synthesis; catalyst controlled synthetic methods. Pericyclic reactions and transition metals in organic synthesis. Aliphatic and heterocyclic amine chemistry.

### Inorganic chemistry A 714 (CMY 714)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Chemistry</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week for 4 weeks, 6 lectures per week for 4 weeks
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2





### Module content

Inorganic and organometallic chemistry. Classification of ligands and complexes. Synthesis, structure, bonding and reactivity of complexes. Homogeneous catalysis and template effects.

### Inorganic chemistry B 715 (CMY 715)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Chemistry](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week for 4 weeks, 6 lectures per week for 4 weeks

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Main group chemistry. From complexes to clusters to networks. Reaction kinetics and mechanisms. Supramolecular chemistry Bioinorganic and bioorganometallic compounds. Metals in medicine.

### Physical chemistry A 716 (CMY 716)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Chemistry](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week for 4 weeks, 6 lectures per week for 4 weeks

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Chemistry

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Crystallography: theoretical principles, symmetry elements and operations, point groups, space groups, theory of crystals, X-rays, crystallographic techniques, structure determinations, powder diffraction and crystallographic data bases.

Molecular modelling: molecular structure/energy, methodology, principles and and molecular surfaces.

### Physical chemistry B 717 (CMY 717)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Chemistry](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.



---

<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week for 7 weeks, 6 lectures per week for 4 weeks
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

Chemical kinetics: rates of chemical reactions, equilibrium reactions, temperature dependence of reactions, complex reactions, reaction mechanisms and kinetics by thermal analysis. Statistical mechanics: Boltzmann distribution, partition functions, ensembles, thermodynamic functions, equilibria.

### Research: Organic/inorganic project Part 1 718 (CMY 718)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Chemistry</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week for 7 weeks, 1 seminar per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 and Semester 2

#### Module content

Students work on one project during the year which has a significant component that can be described as instrumental or computational or analysis of data or theoretical. A report and a presentation are required.

### Research: Physical/analytical project Part 2 719 (CMY 719)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Chemistry</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week for 7 weeks
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 and Semester 2

#### Module content

Students work on one project during the year which has a significant component that can be described as instrumental or computational or analysis of data or theoretical. A report and a presentation are required.



## Advanced practical techniques 730 (CMY 730)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Chemistry</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	5 lectures per week for 6 weeks, 5 tutorials per week for 6 weeks
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Chemistry
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Chemical information literacy; Molecular modelling; NMR spectroscopy; Mass spectrometry; Crystallography and Metrology will be presented from a practical point of view with an emphasis on the interpretation of data and use of instrumentation rather than on underlying theory.

## Community nutrition 321 (CNT 321)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BDietetics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	3rd-year status
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, Community Engagement
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Human Nutrition
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Community nutrition practice within the larger public health realm. Nutrition within primary healthcare. Nutrition and community development as well as project planning and management.

## Community nutrition 411 (CNT 411)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	22.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BDietetics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	4th-year status
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 4 lectures per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Human Nutrition

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Global nutrition challenges e.g. food security, protein-energy and micronutrient malnutrition, non communicable diseases of lifestyle, etc. Public health approaches and general nutrition interventions to address these challenges. Nutrition program development including assessment, analysis and interventions in the South African context as well as Nutrition Policy formulation

## Program design: Introduction 110 (COS 110)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

BCom Statistics  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BIS Multimedia  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Physics

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** COS 132 , COS 151 and Maths level 5

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The focus is on object-oriented (OO) programming. Concepts including inheritance and multiple inheritance, polymorphism, operator overloading, memory management (static and dynamic binding), interfaces, encapsulation, reuse, etc. will be covered in the module. The module teaches sound program design with the emphasis on modular code, leading to well structured, robust and documented programs. A modern OO programming language is used as the vehicle to develop these skills. The module will introduce the student to basic data structures, lists, stacks and queues.

## Operating systems 122 (COS 122)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



**Programmes** BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Physics

**Prerequisites** COS 132

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Fundamental concepts of modern operating systems in terms of their structure and the mechanisms they use are studied in this module. After completing this module, students will have gained, as outcomes, knowledge of real time, multimedia and multiple processor systems, as these will be defined and analysed. In addition, students will have gained knowledge on modern design issues of process management, deadlock and concurrency control, memory management, input/output management, file systems and operating system security. In order to experience a hands-on approach to the knowledge students would have gained from studying the abovementioned concepts, students will have produced a number of practical implementations of these concepts using the Windows and Linux operating systems.

**Imperative programming 132 (COS 132)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electrical Engineering  
BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electronic Engineering  
BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE  
BIS Multimedia  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** APS of 30 and level 5 (60-69%) Mathematics

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

This module introduces imperative computer programming, which is a fundamental building block of computer science. The process of constructing a program for solving a given problem, of editing it, compiling (both manually and automatically), running and debugging it, is covered from the beginning. The aim is to master the elements of a programming language and be able to put them together in order to construct programs using types, control structures, arrays, functions and libraries. An introduction to object orientation will be given. After completing this module, the student should understand the fundamental elements of a program, the importance of good program design and user-friendly interfaces. Students should be able to conduct basic program analysis and write complete elementary programs.

## Introduction to computer science 151 (COS 151)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BIS Multimedia](#)  
[BSc Computer Science](#)  
[BSc Information and Knowledge Systems](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** APS of 30 and level 5 (60-69%) Mathematics.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

This module introduces concepts and terminology related to the computer science discipline. General topics covered include the history of computing, machine level representation of data, Boolean logic and gates, basic computer systems organisation, algorithms and complexity and automata theory. The module also introduces some of the subdisciplines of computer science, such as computer networks, database systems, compilers, information security and intelligent systems. The module also focuses on modelling of algorithms.

## Theoretical computer science 210 (COS 210)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** COS 110 and COS 151

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science



**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

This module introduces students to a framework for investigating both computability and complexity of problems. Topics include, but are not limited to: finite-state machines, regular expressions and their application in a language such as awk, the Halting problem, context-free grammars, P vs NP problem, NP-complete class, reduction techniques, regular languages, DFAs and NFAs, Lattices, Church-Turing thesis.

## Theoretical Computer Science 211 (COS 211)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Prerequisites** COS 110 and COS 151

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

This module introduces students to a framework for investigating both computability and complexity of problems. Topics include, but are not limited to: finite-state machines, regular expressions and their application in a language such as awk, the Halting problem, context-free grammars, P vs NP problem, NP-complete class, reduction techniques, regular languages, DFAs and NFAs, Lattices, context-free grammars, Church-Turing thesis.

## Data structures and algorithms 212 (COS 212)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** [BEng Computer Engineering](#)  
[BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE](#)  
[BIS Multimedia](#)  
[BSc Computer Science](#)  
[BSc Information and Knowledge Systems](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** COS 110

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Data abstraction is a fundamental concept in the design and implementation of correct and efficient software. In prior modules, students are introduced to the basic data structures of lists, stacks and queues. This module continues with advanced data structures such as trees, hash tables, heaps and graphs, and goes into depth with the algorithms needed to manipulate them efficiently. Classical algorithms for sorting, searching, traversing, packing and game playing are included, with an emphasis on comparative implementations and efficiency. At the end of this module, students will be able to identify and recognise all the classical data structures; implement them in different ways; know how to measure the efficiency of implementations and algorithms; and have further developed their programming skills, especially with recursion and polymorphism.

## Concurrent systems 226 (COS 226)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** COS 122 and COS 212

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Computer science courses mostly deal with sequential programs. This module looks at the fundamentals of concurrency; what it means, how it can be exploited, and what facilities are available to determine program correctness. Concurrent systems are designed, analysed and implemented.

## Computer organisation and architecture 284 (COS 284)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** COS 212 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2





## Module content

This module provides the foundations on which other modules build by enabling a deeper understanding of how software interacts with hardware. It will teach the design and operation of modern digital computers by studying each of the components that make up a digital computer and the interaction between these components. Specific areas of interest, but not limited to, are: representation of data on the machine-level; organisation of the machine on the assembly level; the architecture and organisation of memory; inter- and intra-component interfacing and communication; data paths and control; and parallelism. Topic-level detail and learning outcomes for each of these areas are given by the first 6 units of 'Architecture and Organisation' knowledge area as specified by the ACM/IEEE Computer Science Curriculum 2013.

The concepts presented in the theory lectures will be reinforced during the practical sessions by requiring design and implementation of the concepts in simulators and assembly language using an open source operating system.

## Artificial intelligence 314 (COS 314)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** COS 110

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

The main objective of this module is to introduce a selection of topics from artificial intelligence (AI), and to provide the student with the background to implement AI techniques for solving complex problems.

This module will cover topics from classical AI, as well as more recent AI paradigms. These topics include: search methods, game playing, knowledge representation and reasoning, machine learning, neural networks, genetic algorithms, artificial life, planning methods, and intelligent agents. In the practical part of this module, students will get experience in implementing

- (1) game trees and evolving game-playing agents;
- (2) a neural network and applying it to solve a real-world problem; and
- (3) a genetic algorithm and applying it to solve a real-world problem.

## Computer security and ethics 330 (COS 330)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** COS 110

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

This module develops an appreciation of the fundamentals and design principles for information assurance and security. Students will develop a clear understanding of the basic information security services and mechanisms, enabling them to design and evaluate the integration of solutions into the user application environment.

Emphasis will be placed on services such as authorisation and confidentiality. Students will acquire knowledge and skills of Security Models such as the Bell-LaPadula, Harrison-Ruzzo Ullman and Chinese Wall Model. Students will develop a detailed understanding of the confidentiality service by focusing on cryptology and the practical implementation thereof. The student will be introduced to professional and philosophical ethics. At the end of the module students will be able to engage in a debate regarding the impact (local and global) of computers on individuals, organisations and society. The professionalism of IT staff will be discussed against national and international codes of practices such as those of the CSSA, ACM and IEEE.

## Programming languages 333 (COS 333)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** COS 110

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Programming languages are the backbone for software development. Each language has its own different syntax and semantics, but there are many common concepts that can be studied and then illustrated through the languages. The module concentrates on issues of object orientation, including delegation, iteration and polymorphism. It surveys how languages provide the basic building blocks for data and control, as well as exception handling and concurrency. At the end of the module, students will be able to appreciate the rich history behind programming languages, leading to independent principles that evolve over time. They will be skilled at using a variety of programming languages, including new paradigms such as functional, logical and scripting, and will know how to learn a new language with ease. From this experience, they will be able to apply evaluation criteria for choosing an appropriate programming language in a given scenario.

## Computer graphics 344 (COS 344)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** COS 110 and WTW 124 or WTW 146



**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The aim of this module is to acquire a sound knowledge of the basic theory of interactive computer graphics and basic computer graphics programming techniques. The theory will cover graphics systems and models, graphics programming, input and interaction, geometric objects and transformations, viewing in 3D, shading, rendering techniques, and introduce advanced concepts, such as object-oriented computer graphics and discrete techniques. The module includes a practical component that enables students to apply and test their knowledge in computer graphics. The OpenGL graphics library and the C programming language will be used for this purpose.

## Spatial databases 487 (COS 487)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** COS 301 and at least two COS modules at third-year level.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Computer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

This module covers the major themes of spatial databases with application to geographic information systems (GIS), i.e. systems concerning data with an implicit or explicit reference to a location relative to the earth. Topics covered include an introduction to spatial databases and spatial data management systems, representation of geographic data, spatial data modelling, computational geometry, spatial data indexing, query processing and spatial data standards. For Computer Science students the module is an introduction to the ever increasing application field of geographics information systems (GIS), and for Geoinformatics students the module provides insight into the Computer Science foundations of the field.

## Animal anatomy and physiology 200 (DAF 200)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 32.00

**Programmes** [BSc Biotechnology](#)  
[BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** CMY 127 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical every 2nd week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

The body cavities, the origin of trunk wall and the principle arrangement of other anatomical structures as explained by the basic embryological development of mammals. Introduction to anatomy and anatomical terminology. Introduction to basic histology of cells, epithelial tissue and connective tissue. Basic anatomy of tissues, organs, systems and joints. Anatomy of the musculo-skeletal system integrated, the histology of connective tissue and muscles. The anatomy and histology of the integument and skin structures, the cardiovascular, respiratory, immune, endocrine, urogenital and digestive systems all of which serves as basis for the physiology component of the module. General species differences of the anatomy and histology where applicable.

### Animal anatomy 310 (DAN 310)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Prerequisites** DAF 200

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Separate classes for Afrikaans and English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Functional anatomy, growth and development of tissues and organ systems. Changes during maturation, reproduction, the post-partum period and lactation. Ageing and tissue changes with erosion diseases. The influence of hormones, production and reproduction on conformation and a critical evaluation of assessment of animals for functional efficiency.

### Animal physiology 311 (DFS 311)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** DAF 200 GS

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Homeostasis and Homeorhesis in animals: Thermoregulation. Adaptation of glucose, lipid and protein metabolism in response to short and long-term changes in the supply and balance of nutrients and to changes in tissue demand for nutrients during different physiological states. Deviations from normal homeostasis, metabolic diseases and the prevention thereof. Pathogenesis of inflammation and infections; immunity.

## Growth physiology 320 (DFS 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** DFS 311 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical every 2nd week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Functional anatomy, growth and development of tissues and organ systems. The underlying physiological processes in growth and development. Pre- and postnatal growth and factors which determine growth rate: growth curves, stimulants of growth, age, nutrition, breed, sex. Changes during maturation, reproduction, the post-partum period and lactation. Ageing and tissue changes with erosion diseases. The influence of hormones, production and reproduction on conformation and a critical evaluation of assessment of animals for functional efficiency.

## Thesis: Rural development planning 990 (DPL 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year

## Dietetic application of communication principles 222 (DTT 222)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** 2nd-year status

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Human Nutrition

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

A total diet approach to communicating food and nutrition messages using theoretical frameworks, including planning and evaluation of content as well as presentation skills.

## Dissertation: Exploration geophysics 890 (EGF 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Thesis: Exploration geophysics 990 (EGF 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Basis in environmental health 772 (EHM 772)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 5.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)  
[BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** School of Health System and Public Health

**Period of presentation** Year

## Economics 110 (EKN 110)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00



**Programmes**

- BA
- BAdmin Public Management and International Relations
- BCom
- BCom Accounting Sciences
- BCom Agribusiness Management
- BCom Business Management
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Economics
- BCom Financial Sciences
- BCom Human Resource Management
- BCom Informatics Information Systems
- BCom Investment Management
- BCom Law
- BCom Marketing Management
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BCom Supply Chain Management
- BConSci Clothing Retail Management
- BConSci Food Retail Management
- BConSci Hospitality Management
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BIT Information Systems
- BPolSci International Studies
- BPolSci Political Studies
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Construction Management
- BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Quantity Surveying
- BSc Real Estate
- BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management
- BSocSci Industrial Sociology and Labour Studies
- BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics
- BTRP

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Economics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

This module deals with the core principles of economics. A distinction between macroeconomics and microeconomics is made. A discussion of the market system and circular flow of goods, services and money is followed by a section dealing with microeconomic principles, including demand and supply analysis, consumer behaviour and utility maximisation, production and the costs thereof, and the different market models and firm behaviour. Labour market institutions and issues, wage determination, as well as income inequality and poverty are also addressed. A section of money, banking, interest rates and monetary policy concludes the course.

### Economics 113 (EKN 113)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BCom Statistics](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** At least 6 (70-79%) in Mathematics or 60% in both Statistics 113 and 123.

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Economics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Introduction to economics and principles of microeconomics

The scope of economics; the basic theory of demand and supply; price, income and cross elasticity of demand; consumer utility, the utility function and case studies in terms of the utility function; the theory of the firm in the short and long run; market structures, namely the perfect market, monopoly, oligopoly and monopolistic competition; public sector finances; microeconomics versus macroeconomics and economic statistics.

### Economics 120 (EKN 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00





**Programmes**

- BA
- BAdmin Public Management and International Relations
- BCom
- BCom Accounting Sciences
- BCom Agribusiness Management
- BCom Business Management
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Economics
- BCom Financial Sciences
- BCom Human Resource Management
- BCom Informatics Information Systems
- BCom Investment Management
- BCom Law
- BCom Marketing Management
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BCom Supply Chain Management
- BConSci Clothing Retail Management
- BConSci Food Retail Management
- BConSci Hospitality Management
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BIT Information Systems
- BPolSci International Studies
- BPolSci Political Studies
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Construction Management
- BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Quantity Surveying
- BSc Real Estate
- BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management
- BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics
- BTRP

**Service modules**

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites**

EKN 110 GS or EKN 113 GS and at least 4 (50-59%) in Mathematics in the Grade 12 examination or 60% in STK 113 and concurrently registered for STK 123

**Contact time**

1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition**

Module is presented in English

**Department**

Economics

**Period of presentation**

Semester 2



## Module content

This module deals with the core principles of economics, especially macroeconomic measurement the private and public sectors of the South African economy receive attention, while basic macroeconomic relationships and the measurement of domestic output and national income are discussed. Aggregate demand and supply analysis stands core to this course which is also used to introduce students to the analysis of economic growth, unemployment and inflation. The microeconomics of government is addressed in a separate section, followed by a section on international economics, focusing on international trade, exchange rates and the balance of payments. The economics of developing countries and South Africa in the global economy conclude the course.

## Economics 123 (EKN 123)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Statistics</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	At least 6 (70-79%) in Mathematics or 60% in both Statistics 113 and 123; EKN 113 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Economics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

National income and principles of macroeconomics

The mechanics of national income accounts, the Keynesian macroeconomic model, the money market, demand for money and money supply, money and credit creation and the role of the monetary authorities. The IS-LM model of macroeconomic equilibrium and monetary and fiscal policy applications. The aggregate demand and supply models with the debate between the classical school, the monetarists and the Keynesian school. The problems of inflation and unemployment. Macroeconomic issues, namely macroeconomic policy, international trade, the balance of payments and economic growth.

## Economics 214 (EKN 214)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BAdmin Public Management and International Relations BCom BCom Econometrics BCom Economics BCom Investment Management BCom Law BCom Statistics BCom Statistics and Data Science BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching BPolSci International Studies BPolSci Political Studies BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Mathematical Statistics BSc Mathematics BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics BTRP
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	EKN 110 GS & EKN 120 OR EKN 113 GS & EKN 123; & STK 110 GS OR STK 113 & STK 123 & STK 120/121 or concurrently registered for STK 120/121 OR WST 111 & WST121 are prerequisites instead of STK 120/121 or WST 111 and concurrently registered for WST 121.
----------------------	---

<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
---------------------	---------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Economics
-------------------	-----------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

Macroeconomics

From Wall and Bay Street to Diagonal Street: a thorough understanding of the mechanisms and theories explaining the workings of the economy is essential. Macroeconomic insight is provided on the real market, the money market, two market equilibrium, monetarism, growth theory, cyclical analysis, inflation, Keynesian general equilibrium analysis and fiscal and monetary policy issues.

### Economics 224 (EKN 224)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
-----------------------	-------



<b>Programmes</b>	BCom BCom Agribusiness Management BCom Econometrics BCom Economics BCom Law BCom Statistics and Data Science BPolSci International Studies BPolSci Political Studies BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Mathematical Statistics BSc Mathematics BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Education Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	EKN 110 GS & EKN 120 OR EKN 113 GS & EKN 123; & STK 110 GS OR STK 113 & STK 123 & STK 120/121 or concurrently registered for STK120/121 OR WST 111 & WST121 are prerequisites instead of STK 120/121 or WST 111 and concurrently registered for WST 121.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Economics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
<b>Module content</b>	Microeconomics Microeconomic insight is provided into: consumer and producer theory, general microeconomic equilibrium, Pareto-optimality and optimality of the price mechanism, welfare economics, market forms and the production structure of South Africa. Statistic and econometric analysis of microeconomic issues.
<b>Economics 234 (EKN 234)</b>	
<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00



BAdmin Public Management and International Relations  
BCom  
BCom Econometrics  
BCom Economics  
BCom Investment Management  
BCom Law  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics  
BTRP

**Programmes**

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	EKN 214 and STK 120/121 or WST 121 OR concurrently registered for STK 120/121 or WST 121.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Economics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

**Module content**

Macroeconomics  
Application of the principles learned in EKN 214 on the world we live in. We look at international markets and dynamic macroeconomic models, and familiarise the students with the current macroeconomic policy debates. We also take a look at the latest macroeconomic research in the world. The course includes topics of the mathematical and econometric analysis of macroeconomic issues.

**Economics 244 (EKN 244)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BCom BCom Agribusiness Management BCom Econometrics BCom Economics BCom Law BCom Statistics and Data Science BSocSci Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	EKN 224 and STK 120/121 or WST 121 OR concurrently registered for STK 120/121 or WST 121.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Economics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

#### Microeconomics

From general equilibrium and economic welfare to uncertainty and asymmetric information. In this module we apply the principles learned in EKN 224 on the world around us by looking at the microeconomic principles of labour and capital markets, as well as reasons why the free market system could fail. We touch on the government's role in market failures. The course includes topics of the mathematical and econometric analysis of microeconomic issues.

## Economics 310 (EKN 310)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

### Programmes

[BAdmin Public Management and International Relations](#)  
[BCom](#)  
[BCom Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BCom Econometrics](#)  
[BCom Economics](#)  
[BCom Investment Management](#)  
[BCom Law](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BPolSci International Studies](#)  
[BPolSci Political Studies](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics](#)  
[BTRP](#)

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** EKN 214, EKN 234 or EKN 224, EKN 244

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Economics



**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Public finance

Role of government in the economy. Welfare economics and theory of optimality. Ways of correcting market failures. Government expenditure theories, models and programmes. Government revenue. Models on taxation, effects of taxation on the economy. Assessment of taxation from an optimality and efficiency point of view. South African perspective on public finance.

## Economics 314 (EKN 314)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Econometrics  
BCom Economics  
BCom Law  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BPolSci International Studies  
BPolSci Political Studies  
BSc Mathematical Statistics

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** EKN 234, EKN 244

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Economics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

International trade/finance

International economic insight is provided into international economic relations and history, theory of international trade, international capital movements, international trade politics, economic and customs unions and other forms or regional cooperation and integration, international monetary relations, foreign exchange markets, exchange rate issues and the balance of payments, as well as open economy macroeconomic issues.

## Economics 320 (EKN 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00



<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BAdmin Public Management and International Relations          BCom          BCom Agribusiness Management          BCom Econometrics          BCom Economics          BCom Investment Management          BCom Law          BCom Statistics          BCom Statistics and Data Science          BPolSci International Studies          BPolSci Political Studies          BSc Applied Mathematics          BSc Mathematical Statistics          BSc Mathematics          BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management          BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics          BTRP</p>
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	<p>Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology          Faculty of Education          Faculty of Humanities          Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences</p>
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	EKN 310 GS
----------------------	------------

<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Economics
-------------------	-----------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
-------------------------------	------------

**Module content**

Economic analyses

Identification, collection and interpretation process of relevant economic data; the national accounts (i.e. income and production accounts, the national financial account, the balance of payments and input-output tables); economic growth; inflation; employment, unemployment, wages, productivity and income distribution; business cycles; financial indicators; fiscal indicators; social indicators; international comparisons; relationships between economic time series - regression analysis; long-term future studies and scenario analysis; overall assessment of the South African economy from 1994 onwards.

**Economics 325 (EKN 325)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
-----------------------	-------





<b>Programmes</b>	BCom BCom Econometrics BCom Economics BCom Law BCom Statistics BCom Statistics and Data Science BPolSci International Studies BPolSci Political Studies BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Mathematical Statistics BSc Mathematics
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	EKN 214, EKN 234
----------------------	------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Economics
-------------------	-----------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

Economic policy and development: Capita select

The course provides an introduction to growth economics and also to some topics on development economics. Firstly, historical evidence is covered and then the canonical Solow growth model and some of its empirical applications (human capital and convergence). Secondly, the new growth theory (the AK and the Romer models of endogenous growth) are covered. Some of the development topics to be covered include technology transfer, social infrastructure and natural resources.

### Microeconomics 812 (EKN 812)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------

<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	MCom Econometrics (Coursework) MCom Economics (Coursework) MPhil Economics (Coursework)
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	Only for students in relevant programme
----------------------	---

<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
---------------------	--------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Economics
-------------------	-----------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------



## Module content

The module will first expose students to knowledge related to how individual consumers and firms behave under a very strict set of circumstances. Toward the end of the semester, the module will then begin to examine behaviour under less strict assumptions. The module covers in detail, firm behaviour, consumer behaviour, general equilibrium, behaviour under uncertainty and risk, strategic behaviour, information, game theory and to a lesser extent, the interaction between the government and the individual.

## Macroeconomics 813 (EKN 813)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes**

[MCom Econometrics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MCom Economics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MPhil Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** Only for students in relevant programme

**Contact time** 1 other contact session per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Economics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

## Module content

The basic framework for this module will be infinitely-lived dynamic stochastic and non-stochastic macro models in both discrete and continuous time frames. Overlapping generation models will also be used to deal with certain topics. Topics include:

- The Lucas Critique
- Growth models
- Expectations
- Business cycles
- Basics of a new Keynesian business cycle model
- Overlapping generations models

## Monetary economics and banking 816 (EKN 816)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes**

[MCom Econometrics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MCom Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** Only for students in relevant programme

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Economics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

This module presents an advanced treatment of critical topics in monetary economics and the models economists use to investigate the interactions between real and monetary factors. It provides extensive coverage of general equilibrium (DSGE) models, models of the short-run real effects of monetary policy, and game-theoretic approaches to monetary policy. Among the topics covered are models of time consistency, monetary policy operating procedures, interest rates and monetary policy.

Throughout, this module focuses on the implications of interest rate control for monetary policy. The module is designed for advanced graduate students in monetary economics, economic researchers and economists working in policy institutions and central banks.

The module includes discussions of empirical evidence on the new Keynesian model, inflation forecast targeting models, optimal policies in forward-looking models, stability and the Taylor principle, and open economy new Keynesian models. It explicitly treats policy analysis in new Keynesian models and their underlying DSGE foundations for both a closed economy, a small open economy and a two-country world economy; the discussion includes the derivation of the policy objective function, optimal commitment and discretionary outcome, targeting rules and instrument rules.

## Introduction to statistical learning 720 (EKT 720)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

[BComHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BComHons Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Statistics and Data Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** RAL 780 or WST 311, 312, 321

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 web-based period per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The emphasis is on the theoretical understanding and practical application of advances in statistical modelling. The following topics are covered: Single equation models: Nonparametric regression. Bootstrap procedures within regression analysis, k-nearest neighbour classification. Modelling categorical dependent variables - Logit/Probit models. Multiple outputs. Linear regression of an indicator matrix. Ridge regression. Non-linear regression modelling. Some new developments in regression and classification.

Simultaneous equation models: Specification, identification and estimation of simultaneous equation models.

## Text and behavioural analytics 725 (EKT 725)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Statistics and Data Science](#)

**Prerequisites** STK 353

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Mixtures of distributions and regressions, frequentist and Bayes estimation. Latent components, soft allocation and belongings. Applications in unstructured data, including text data. Identification and interpretation of behavioural patterns.

## Environment and development 811 (ENS 811)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MA Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Ecology \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Management \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

The foundation of the module is the interrelations between societal and environmental dynamics. It deals with issues of social structure, culture, politics, education, migration, production, urbanisation, demographics and social institutions and how these impact upon the environment. Also dealt with is how the consequences of impacts, such as environmental change, in turn affect societies. Analysis of complex interrelationships between society and the environment, social-environmental linkages and multiplier effects are dealt with.

## Strategic environmental management 822 (ENS 822)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00



**Programmes**  
MA Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MPhil Environmental Law (Coursework)  
MSc Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Ecology (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Management (Coursework)  
MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework)  
MSc Water Resource Management (Coursework)

**Service modules** Faculty of Law

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 5 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Strategic environmental planning: introduction, objectives and principles; levels; South African overview; guidelines: national and international; strategy and management; structure, strategy and agency; South African guidelines; diagnostic tools; RESP analysis; strategic resource planning; applications, implementation and control; development and policy implementation; South African environmental policy; evaluation frameworks; portfolio analysis; competitive forces; alliances; business benefits; intangibles, survival and catalytic contributions; South African legislation and regulations.

## Environment and land reform 823 (ENS 823)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes**  
MA Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MSc Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Ecology (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Management (Coursework)  
MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

The need and purpose of land reform in South Africa and its contribution towards sustainable social-environmental interaction. An overview of the global variety of land tenure systems, and tenure reform programmes in other countries. Overview of previous systems of land tenure in South Africa. Land reform policy in South Africa: restitution, redistribution, and tenure reform. Critical assessment of progress in terms of land reform objectives. Evaluation of the contribution of the South African land reform programme towards creating sustainable environments.



## Social modelling and assessment 824 (ENS 824)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MA Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Ecology \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Management \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 5 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

In this module students will be introduced to the various methods of modelling and assessing social impacts. Specific emphasis will be placed upon modelling societal-economic-environmental interactions, formulating stochastic and dynamic models of population-development-environment interactions, conducting research to determine possible impacts of environmental changes on communities and performing social impact surveys. Students will be introduced to both quantitative as well as qualitative methods of conducting social impacts assessments.

## Dissertation: Entomology 890 (ENT 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Entomology](#)  
[MScAgric Entomology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Thesis: Entomology 990 (ENT 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Entomology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology



**Period of presentation** Year

## Introduction to environmental sciences 101 (ENV 101)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

### Programmes

BA  
BA Extended programme  
BA Languages  
BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BPolSci International Studies  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Meteorology  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Humanities

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1

### Module content

Introducing the basic concepts and interrelationships required to understand the complexity of natural environmental problems, covering an introduction to environmental science and biogeography; including a first introduction to SDGs and Aichi targets.

## Environmental sciences 201 (ENV 201)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BA BA Languages BPolSci International Studies BSc Chemistry BSc Environmental Sciences BSc Geography BSc Meteorology BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ENV 101 or WKD 155 or BOT 161 or ZEN 161.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 2

### Module content

Introduces basic concepts and interrelationships required to understand our atmosphere, with a strong focus on an introduction to weather and climate. A key component of the course is an introduction to climate change, including the science of climate change, introducing climate change projections, and climate change impacts. A key focus of the second part of the course will be climate change implications for the attainment of SDGs and Aichi targets on the African continent, under a range of plausible scenarios.

## Human environmental interactions 301 (ENV 301)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BA BSc Chemistry BSc Environmental Sciences BSc Geography BSc Meteorology BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Education Faculty of Humanities
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ENV 201
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 2





## Module content

The module serves as an introduction to human-environment relations, on contemporary environmental issues in Africa.

The module begins with different theories and schools of thought in human-environment relations, followed by recent and future impacts of human pressures on natural resources, the state of the environment in South Africa, management of critical resources, population trends, biodiversity loss, pollution, water scarcity, desertification, climate change, waste accumulation and management, environmental management tools, environmental education and environmental management legislation. A key focus here is future scenarios for the African continent in terms of SDGs and Aichi targets; given current and projected driving forces.

## Research and presentation skills 703 (ENV 703)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

A module zooming in on research methodologies, data capturing techniques as well as visual and oral presentation skills. A significant part of the module assessment is constituted by the final presentation of the honours project contents.

## Environmental compliance 727 (ENV 727)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Tools for achieving environmental compliance, constitutional and administrative requirements, environmental legislative requirements, criminal legislative requirements, business entities and liability, mandate and powers of environmental inspectors, enforcement ethics, networks and resources, conflict management.

## Industrial environmental enforcement 728 (ENV 728)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00



<b>Prerequisites</b>	ENV 727
<b>Contact time</b>	5 lectures for period of one week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Health and safety during industrial enforcement, compliance inspection principles in industry, principles of investigation, environmental sampling and chain of custody of samples, interaction with ISO 14001, procedures during prosecution.

### Industrial environmental enforcement 729 (ENV 729)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	ENV 727
<b>Contact time</b>	5 lectures for period of one week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Health and safety during industrial enforcement, compliance inspection principles in industry, principles of investigation, environmental sampling and chain of custody of samples, interaction with ISO 14001, procedures during prosecution.

### Environmental assessments 785 (ENV 785)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Environmental Health</a> <a href="#">BScHons Geography and Environmental Science</a> <a href="#">BScHons Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Health Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

The aim of this module is to understand the principles and processes behind environmental assessments. The module will give an overview of the history of assessments, compare assessment processes internationally, evaluate the strengths and weaknesses of different approaches, provide an overview of the South African regulatory context and the environmental authorisation process.

## Environmental paradigms 810 (ENV 810)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

MA Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MSc Air Quality Management (Coursework)  
MSc Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Ecology (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Education (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Management (Coursework)  
MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework)  
MSc Water Resource Management (Coursework)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 5 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Environmental philosophy and ethics, environmental ecology, environment, society and development, environmental economics, environmental management, critical resources management: water utilisation, air quality control, land-use planning: soil characteristics, biodiversity planning, critical resource management: determinism vs co-evolutionary environmental frameworks, research methodology and practice.

## Environmental law 816 (ENV 816)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

MA Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MPhil Environmental Law (Coursework)  
MSc Air Quality Management (Coursework)  
MSc Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Ecology (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Education (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Management (Coursework)  
MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework)  
MSc Water Resource Management (Coursework)

**Service modules** Faculty of Law

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.



<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 web-based period per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

Legislation for sustainable development within the framework of international agreements, the different acts affecting water quality and water use, the SEMAs within the NEMA framework, the NEMA EIA regulations, legislation pertaining to hazardous substances, interaction between mining development and NEMA, energy law, strategic environmental legislation, marine and coastal management.

### International environmental management systems 822 (ENV 822)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------

<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
-----------------------	-------

#### Programmes

[MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Ecology \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Management \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Forest Management and the Environment \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
----------------------	-------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	20 lectures over a period of 1 week
---------------------	-------------------------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
-------------------	------------------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
-------------------------------	------------

#### Module content

The ISO framework, environmental risks and opportunities for companies, global environmental concerns, environmental legislation, identification of environmental impacts, environmental certification and auditing, follow-up activities, the Forestry Stewardship Council framework, chain of custody requirements, production standards, FSC reporting.

(\*\* additional costs involved for international UK certificate)

### Trees in a multifunctional landscape 833 (ENV 833)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------

<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
-----------------------	-------

#### Programmes

[MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Ecology \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Management \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Forest Management and the Environment \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
----------------------	-------------------



**Contact time** 1 web-based period per week, 5 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

### Module content

Place and role of trees in multifunctional rural landscapes. Trees outside forests. Multipurpose trees. Trees and biodiversity. Trees and environmental services. Trees and sustainable development. Domesticated forests. Agroforestry (definition, classification, challenges and examples). Multiple use of forests and trees. Non-timber tree and forest products. Domestication of multipurpose trees. Forests and people. Trees and agricultural production systems (yield, interactions, synergy, competition, pests and diseases). Case-study examples from sub-Saharan Africa.

## Mini-dissertation 891 (ENV 891)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 90.00

### Programmes

[MA Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Air Quality Management \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Ecology \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Education \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Management \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Forest Management and the Environment \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

The student needs to conduct a research project under the supervision of an academic member of staff associated with the Centre for Environmental Studies. This project needs to be of a sufficient quality to be publishable in the open scientific literature. The research report is examined as a manuscript for a suitable journal.

## Dissertation: Environmental ecology 892 (ENV 892)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Environmental Ecology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisite.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Dissertation: Environment and society 893 (ENV 893)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Environment and Society](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisite.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Dissertation: Environmental management 894 (ENV 894)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Environmental Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Dissertation: Water resource management 896 (ENV 896)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Water Resource Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Dissertation: Environmental education 897 (ENV 897)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Environmental Education](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Dissertation: Air quality management 898 (ENV 898)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Air Quality Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Water resource management 990 (ENV 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Water Resource Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Environment and society 991 (ENV 991)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Environment and Society](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Environmental ecology 992 (ENV 992)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology



**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Environmental economics 993 (ENV 993)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Environmental Economics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Environmental management 994 (ENV 994)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Environmental Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Air quality management 998 (ENV 998)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Air Quality Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Introduction to environmental and occupational health 775 (EOH 775)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)  
[BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English





**Department** School of Health System and Public Health

**Period of presentation** Year

### Academic literacy (1) 110 (EOT 110)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

**Service modules**

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences  
Faculty of Theology and Religion  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 other contact session per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Unit for Academic Literacy

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

An introduction to academic literacy that considers various learning styles and strategies, and provides an initial exploration of the characteristics of academic language. The module focuses initially on academic listening and speaking. Practice in collecting information for academic tasks, as well as in the processing of academic information. In addition, the module has a focus on the enhancement of academic vocabulary, and some initial and elementary academic writing is attempted.

### Academic literacy (2) 120 (EOT 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

**Service modules**

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences  
Faculty of Theology and Religion  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 other contact session per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Unit for Academic Literacy

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

While retaining an emphasis on the collection and processing of academic information, this module also provides sustained practice in academic reading. Similarly, we concentrate on building up an academic vocabulary specific to certain fields of study. The final part of the module brings together academic listening, reading and writing. The production of academic information in the form of argumentative writing is the focus here, i.e. we concentrate on producing academic discourse that is rational, coherent, clear and precise.

## Aesthetics 121 (EST 121)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	9.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	OBG 111
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Presentation techniques: story boards and technical drawings. Presentation techniques using CAD.

## Aesthetics: Product, consumer and environment 320 (EST 320)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a> <a href="#">BConSci Food Retail Management</a> <a href="#">BConSci Hospitality Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	OBG 111
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Introduction to aesthetics. The interaction between environment and consumers' aesthetic experience. Visual merchandising: basic components; tools and techniques; planning in clothing, interior and foods retail settings. Visual merchandising planning. Use of sustainable strategies in visual merchandising planning in clothing, interior and foods retail settings. This module addresses UN sustainable development goals: 8 (decent work and economic growth), 9 (industry innovation and infrastructure) and 12 (responsible consumption and production).

## Water quality management 810 (EWM 810)



**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Ecology \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 20 discussion classes

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Severity of waterborne disease, accurate risk analysis, emergence of pathogens resistant to disinfection, the use of indicator organisms, toxicity risks, viral and protozoal contamination, water borne diseases surveillance, epidemiology of water borne diseases, water quality standards and monitoring, education.

### Water conservation and demand management 821 (EWM 821)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MA Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Ecology \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 20 discussion classes

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Public access to information regarding water quality, water supply sustainability and public education, demand projections, water management efficiency systems approach to water management, watershed protection, drinking water treatment and distribution, wastewater collection and treatment, effects of deforestation and treatment, and complex water system developments, destruction of wetlands, effects of recreation, agriculture and aquaculture on eutrophication.

### Water supply and sanitation 822 (EWM 822)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00



**Programmes** MSc Environment and Society (Coursework)  
MSc Environmental Ecology (Coursework)  
MSc Water Resource Management (Coursework)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 20 discussion classes

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Low technology water treatment options, sanitary engineering, high technology options, water disinfection methods, selection of treatment regimes, stormwater management.

### Pharmacology 381 (FAR 381)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BDietetics  
BNurs  
BPhysio  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BScHons Pharmacology

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** FSG 161, 162, 251, 252.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Pharmacology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Introduction, receptors, antagonism, kinetic principles, drugs that impact upon the autonomic and central nervous system, pharmacotherapy of hypertension, angina pectoris, myocardial infarction, heart failure, arrhythmias, and epilepsy. Diuretics, glucocorticosteroids, local anaesthetics, anaesthetic drugs, analgesics, iron and vitamins, oncostatics and immuno suppressants.

### Pharmacology 382 (FAR 382)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BNurs BPhysio BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Medical Sciences BScHons Pharmacology
-------------------	--

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	FAR 381, FLG 211, FLG 212, FLG 221, FLG 222 GS
----------------------	--

<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
---------------------	---------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Pharmacology
-------------------	--------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

Hormones, drugs that act on the histaminergic, serotonergic, and dopaminergic receptors. Pharmacotherapy of diabetes mellitus, schizophrenia, depression, obesity, anxiety, insomnia, gastro-intestinal diseases. Anticoagulants, antimicrobial drugs.

## Financial management 110 (FBS 110)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	BEng Industrial Engineering BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE BSc Construction Management BSc Mathematical Statistics BSc Quantity Surveying BSc Real Estate
-------------------	--

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
----------------------	-------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
---------------------	---------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Financial Management
-------------------	----------------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------



## Module content

\*Only for BSc (Mathematical Statistics, Construction Management, Real Estate and Quantity Surveying) and BEng (Industrial Engineering) students.

Purpose and functioning of financial management. Basic financial management concepts. Accounting concepts and the use of the basic accounting equation to describe the financial position of a business. Recording of financial transactions. Relationship between cash and accounting profit. Internal control and the management of cash. Debtors and short-term investments. Stock valuation models. Depreciation. Financial statements of a business. Distinguishing characteristics of the different forms of businesses. Overview of financial markets and the role of financial institutions. Risk and return characteristics of various financial instruments. Issuing ordinary shares and debt instruments.

## Financial management 112 (FBS 112)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

### Programmes

BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** At least 6 (70-79%) in Mathematics in the Grade 12 examination or WTW 133 (60%), WTW 143 (60%), WST 133 (60%) and WST 143 (60%).

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Financial Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

\*Only for students in BSc (Actuarial and Financial Mathematics), BSc (Mathematics), BSc (Applied Mathematics), BSc (Mathematical Statistics), BSc Extended programme – Mathematical Sciences and BCom (Statistics) who comply with the set prerequisites.

Key principles of financial management. Company ownership. Taxation. Introduction to financial statements. Structure of financial statements. Depreciation and reserves. Preparing financial statements. Group financial statements and insurance company financial statements. Interpretation of financial statements. Limitation of financial statements. Issue of share capital.

## Financial management 120 (FBS 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Mathematical Statistics
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	BCom Financial Sciences, Investment Management and Law: FRK111 and FRK121 (or FRK100 or 101), STK110,120 or FBS121, and simultaneously registered for FRK211; BSc Construction Management, Quantity Surveying and Real Estate: FBS110, STK110 and STK120
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Financial Management
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

\*Only for BSc (Mathematical Statistics, Construction Management, Real Estate and Quantity Surveying) students. Analysis of financial statements. Budgeting and budgetary control. Tax principles and normal income tax for individuals. Time value of money and its use for financial and investment decisions. Calculating the cost of capital and the financing of a business to maintain the optimal capital structure. Capital investment decisions and a study of the financial selection criteria in the evaluation of capital investment projects. The dividend decision and an overview of financial risk management.

## Financial management 122 (FBS 122)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BCom Statistics BCom Statistics and Data Science BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences BSc Mathematical Statistics
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	FBS 112 or WST 121 and 07130261 or 07130262 or 02133388 or 02133273 or 02133395 or 02133274 or 02130007 or 02130016
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Financial Management
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Financial instruments. Use of financial derivatives. Financial institutions. Time value of money. Component cost of capital. Weighted average cost of capital. Capital structure and dividend policy. Capital project appraisal. Evaluating risky investments.



## Science and world views 155 (FIL 155)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

**Programmes** BChD  
BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Medical Sciences  
MBChB

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Philosophy

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

This is a broad introduction to the philosophy and history of science. Examples of themes and historical periods which are covered include: world views in ancient Greece; Socrates; Plato – the founder of Western thought; Aristotle – the foundation of a new tradition; Leonardo da Vinci; the foundation of modern science; the wonder years of the seventeenth century – the flourishing of the sciences and philosophy; the rising of mechanization; a drastic turn in man's vision – the rise of psychology; how the theory of relativity changed our view of the cosmos; quantum theory and its implications for the modern world view; the biological sciences and the secrets of life; the rise and role of psychology; the neuro-sciences; the place, role and benefit of philosophical thought in the sciences.

## Introduction to moral and political philosophy 251 (FIL 251)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** BSc Geoinformatics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Philosophy

**Period of presentation** Quarter 2, 3 and 4





## Module content

In this module students are equipped with an understanding of the moral issues influencing human agency in economic and political contexts. In particular philosophy equips students with analytical reasoning skills necessary to understand and solve complex moral problems related to economic and political decision making. We demonstrate to students how the biggest questions concerning the socio-economic aspects of our lives can be broken down and illuminated through reasoned debate. Examples of themes which may be covered in the module include justice and the common good, a moral consideration of the nature and role of economic markets on society, issues concerning justice and equality, and dilemmas of loyalty. The works of philosophers covered may for instance include that of Aristotle, Locke, Bentham, Mill, Kant, Rawls, Friedman, Nozick, Bernstein, Dworkin, Sandel, Walzer, and MacIntyre.

## Introductory and neurophysiology 211 (FLG 211)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** CMY 127 GS and MLB 111 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Orientation in physiology, homeostasis, cells and tissue, muscle and neurophysiology, cerebrospinal fluid and the special senses.

Practical work: Practical exercises to complement the theory.

## Circulatory physiology 212 (FLG 212)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Chemistry BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology BSc Medical Sciences BSc Microbiology BSc Nutrition
-------------------	---

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** CMY 127 GS and MLB 111 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Body fluids; haematology; cardiovascular physiology and the lymphatic system. Practical work: Practical exercises to complement the theory.

### Lung and renal physiology, acid-base balance and temperature 221 (FLG 221)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Chemistry BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology BSc Medical Sciences BSc Microbiology BSc Nutrition
-------------------	---

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** FLG 211 GS and FLG 212 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Structure, gas exchange and non-respiratory functions of the lungs; structure, excretory and non-urinary functions of the kidneys, acid-base balance, as well as the skin and body temperature control. Practical work: Practical exercises to complement the theory.



## Digestion, endocrinology and reproductive systems 222 (FLG 222)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** FLG 211 GS and FLG 212 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Nutrition, digestion and metabolism; hormonal control of the body functions and the reproductive systems. Practical work: Practical exercises to complement the theory.

## Industrial physiology 322 (FLG 322)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Human Physiology

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS, BCM 252 GS, BCM 261 GS, FLG 221 GS and FLG 222 GS

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Problem-orientated module, with the emphasis on occupational health and safety in the industrial environment. Integration of different physiological systems is required. Practical work: Exposure to occupational hygiene measurement techniques. \*Students interested in pursuing postgraduate studies in OHS must take FLG 322.

## Higher neurological functions 327 (FLG 327)

**Qualification** Undergraduate



**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS, BCM 252 GS, BCM 261 GS, FLG 221 GS and FLG 222 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Overview of higher cognitive functions and the relations between psyche, brain and the immune system. Practical work: Applied practical work with specific examples drawn from South African case studies taught within the framework of the UN Sustainable Development Goal 3 (Good Health and Well-being).

## Cellular and developmental physiology 330 (FLG 330)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Medical Sciences

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS, BCM 252 GS, BCM 261 GS, FLG 221 GS and FLG 222 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

During this module the biology of cellular processes such as the cell cycle, cell death, migration and their related cellular signalling pathways will be discussed as well as their role in early stage embryology and age-related pathologies. Practical work: Exposure to applied molecular biology techniques with specific examples drawn from South African case studies taught within the framework of the UN Sustainable Development Goal of Good Health and Well-being (Sustainable Development Goal 3).

## Exercise and nutrition science 331 (FLG 331)

**Qualification** Undergraduate



**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS, BCM 252 GS, BCM 261 GS, FLG 221 GS and FLG 222 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Mechanisms of muscle contraction and energy sources. Cardio-respiratory changes, thermo-regulation and other adjustments during exercise. Use and misuse of substances to improve performance. Practical work: Applied practical work with exercise descriptions for the South African context taught within the framework of the UN Sustainable Development Goal 3 (Good Health and Well-being).

## Applied and pathophysiology 332 (FLG 332)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS, BCM 252 GS, BCM 261 GS, FLG 221 GS and FLG 222 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Integration of all the human physiological systems. Practical work: Applied practical work.

## Introduction to food, nutrition and health 121 (FNH 121)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00



---

<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Food Science BSc Nutrition
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Natural and Agricultural Sciences students
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

By 2050 the world will have to feed more than 8 billion people. This module provides the initial science base in Food, Nutrition and Health and introduces some scientific principles and fundamental concepts.

Lectures: Introduction to food choice as affected by social factors, religious influences, ethnicity, health, safety, economics, food sensory properties; Introduction to the food supply chain with special emphasis on the nutritional, environmental, ethical and safety issues that are of importance to consumers; Hunger – food needs, including food and nutrition security, nature of nutritional problems, approaches to combat over- and undernutrition; Introduction to nutrition: Nutrients in foods; nutrient composition of foods; bioavailability of nutrients; diet and chronic diseases; the keys to healthy eating; Introduction to functional chemical components of food; Introduction to food processing and preservation; Introduction to food safety, hazards and risks; Introduction to food quality and consumer preferences; Importance of food legislation to ensure a healthy and safe food supply including nutritional labelling; health and nutrition claims; Food, Nutrition and Health issues in the News.

Practical work: Principles and practice of basic concepts in food, nutrition and health.

All lectures and practical discussion sessions focus on the role of food science and nutrition in addressing the UN Sustainable Development Goals of achieving food security and improving good health and well-being (#1, 2, 3 and 6).

## Food and nutrition security 320 (FNH 320)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Nutrition
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Second year status or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 3

### Module content

Global food system and food security, Livelihoods and household dynamics, Gender Issues.

## Research project 400 (FNH 400)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------



<b>Module credits</b>	40.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Nutrition</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Third-year status
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

A laboratory-based, analytical research project on an approved topic in nutritional sciences is planned, executed and presented in the form of a written report.

### Advanced food, nutrition and health 420 (FNH 420)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Nutrition</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Third-year status or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Discussion classes in advanced level of nutritional sciences in topics including Micronutrient metabolism in human health and disease, Nutritional Bioavailability, Nutrigenomics, Nutrition intervention, Nutrition and the metabolic syndrome. Problem solving and literature discussion.

### International nutrition 421 (FNH 421)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Nutrition</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Third year status
<b>Contact time</b>	2 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2



### Module content

Discussion classes in International Nutrition focus on the the most important current nutrition issues affecting populations worldwide. It includes identifying nutrition challenges and trends in both developing and developed countries. The course includes aspects of epidemiology, disease etiology, and consequences of under-nutrition and over-nutrition.

### Finance and investment 700 (FNI 700)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 40.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Actuarial Science](#)

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The application of modern techniques in financial management to the financing of corporate entities and the management of assets. Topics include: the theory of finance, valuation of investments, asset modelling, capital structure and the cost of capital, portfolio management, capital project appraisal and performance management.

### General introduction to forestry 831 (FOR 831)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Forest Management and the Environment \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 web-based period per week, 20 discussion classes per block

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

What is forestry? Global forest resources. Natural forests and plantations in Southern Africa. Forestry systems (natural, multipurpose forests, plantation forestry, agroforestry). Sustainable forestry development policy and legislation. Silviculture and management of plantations. Forest certification. Effects of site and silviculture on wood quality. Forest harvesting, utilisation and forest wood products. Non-timber forest products of natural and plantation forests. Forests and woodlands management (forest planning; forest mensuration, growth and yield estimates and regulation). Environmental management of natural and plantation forests. Forestry research. Human resource management in forestry. This module will also have a field practical expedition to introduce students to the field experience.





## Forest resource use planning and management 832 (FOR 832)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 web-based period per week, 20 discussion classes per block
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Forest planning. Forest mensuration. Growth and yield models and its application in growth and yield simulators. Quantitative silviculture. Yield regulation and forest economics. GIS and spatial analysis in forestry.

## Forest engineering 833 (FOR 833)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 web-based period per week, 20 discussion classes per block
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Forest road engineering. Forest road system management. Forest operations analysis. Production planning. Strategic and tactical planning techniques. Forest operations design. Forest transportation systems. Harvesting management. Logging mechanics.

## Wood science and forest products 834 (FOR 834)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 web-based period per week, 20 discussion classes per block
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences



**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Common characteristics of wood. Properties controlling the technical performance of wood. Natural growth phenomena affecting wood quality. Effect of site and silviculture on wood quality. The genetics of wood. Sawmilling and wood drying. Composite wood products. Deterioration of wood and wood products and methods of protection.

## Forest ecology and management 835 (FOR 835)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

[MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Ecology \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Management \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Forest Management and the Environment \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 web-based period per week, 20 discussion classes per block

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Structure and function of natural forests, species composition and diversity, disturbance processes and regimes, recovery (succession) concepts and theory, biodiversity in forest ecosystems, energy and nutrient flux in natural forest ecosystems. Resource assessment and planning. Silvicultural systems and management of natural forests (and woodlands), natural regeneration and forest rehabilitation management for sustainability of natural forest ecosystems: multiple use for timber and non-timber forest products, forest rehabilitation (invader plants, mining, degraded forests).

## Silviculture 836 (FOR 836)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Forest Management and the Environment \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 web-based period per week, 20 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



### Module content

Understand the development of modern plantation forestry. Commercial plantation species. Forest pests and diseases. Forestry site classification. Basis of forestry rotation length (economics, biological, wood quality). Effect of silvicultural practices on wood quality (managing wood quality). Forestry management regimes for different species and end products. Pros and cons of plantation forestry on the environment. Fire management. Propagation techniques for forestry systems and bio-renewable resources, ecological basis of silviculture and fire management systems.

### Dissertation: Forest science 890 (FOR 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Forest Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

\*Interdepartmental programme. The curriculum is determined by the heads of department in the biological sciences and will include the research methodology and scientific writing. This is followed by research in the area of the chosen specialization in Forest Science culminating in the preparation and submission of research dissertation

### Forest Science 990 (FOR 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Forest Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

\*Interdepartmental programme. The curriculum is determined by the heads of department in the biological sciences and will include the research proposal development and scientific writing. This is followed by research in the area of the chosen specialization in Forest Science culminating in the preparation and submission of research dissertation: including submission of scientific papers for peer reviewed credited journals.



## Chemical and microbiological aspects of food 451 (FPP 451)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Third-year status or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Chemical aspects: The role and composition of the major chemical components of food (water, carbohydrates, proteins and lipids). The content and nutritional role of different minor chemical components of food (minerals and vitamins). The principles and control of enzymic and non-enzymic browning. The composition and use of enzymes in food processing. Microbiological aspects: Introduction to micro-organisms. Intrinsic and extrinsic factors that affect growth and survival of micro-organisms. Important microbial groups in food. Microbial spoilage of foods. Determination of micro-organisms and/or their products in foods. The preservation of foods. Microbial indicators of food safety and quality. Food borne diseases and intoxications. The utilisation of micro-organisms in food production.

## Advanced courses 801 (FPP 801)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	90.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Mini-dissertation 890 (FPP 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	150.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Financial accounting 111 (FRK 111)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00



**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Agribusiness Management
- BCom Business Management
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Economics
- BCom Financial Sciences
- BCom Human Resource Management
- BCom Informatics Information Systems
- BCom Investment Management
- BCom Law
- BCom Marketing Management
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BCom Supply Chain Management
- BConSci Clothing Retail Management
- BConSci Food Retail Management
- BConSci Hospitality Management
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BIT Information Systems
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences
- BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences
- BSc Mathematics
- BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management
- LLB

**Service modules**

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Law  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites**

No prerequisites.

**Contact time**

4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition**

Module is presented in English

**Department**

Accounting

**Period of presentation**

Semester 1

**Module content**

The nature and function of accounting; the development of accounting; financial position; financial result; the recording process; processing of accounting data; treatment of VAT; elementary income statement and balance sheet; flow of documents; accounting systems; introduction to internal control and internal control measures; bank reconciliations; control accounts; adjustments; financial statements of a sole proprietorship; the accounting framework.

**Financial accounting 121 (FRK 121)**

**Qualification**

Undergraduate

**Module credits**

12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BCom BCom Financial Sciences BCom Informatics Information Systems BCom Investment Management BCom Law BCom Statistics BCom Statistics and Data Science BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching BIT Information Systems BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</p>
<b>Service modules</b>	<p>Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences</p>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	FRK 111 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Accounting
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

**Module content**

Property, plant and equipment; intangible assets; inventories; liabilities; presentation of financial statements; enterprises without profit motive; partnerships; companies; close corporations; cash flow statements; analysis and interpretation of financial statements.

**Financial accounting 122 (FRK 122)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00

<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BCom BCom Agribusiness Management BCom Business Management BCom Econometrics BCom Economics BCom Human Resource Management BCom Informatics Information Systems BCom Law BCom Marketing Management BCom Statistics BCom Statistics and Data Science BCom Supply Chain Management BConSci Clothing Retail Management BConSci Food Retail Management BConSci Hospitality Management BIT Information Systems BSc Information and Knowledge Systems LLB</p>
-------------------	--



**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Law  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** FRK 111 GS or FRK 133, FRK 143

**Contact time** 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Accounting

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Budgeting, payroll accounting, taxation – income tax and an introduction to other types of taxes, credit and the new Credit Act, insurance, accounting for inventories (focus on inventory and the accounting entries, not calculations), interpretation of financial statements.

## Financial accounting 133 (FRK 133)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BCom Extended programme](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** Only available to the BCom Four-year programme

**Contact time** 3 tutorials per week, 4 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Accounting

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The nature and function of accounting; the development of accounting; financial position; financial performance; flow of documents; the recording process; processing of accounting data; treatment of VAT; elementary statement of comprehensive income (income statement) and statement of financial position (balance sheet).

## Financial accounting 143 (FRK 143)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BCom Extended programme](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** FRK 133; Only available to the BCom Four-year programme

**Contact time** 3 tutorials per week, 4 lectures per week, Foundation Course



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Accounting

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Accounting systems; introduction to internal control and internal control measures; bank reconciliations; control accounts; adjustments; preparing the financial statements of a sole proprietorship; the accounting framework.

## Physiology 110 (FSG 110)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

### Programmes

[BA Audiology](#)  
[BA Speech-Language Pathology](#)  
[BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSportSci](#)

### Service modules

Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Introduction (terminology and anatomical orientation); chemical principles; cytology and histology; neuro-physiology and the senses; haematology and body fluids; cardiovascular system.

## Physiology 120 (FSG 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

### Programmes

[BA Audiology](#)  
[BA Speech-Language Pathology](#)  
[BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSportSci](#)

### Service modules

Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences





<b>Prerequisites</b>	FSG 110
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Respiratory system; nutrition; digestion and metabolism; kidneys and acid-base equilibrium; endocrinology; reproduction physiology and reproduction; skin and body temperatures.

### Physics 116 (FSK 116)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes**  
BEng Chemical Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Industrial Engineering  
BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mechanical Engineering  
BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Introductory mathematics: Symbols, exponents, logarithms, angles in degrees, radial measure, goniometry, differentiation, and integration. Motion along a straight line: position and displacement, acceleration. Vectors: adding vectors, components, multiplying vectors. Motion in two and three dimensions: projectile motion, circular motion. Force and motion: Newton's Law, force, friction. Kinetic energy and work: work, power. Potential energy: Centre of mass, linear momentum. Collisions: impulse and linear momentum, elastic collisions, inelastic collisions. Rotation: kinetic energy of rotation, torque. Oscillations and waves: Simple harmonic motion, types of waves, wavelength and frequency, interference of waves, standing waves, the Doppler effect. Temperature, heat and the first law of thermodynamics.

### Physics 176 (FSK 176)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE BEng Civil Engineering BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE BEng Electrical Engineering BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE BEng Electronic Engineering BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE BEng Metallurgical Engineering BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE BEng Mining Engineering BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Introductory mathematics: Symbols, exponents, logarithms, angles in degrees, radial measure, goniometry, differentiation, and integration. Motion along a straight line: position and displacement, acceleration. Vectors: adding vectors, components, multiplying vectors. Motion in two and three dimensions: projectile motion, circular motion. Force and motion: Newton's Law, force, friction. Kinetic energy and work: work, power. Potential energy: Centre of mass, linear momentum. Collisions: impulse and linear momentum, elastic collisions, inelastic collisions. Rotation: kinetic energy of rotation, torque. Oscillations and waves: Simple harmonic motion, types of waves, wavelength and frequency, interference of waves, standing waves, the Doppler effect. Temperature, heat and the first law of thermodynamics.

### Physics 700 (FSK 700)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	135.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BScHons Physics
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 other contact session per week, 1 seminar per week, 10 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year



## Module content

The course content is determined by the Head of the Department of Physics. In addition to the usual subjects, viz. classical mechanics, quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, electrodynamics, solid state physics, experiments or modelling, and a mini-research project, there are also elective subjects.

### Mathematical methods 710 (FSK 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medical Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 6 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Series; complex analysis; Bessel and other special functions; integral transforms; Green functions

### Classical dynamics 711 (FSK 711)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medical Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 6 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Advanced problems in classical dynamics; Hamilton formalism; canonical transformations; continuum mechanics

### Quantum mechanics (I) 713 (FSK 713)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medical Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 lectures per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Measurement process, General indefinite relations, Harmonic oscillator, symmetry, invariants and conservation laws, angular momentum, spin, perturbation theory, Schrödinger-Heisenberg and interaction pictures

## Electrodynamics (I) 714 (FSK 714)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Medical Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Poisson equation, Green functions, Maxwell equations.

## Nuclear physics 727 (FSK 727)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Collective model, shell model, approximate nuclear structure methods, for example Hartree-Fock, random phase approximation, Tamm-Dankoff reaction theory and optical model

## Physics 800 (FSK 800)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 1.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 6 lectures per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Physics 808 (FSK 808)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 36.00

**Programmes** [MMed Anaesthesiology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Dissertation: Physics 890 (FSK 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Physics 990 (FSK 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Introduction to food science and technology 250 (FST 250)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biotechnology BSc Food Science BSc Microbiology BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management
<b>Prerequisites</b>	CMY 117 and CMY 127 and PHY 131 and WTW 134 or WTW 165 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Lectures: Food Science as a discipline. Activities of Food Scientists and Nutritionists. How food is produced, processed and distributed (food pipeline). World food problem. Human nutrition and human food requirements. Constituents of foods: Functional properties. Food quality. Food deterioration and control (food preservation). Unit operations in food processing. Food safety, risks and hazards. Principles of food packaging. Food legislation and labelling. Food processing and the environment. The aforementioned lectures focus on the role of Food Science in addressing the UN Sustainable Development Goals (#1, 2, 3, 6 and 7). Practicals: Group assignments applying the theory in practice; practical demonstrations in pilot plants; guest lecturers on the world of food scientists and nutritionists; factory visit/videos of food processing.

## Principles of food processing and preservation 260 (FST 260)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Culinary Science BSc Food Science BSc Microbiology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	CMY 117, CMY 127, MBY 161, PHY 131 and WTW 134 or WTW 165 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 and Semester 2

### Module content

Lectures: Food preservation technologies: concept of hurdle technology; heat (blanching, pasteurisation and sterilisation); cold (refrigeration and freezing); concentration and dehydration; food irradiation; fermentation; preservatives; new methods of food preservation. Effect of various food preservation technologies on the microbiological (shelf-life and safety issues), sensory and nutritional quality of foods. Practicals: Practical applications of above processes. Physical, chemical and sensory evaluation of processed foods. Assignment: Application of hurdle technology concept to a specific food product.



## Integrated food science 350 (FST 350)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Second-year status, FST 250 and FST 260 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Literature studies and seminar presentations on topics in food science, nutrition and health. The proposed seminar topics cover aspects of food science, nutrition and health that are of relevance in addressing the UN Sustainable Development Goals (#1, 2, 3, 6 and 7).

## Food chemistry 351 (FST 351)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Culinary Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Food Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Nutrition</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	BCM 251 and BCM 252 and BCM 261 and BCM 262 or permission of the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Lectures - Chemistry of major food components: Carbohydrates. Proteins. Lipids. Water. Chemical and nutritional aspects of food processing: implications of different processing techniques on the major food components. Functional properties of the major food components. Modification of functional properties of the major food components. Food analysis methodology. Practical work: Food analysis.

## Food chemistry (2) 352 (FST 352)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Culinary Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Food Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Nutrition</a>



<b>Prerequisites</b>	BCM 251 and BCM 252 and BCM 261 and BCM 262 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Lectures - Basic food analysis and chemistry of the minor food components: Basic food analysis, vitamins, minerals, additives, contaminants. Chemical and nutritional aspects of food processing: implications of different processing techniques on minor food components. Functional properties of the minor food components. Food analysis methodology. Practical work: Food analysis.

## Food engineering 353 (FST 353)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	FST 260 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Lectures: Mass and energy balance. Heat transfer theory: Convection, conduction and radiation. Energy for food processing. Fluid flow and rheology. Unit operations: materials handling, cleaning, sorting, grading, peeling, disintegration, separation (e.g. membrane technology), pumping, mixing and forming, heating, concentration, drying, extrusion, refrigeration, freezing. Tutorials/practicals: Calculations on mass and energy balances, psychrometry, refrigeration and freezing. The principles of food engineering, particularly mass and energy balance are applied to provide relevance in addressing the UN Sustainable Development Goals (#3 and 7).

## Chemistry of food macro- and micronutrients 355 (FST 355)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	BCM 251 and BCM 252 and BCM 261 and BCM 262 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2





### Module content

Chemistry of food macro-nutrients: simple sugars, starch- and non-starch polysaccharides (including dietary fibre components), animal and plant proteins (including their indispensable amino acid composition), and lipids (including essential fatty acids, saturated and unsaturated fatty acids and trans fatty acids). Chemistry of food micro-nutrients: water-soluble vitamins (Vitamins B1, B2, niacin, B6, B12, folic acid, biotin and pantothenic acid, Vitamin C) and lipid-soluble vitamins (Vitamins A, D, E and K), bulk minerals and trace minerals.

Practical work: Principles and practice of food proximate analysis.

## Principles of the science and technology of plant food 360 (FST 360)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	FST 250, FST 260, FST 351 and FST 352 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Cereal and legume grains, oilseeds and fruits and vegetables: Composition and structure. Quality assessment and grading. Post-harvest storage and physiology. Cleaning and sorting principles and technologies. Milling – principles and technologies, and their effects on product functionality and nutrient composition. Juice and oil extraction – principles and technologies, and their effects on product functionality and nutrient composition. Bread and baked goods making – principles and technologies, and their effects on product functionality and nutrient composition. Practical work: Laboratory analyses of components and products of cereals, oilseeds, legumes and fruits and vegetables; Determination of quality; Factory visits.

## Animal food science 361 (FST 361)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	FST 250, FST 260, FST 351 and FST 352 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

Dairy science: Composition of milk; some physical properties of milk; factors affecting composition of milk; microbiological aspects of milk production; lactation; mechanical milking; milk defects; nutritive value of milk and milk products. Practical work: Chemical and microbiological tests of milk. Demonstration of the cheese-making process. Meat, poultry, fish and egg science: The composition, nutritional value and quality of meat, poultry, fish and eggs; factors affecting quality from slaughter or harvesting to consumption. Practical work: Visits to red meat and poultry abattoirs; quality determinations, egg quality and protein functionality.

## Advanced animal and plant foods microbiology 362 (FST 362)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Food Science](#)  
[BSc Microbiology](#)

**Prerequisites** FST 260, MBY 251, MBY 261, MBY 262

**Contact time** 180 minute practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

With an integrated focus on animal and plant food commodities, this module considers food properties and processing operations that impact on the growth, survival and biochemical activity of microorganisms as they relate to spoilage, safety and fermentation. Temperature effects on microbial growth and survival including thermal destruction and cell and spore injury. Microbial stress response (adaptation) during processing. Selection for stress resistant and more virulent pathogenic variants and virulence mechanisms (toxin structure/function) of food-borne pathogens during food processing. Theory and practice of new advances in microbial detection and identification methods. Tools for the production of safe foods including food safety objectives (FSOs) and risk analysis. Practicals will include advanced microbial detection and identification methods applied to animal and plant foods as well as the food supply chain.

## Research methodology and seminar 400 (FST 400)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BSc Nutrition](#)

**Prerequisites** Third-year status or permission from the HOD.

**Contact time** 1 day seminar in semester 2, 1 workshop of 5 days in semester 1

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

Lectures and assignments: Research methodology. Literature study and seminar presentations on topics in food science and/or technology. The student must also pass an oral examination at the end of the module.

## Animal food technology 401 (FST 401)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Prerequisites** FST 361 or permission from the HOD.

**Contact time** 30 discussion classes, 9 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Dairy technology: The technology of fluid, concentrated, dried, frozen and fermented dairy products and starter cultures. Requirements for milk supply and other ingredients. Principles for the manufacturing of products in this category. Possible defects, causes and prevention. Practical work: Preparation of condensed milk, custard, ready-to-eat milk-based desserts, flavoured milk beverages, dairy-fruit juice mixtures; ice cream and other frozen desserts; yoghurt and cultured milk products; cheeses. Evaluation and analysis of the products. Effect of processing on nutritional value of dairy products. Factory visits. Meat, poultry, fish and egg technology: Meat, poultry, fish and egg processing and equipment. Meat emulsion, curing, dehydration and fermentation technology. Preservation and storage. Packaging. Legislation. Quality control and hygiene. Effect of processing on nutritional value of meat products. Practical work: Manufacturing of dried, cured, fermented and emulsion type products. Visits to processing factories.

## Advanced plant food science and technology 402 (FST 402)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Prerequisites** FST 360 or permission from the HOD.

**Contact time** 3 practicals S2, 5 discussion classes in semester 2, 5 practicals S1, 8 discussion classes in semester 1

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

Plant food functionality: Starch, non-starch polysaccharides, protein. Advanced rheology and texture. Malting and brewing. Ready-to-eat (RTE) technologies and their impact on functional and nutritional quality. Plant oil processing. Minimal processing of fruits and vegetables. Practical work: Pasting properties of starch; Dough rheology; Isolation of legume and cereal proteins; SDS-PAGE electrophoreses of legume and cereal proteins; Malting and mashing of sorghum and barley malt; Extraction of essential oils; Extraction and identification of phenolic compounds; Minimal processing of fruits and vegetables.

## Sensory evaluation 412 (FST 412)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)

**Prerequisites** FST 260, FST 351 and FST 352 or permission from the HOD.

**Contact time** 12 discussion classes, 6 practicals per semester

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Principles and applications of sensory evaluation. Types of panels, tests and test conditions and their functions. Selection and training of panellists for descriptive sensory evaluation. Instrumental sensory quality measurements. Statistical analysis and interpretation of data. Practical: Practical aspects and execution of sensory evaluation techniques, analysis and interpretation of data. Instrumental sensory quality measurements.

## Product development and quality management 413 (FST 413)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Prerequisites** FST 260 or permission from the HOD and FST 351 and FST 352

**Contact time** 15 discussion classes, 6 practicals per semester

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Lectures: Principles involved and steps that are followed to develop new food products that are safe, tasty, nutritious and cost effective. Application of the theory of food product development. Quality management systems with specific reference to Good Manufacturing Practices, HACCP and ISO 9000. National and international standards, Codex Alimentarius, FDA. Application of food legislation. Food Packaging. Practical: A product development project will be planned, conducted and presented. Application and implementation of HACCP.



### Advanced food science 420 (FST 420)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Third-year status or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	12 discussion classes
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

Discussion classes in advanced level food chemistry, food microbiology, food engineering, food processing and nutrition. Problem solving and literature discussion.

### Research project 463 (FST 463)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	40.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Third-year status in Food Science or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

Planning, execution and reporting of a research project on a selected Food Science and/or Technology subject.

### Research methodology and seminars 700 (FST 700)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 day seminar in semester 2, 1 workshop of 5 days in semester 1
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

Lectures and assignments: Research methodology. Literature study and seminar presentations on topics in Food Science and/or Technology. The candidate must also pass an oral examination at the end of the module.



## Animal food technologies 701 (FST 701)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	30 discussion classes, 9 practicals
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Dairy technology: The technology of fluid, concentrated, dried, frozen and fermented dairy products and starter cultures. Requirements for milk supply and other ingredients. Principles for the manufacturing of products in this category. Possible defects, causes and prevention.

Practical work: Preparation of condensed milk, custard, ready-to-eat milk-based desserts, flavoured milk beverages, dairy-fruit juice mixtures; ice cream and other frozen desserts; yoghurt and cultured milk products; cheeses. Evaluation and analysis of the products. Effect of processing on the nutritional value of dairy products. Factory visits.

Meat, poultry, fish and egg technology: Meat, poultry, fish and egg processing and equipment. Meat emulsion, curing, dehydration and fermentation technology. Preservation and storage. Packaging. Legislation. Quality control and hygiene. Effect of processing on the nutritional value of meat products.

Practical work: Manufacturing of dried, cured, fermented and emulsion type products. Visits to processing factories.

## Advanced plant food science and technologies 702 (FST 702)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 practicals S2, 5 discussion classes in semester 2, 5 practicals S1, 8 discussion classes in semester 1
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year



## Module content

Plant food functionality: Starch, non-starch polysaccharides, protein. Advanced rheology and texture. Malting and brewing. Ready-to-eat (RTE) technologies and their impact on functional and nutritional quality. Plant oil processing. Minimal processing of fruits and vegetables. Practical work: Pasting properties of starch; Dough rheology; Isolation of legume and cereal proteins; SDS-PAGE electrophoreses of legume and cereal proteins; Malting and mashing of sorghum and barley male; Extraction of essential oils; Extraction and identification of phenolic compounds; Minimal processing of fruit and vegetables.

## Sensory evaluation 712 (FST 712)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Food Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 12 discussion classes, 6 practicals per semester

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Lectures: principles and applications of sensory evaluation. Types of panels, tests and test conditions and their functions. Selection and training of panellists for descriptive sensory evaluation. Instrumental sensory quality measurements. Statistical analysis and interpretation of data.

Practicals: Practical aspects and execution of sensory evaluation techniques, analysis and interpretation of data. Instrumental sensory quality measurements.

## Production development and quality management 713 (FST 713)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 25.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Food Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 15 discussion classes, 6 practicals per semester

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Lectures: principles involved and steps that are followed to develop new food products that are safe, tasty, nutritious and cost effective. Application of the theory of food product development. Quality management systems with specific reference to Good Manufacturing Practices, HACCP and ISO 9000. National and international standards, Codex Alimentarius, FDA. Application of food legislation. Food packaging. Practicals: A product development project will be planned, conducted and presented. Application and implementation of HACCP.

## Advanced food science 720 (FST 720)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	12 discussion classes
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

Discussion classes in advanced level food chemistry, food microbiology, food engineering, food processing and nutrition. Problem solving and literature discussion.

## Research project 763 (FST 763)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	40.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

A short research project on an approved topic in food science and/or technology is planned, executed and presented in the form of a written report.

## Dissertation: Food science 890 (FST 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Food Science</a>





<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

Each candidate must write a dissertation on his/her research project in Food science and/or Food technology and at least a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

### Thesis: Food science 990 (FST 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Advanced environmental soil chemistry 771 (GDK 771)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

Advanced theoretical and experimental soil chemistry, including the organic fraction.

### Advanced environmental soil physics 772 (GDK 772)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Advanced theoretical soil physics with the emphasis on mathematical modelling of fluxes of water, heat and solutes.

## Plant nutrition, soil biology and soil fertility 773 (GDK 773)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgricHons Crop Science](#)  
[BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Study of the latest trends and developments in plant nutrition, soil biology and soil fertility.

## Research project in environmental soil science 775 (GDK 775)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Research project on a practical aspect of Environmental Soil Science. Literature review, formulation of a problem statement, hypotheses and aims of the research, as well as the design and execution of a laboratory or field scale trial. Project to be written up in a specific scientific format suitable for publication with an oral and visual presentation on the research.

## Advanced coursework 801 (GDK 801)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 120.00



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

Any module and/or assignment(s) at the advanced level chosen in consultation with the head of department.

### Dissertation: Soil science 890 (GDK 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Soil Science</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Soil Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

This module involves the development, presentation and approval of a research proposal, the execution of the research project, and the writing up and presentation of the research results. In addition to the dissertation, the student is also expected to compile a concept research paper for publication

### Dissertation: Soil science 891 (GDK 891)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	120.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

Each candidate must write a dissertation on his/her research project in Land-Use planning and at least prepare a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

### Thesis: Soil science 990 (GDK 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00



---

<b>Programmes</b>	PhD Soil Science
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

This module involves the development, presentation and approval of a research proposal, the execution of the research project, and the writing up and presenting of the research results. In addition to the thesis, the student is also expected to publish at least one research paper in a peer-reviewed, UP accredited scientific journal. An oral examination covering Soil Science and other fields related to the thesis will be conducted after the thesis has been accepted by examiners. A candidate needs to pass both the written thesis and oral examination to qualify for the degree.

### Dissertation: Geography 890 (GGF 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	MA Geography MSc Geography
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Geography 990 (GGF 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	PhD Geography
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Aspects of human geography 156 (GGY 156)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00



**Programmes**

BA  
BA Extended programme  
BA Languages  
BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BIT Information Systems  
BPolSci International Studies  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Meteorology  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism

**Service modules**

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites**

No prerequisites.

**Contact time**

1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition**

Module is presented in English

**Department**

Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation**

Quarter 2

**Module content**

This module begins by fostering an understanding of human geography. Then follows with the political ordering of space; cultural diversity as well as ethnic geography globally and locally; population geography of the world and South Africa: and four economic levels of development. The purpose is to place South Africa in a world setting and to understand the future of the country.

**Southern African geomorphology 166 (GGY 166)**

**Qualification**

Undergraduate

**Module credits**

8.00



<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BA BA Extended programme BA Languages BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching BPolSci International Studies BSc Chemistry BSc Computer Science BSc Environmental Sciences BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences BSc Geography BSc Geoinformatics BSc Information and Knowledge Systems BSc Meteorology BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism</p>
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	<p>Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Health Sciences</p>
------------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
----------------------	-------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
-------------------	--

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 3
-------------------------------	-----------

**Module content**

Investigating southern African landscapes and placing them in a theoretical and global context. The geomorphological evolution of southern Africa. Introduction to the concepts of Geomorphology and its relationships with other physical sciences (e.g. meteorology, climatology, geology, hydrology and biology). The processes and controls of landform and landscape evolution. Tutorial exercises cover basic techniques of geomorphological analysis, and topical issues in Geomorphology.

**City, structure, environment and society 201 (GGY 201)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BA BA Languages BPolSci International Studies BSc Chemistry BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology BSc Environmental Sciences BSc Geography BSc Meteorology BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism</p>
-------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	GGY 156
----------------------	---------



**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

### Module content

The module introduces students to urban settlement patterns, processes and structures. Using a series of case studies, it aims to develop an understanding of the challenges facing urban areas both in South Africa and globally.

## Process geomorphology 252 (GGY 252)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BA  
BA Languages  
BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BPolSci International Studies  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Geography  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism

**Service modules** Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Humanities

**Prerequisites** GGY 166 or GLY 155

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 2

### Module content

Physical processes that influence the earth's surface and management. Specific processes and their interaction in themes such as weathering; soil erosion; slope, mass movement and periglacial processes. Practical laboratory exercises and assignments are based on the themes covered in the module theory component.

## Geomorphology of the built environment 265 (GGY 265)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Architecture BSc Landscape Architecture BSc Physics
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 3

### Module content

\*This module is for Architecture and Landscape Architecture students only.

The theory component covers geomorphological aspects of the built environment including landscape identification; weathering or deterioration of natural stone and application to design and preservation of buildings and monuments; slope hydrology and stability conditions; soil erosion processes and construction impacts; drainage modification in urban areas; wetland identification, human impacts and rehabilitation; recreational impacts and management. In addition to the theory a field-based project is undertaken.

### Introductory geographic information systems 283 (GGY 283)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	14.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BIT Information Systems BSc Chemistry BSc Environmental Sciences BSc Geography BSc Geoinformatics BSc Geology BSc Information and Knowledge Systems BSc Meteorology
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Humanities
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GMC 110
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1





## Module content

Introduction to Geographic Information Systems (GIS), theoretical concepts and applications of GIS. The focus will be on the GIS process of data input, data analysis, data output and associated technologies. This module provides the foundations for more advanced GIS and Geoinformatics topics. Practical assessments and a mini-project make use of South African and African examples and foster learning and application of concepts aligned to the UN Sustainable Development Goals.

## Theories and applications of human geography 301 (GGY 301)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BA  
BPolSci International Studies  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Geography  
BSc Meteorology  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism

**Prerequisites** GGY 266

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

## Module content

Classic economic development theories and frameworks. Spatial development history and legacy in South Africa. Rural and agricultural reconstruction. Land reform. Urban development and strategy. Urban spatial reconstruction. National spatial development frameworks. Integration of environmental, economic, and social components of sustainable development, including challenges, actors and actions in sustainable development.

## Environmental geomorphology 361 (GGY 361)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Chemistry  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Geography

**Service modules** Faculty of Humanities

**Prerequisites** GGY 252 and only for students studying BSc (Geography) or BSc (Environmental Sciences).

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology



**Period of presentation** Quarter 4

### Module content

\*Note: The module is available for BSc (Geography) and BSc (Environmental Sciences) students only. The theory content of this module is the same as GGY 363 and students are not allowed to earn credits for both GGY 361 and GGY 363.

Interactions of geomorphic processes within the physical and built environments; themes such as geomorphology and environmental change, slope processes and the environment, geomorphic risks and hazards, soil erosion and conservation, geomorphology in environmental management, applied weathering. Practicals involve fieldwork including sampling and mapping and subsequent laboratory analysis.

## Applied geomorphology 363 (GGY 363)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BA](#)  
[BPolSci International Studies](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** GGY 252

**Contact time** 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 4

### Module content

\*Note: The content of this module is the same as GGY 361 and students are not allowed to earn credits for both GGY 361 and GGY 363.

Interactions of geomorphic processes within the physical and built environments; themes such as geomorphology and environmental change, slope processes and the environment, geomorphic risks and hazards, soil erosion and conservation, geomorphology in environmental management, applied weathering.

## Selected theme 701 (GGY 701)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)  
[BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 web-based period per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

A self-study module on an aspect or aspects of geographical or environmental science selected in consultation with the head of the department from: (a) themes not covered in existing options; or (b) educational subjects.

## Research project 702 (GGY 702)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 35.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)  
[BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

An approved individual research project, carried out under the guidance of a lecturer. The project culminates in a research report in the format of a research paper and presentation. The student is expected to obtain the respective skills (theoretical and practical research techniques, data analysis, communication and computer skills) necessary for the research topic.

## Geographical and environmental principles 710 (GGY 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 25.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)  
[BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The module provides a critical review of the structures and paradigms in which the geographical and environmental sciences are practised. Particular reference is made to the development and impact of paradigms and the interdependence of systems within space and time.

## Applied geomorphology 718 (GGY 718)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Geography and Environmental Science</a> <a href="#">BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

This module focuses on processes and applications of geomorphology. Topics that may be studied include: soil erosion and conservation, weathering, geomorphic response to environmental change, slope processes and geomorphological hazards. The module includes practical fieldwork and field assessments.

## Urban geography 780 (GGY 780)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Geography and Environmental Science</a> <a href="#">BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

The main themes of the module include: overview of global urbanisation theories and processes; urban morphology and change; the administrative structure and functions of African cities and; the quality of urban life in the developing world.

## Environmental change 789 (GGY 789)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Environmental Health</a> <a href="#">BScHons Geography and Environmental Science</a> <a href="#">BScHons Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Health Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.



**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 2 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Study themes include past environmental change, causes and consequences of human-induced environmental change and South Africa and climate change.

## Aspects of land reform and the environment 793 (GGY 793)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)  
[BScHons Geoinformatics](#)  
[BSocSciHons Geographical Sciences Geography and Environmental Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

The module aims to provide students with an understanding and knowledge of contemporary land reform issues against the background of international land reform experiences. The module also touches on other rural development strategies and ultimately aims to enhance the student's ability to conceptualise and analyse policy in the context of broader environmental issues.

## Geographic data analysis 220 (GIS 220)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes** [BIT Information Systems](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Environmental Sciences](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)  
[BSc Information and Knowledge Systems](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** GMC 110 and (STK 110 OR BME 120)



**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The nature of geographical data and measurement. Application of statistics in the geographical domain. Probability, probability distributions and densities, expected values and variances, Central Limit theorem. Sampling techniques. Exploratory data analysis, descriptive statistics, statistical estimation, hypothesis testing, correlation analysis and regression analysis. Examples used throughout the course are drawn from South African and African case studies and taught within the framework of the UN Sustainable Development Goals.

## Geographic information systems introduction 221 (GIS 221)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BA  
BA Languages  
BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BPolSci International Studies  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism

**Prerequisites** Prohibited combination GGY 283

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*GIS 221 does not lead to admission to any module at 300 level.

Introduction to Geographic Information Systems (GIS), theoretical concepts and applications of GIS. The focus will be on the GIS process of data input, data analysis, data output and associated technologies. This module teaches students to use GIS as a tool. Examples used throughout the course are drawn from South African case studies.

## Geographic information systems 310 (GIS 310)



<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	22.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BIT Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BSc Chemistry</a> <a href="#">BSc Environmental Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSc Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Information and Knowledge Systems</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GGY 283
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Advanced theory and practice of Geographic Information Systems; GIS applications; design and implementation of GIS applications. A project or assignments of at least 64 notional hours. Diverse South African examples will be used to expose the students to various data sources, geospatial analyses, and data representation to support the UN Sustainable Development Goals.

### Geoinformatics 311 (GIS 311)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	22.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	(GGY 283 and INF 164 and INF 261) or (GGY 283 and WKD 254) For BSc (Geoinformatics) and BSc (Meteorology) students only.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Advanced geoinformatics topics in geovisualisation and geocomputation. A project or assignments of at least 64 notional hours. The topics will be discussed using various local and international examples with the project focusing on at least one of the UN Sustainable Development Goals.

### Spatial analysis 320 (GIS 320)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------



**Module credits** 22.00

**Programmes** [BIT Information Systems](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Environmental Sciences](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Information and Knowledge Systems](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** GIS 220 and GGY 283

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Construction of Raster Geovisualisations, spatial model construction and use, multi-criteria decision analysis. Factor analysis: Principle component analysis. Geostatistics: Spatial dependence modelling, ordinary kriging. Markov chains and cellular Automata, combined models. Examples using data from South Africa are implemented. A project or assignment of at least 64 notional hours.

### Research methods 701 (GIS 701)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geoinformatics](#)

**Contact time** 14 contact hours

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1

#### Module content

The module introduces students to planning, research design, scientific reading, writing and presentation as required for geoinformatics research.

### Research project 702 (GIS 702)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 35.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geoinformatics](#)

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English





**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

An approved individual Geoinformatics research project with a system design and/or spatial analysis component. The project is carried out under the guidance of a lecturer. The student is expected to obtain the respective skills necessary for the research topic. Compilation of a research proposal. Literature survey. Selecting an appropriate research method. Carrying out of the research. Preparation of a research report.

## Spatial statistics and geodesy 704 (GIS 704)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geoinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** GMC 310 and GIS 320 or equivalent

**Contact time** 28 contact hours per semester

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Principles of least squares in statistics, Spatial least squares regression, Surface interpolation using least squares and coordinate transformations. Topics in Geodesy: Space based measurement systems, sea level measurements, Determination of the geoid, earth axis orientation determination and earth dynamics.

## Advanced geospatial data 705 (GIS 705)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geoinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** GIS 310 or equivalent

**Contact time** 28 contact hours per semester

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Advanced topics in geospatial data management, such as data quality, data acquisition and management, standards, spatial data infrastructure (SDI) and legislation.

## Special topics 707 (GIS 707)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Geoinformatics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	28 contact hours per semester
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

A special topic in Geoinformatics linked to research specialisation in the department and/or visiting lecturers. For example, research trends and advances in a specific topic or field of specialisation in Geoinformatics. The module is presented in the form of guided advanced readings, seminars and/or discussion sessions.

## Advanced GIS 708 (GIS 708)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Geoinformatics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Advanced topics in GIS application, such as principal component analysis, multi-criteria evaluation and other geospatial analysis methods, and their application relating to the UN Sustainable Development Goals.

## Geospatial data and services 709 (GIS 709)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Geoinformatics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	(INF 164, INF 214, GIS 311) or equivalent.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2



## Module content

Advanced topics in spatial databases, such as computational geometry, spatial data indexing and query processing, and using the web and mobile technologies for accessing, delivering and presenting geospatial data and services.

### Introduction to GIS 800 (GIS 800)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Applied Geoinformatics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 28 contact hours

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Introduction to geographic information systems (GIS), theoretical concepts and applications of GIS.

### Advanced GIS 801 (GIS 801)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Applied Geoinformatics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** GIS 800

**Contact time** 28 contact hours

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Advanced theory and application of geographic information systems (GIS), including spatial analysis, design and implementation of GIS.

### Introduction to remote sensing 802 (GIS 802)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Applied Geoinformatics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 28 contact hours



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Introduction to the scientific principles involved in remote sensing, and its applications for studying the Earth's surface.

## Advanced remote sensing 803 (GIS 803)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Applied Geoinformatics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** GIS 802

**Contact time** 28 contact hours

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Advanced theory and practice in methods and techniques for collecting, processing and analysing remotely sensed data.

## Introduction to geospatial programming and databases 804 (GIS 804)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Applied Geoinformatics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 28 contact hours

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Introduction to programming specifically for applications with geospatial information. Introduction to database management systems with application to geospatial information.

## Advanced geospatial programming and databases 805 (GIS 805)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00



**Programmes** [MSc Applied Geoinformatics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** GIS 804

**Contact time** 28 contact hours

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Programming specifically for applications with geospatial information, including scripting, web services and smartphone app development. Database management systems with application to geospatial information, e.g. object-relational databases, array databases, graph databases and NoSQL databases.

### Special topics in geoinformatics 806 (GIS 806)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Applied Geoinformatics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 28 contact hours

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

A special topic in geoinformatics linked to research specialisation in the department and/or visiting lecturers.

### Dissertation: Geoinformatics 890 (GIS 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Geoinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Mini-dissertation: Applied Geoinformatics 891 (GIS 891)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 90.00

**Programmes** [MSc Applied Geoinformatics \(Coursework\)](#)



**Prerequisites** Completion of the coursework for the programme.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

An approved individual research project carried out under the guidance of a supervisor. Compilation of a research proposal. Literature survey. Selecting an appropriate research method. Carrying out of the research. Analysis and interpretation of the research results. Preparation of a mini-dissertation and a draft journal article.

## Thesis: Geoinformatics 990 (GIS 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Geoinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Introductory soil science 250 (GKD 250)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BSc Biotechnology](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Ecology](#)  
[BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Environmental Sciences](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Landscape Architecture](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSc Plant Science](#)  
[BSc Zoology](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Animal Science](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** CMY 117 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Origin and development of soil, weathering and soil formation processes. Profile differentiation and morphology. Physical characteristics: texture, structure, soil water, atmosphere and temperature. Chemical characteristics: clay minerals, ion exchange, pH, buffer action, soil acidification and salinisation of soil. Soil fertility and fertilisation. Soil classification. Practical work: Laboratory evaluation of simple soil characteristics. Field practicals on soil formation in the Pretoria area.

## Soil chemistry 320 (GKD 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes**  
[BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** GKD 250

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The more exact chemistry of soils systematically explained by understanding the particular chemical principles. Charge origin. Chemical equilibria. Manifestations of sorption. Ion exchange. Acidic soils, saline soils and the organic fraction of soil. The chemistry of the important plant nutrient elements P, K and N is explained.

## Soil classification and surveying 350 (GKD 350)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes**  
[BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Environmental Sciences](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** GKD 250 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences



**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

A taxonomic system for South Africa. USDA's Soil Taxonomy. Land suitability evaluation. Optimal resource utilization. The conservation component. Ecological aspects. Ecotype, land types. Soil maps. Practical work: Field practicals and compulsory excursion. Identification of soil horizons, forms and families. Land suitability evaluation. Elementary mapping exercise.

## Soil fertility, soil microbiology and plant nutrition 420 (GKD 420)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** GKD 250 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Soil ultimately controls nutrient supply to plants and organisms. The health and resilience of biota are therefore closely linked to the interaction between the pedosphere and the biosphere. This course deals with the availability and uptake of macro and micro nutrients in the plant - microbial- soil system, nutrient deficiencies and toxicities, as well as soil properties and soil environmental conditions that influence soil fertility and its suitability to act as a growth medium. Practical work includes the laboratory evaluation of soil fertility and greenhouse pot trials to investigate nutrient uptake as well as deficiencies and toxicities symptoms in plants.

## Mini-dissertation 881 (GLG 881)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 120.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

A dissertation on a topic approved by the course leader. In this module the candidate must do a research project in order to show that they have mastered the theoretical knowledge covered in the theoretical modules and can apply it to a research topic from their own industrial experience.

## Dissertation: Geology 890 (GLG 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate





<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Geology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Geology 990 (GLG 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Geology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Introduction to geology 155 (GLY 155)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Computer Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	A candidate must have passed Mathematics with at least 60% in the Grade 12 examination.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Solar system; structure of solid matter; minerals and rocks; introduction to symmetry and crystallography; important minerals and solid solutions; rock cycle; classification of rocks. External geological processes (gravity, water, wind, sea, ice) and their products (including geomorphology). Internal structure of the earth. The dynamic earth – volcanism, earthquakes, mountain building – the theory of plate tectonics. Geological processes (magmatism, metamorphism, sedimentology, structural geology) in a plate tectonic context. Geological maps and mineral and rock specimens. Interaction between man and the environment, and nature of anthropogenic climate change.

## Earth history 163 (GLY 163)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes**  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geology  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Prerequisites** GLY 155

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

This module will give an overview of earth history, from the Archaean to the present. Important concepts such as the principles of stratigraphy and stratigraphic nomenclature, geological dating and international and South African time scales will be introduced. A brief introduction to the principles of palaeontology will be given, along with short descriptions of major fossil groups, fossil forms, ecology and geological meaning. In the South African context, the major stratigraphic units, intrusions and tectonic/metamorphic events will be detailed, along with related rock types, fossil contents, genesis and economic commodities. Anthropogenic effects on the environment and their mitigation. Practical work will focus on the interpretation of geological maps and profiles.

## Sedimentology 253 (GLY 253)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes**  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Geology  
BSc Physics

**Prerequisites** CMY 117, CMY 127, GLY 155, GLY 163, WTW 114/WTW 158 and PHY 114



**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 2

### Module content

Introduction to sedimentology; grain studies; composition and textures of sedimentary rocks; flow dynamics and behaviour of sediment particles in transport systems; description and genesis of sedimentary structures; diagenesis; depositional environments and their deposits, modern and ancient; chemical sedimentary rocks; economic sedimentology; field data acquisition from sedimentary rocks and writing of reports; sieve analysis; Markov analysis; analysis of palaeocurrent trends; interpretation of sedimentary profiles.

## Fundamental and applied mineralogy 255 (GLY 255)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** CMY 117, CMY 127, GLY 155, GLY 163, WTW 158 and PHY 114

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1

### Module content

Fundamental concepts in mineralogy, and practical applications of mineralogy, including: the basics of crystal structure; the crystallographic groups; the rules of atomic substitution; phase transitions and phase diagrams; the structure and uses of olivine, pyroxene, feldspar, amphibole, mica, aluminosilicates, garnet, cordierite, and more uncommon mineral groups such as oxides, sulphides and carbonates; the calculation of mineral formulae from chemical analyses using various methods. Practical sessions: the basics of optical mineralogy and the use of transmitted light microscopy for thin section examination of minerals and rocks; the practicals will develop mineral identification skills for the minerals covered in the lectures, and cover basic textural identification.

## Geology for engineering 256 (GLY 256)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

[BEng Civil Engineering](#)  
[BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE](#)  
[BEng Mining Engineering](#)  
[BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE](#)



<b>Prerequisites</b>	Only for BEng Mining Engineering and BEng Civil Engineering students.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

This module is given to Mining and Civil Engineering students, focused on the practical application of basic geological principles to engineering problems. The course covers basic rock identification, principles of stratigraphy and landscape formation, and engineering applications of geology such as mining, slope stability, and civil applications. Practicals cover geological maps and profiles, as well as basic rock identification.

## Igneous petrology 261 (GLY 261)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GLY 255
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 3

### Module content

Classification and nomenclature of igneous rocks. The nature of silicate melts; physical and chemical factors influencing crystallisation and textures of igneous rocks. Phase diagrams, fractional crystallisation and partial melting. Trace elements and isotopes, and their use in petrogenetic studies. Global distribution of magmatism and its origin. Mid-oceanic ridges, active continental margins, intraplate magmatism.

## Metamorphic petrology 262 (GLY 262)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GLY 255
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 4



### Module content

Classification of metamorphic rocks. Anatexis, migmatite and granite; eclogite. Metamorphic textures. PT-time loops. Metamorphism in various plate tectonic environments.

## Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology 263 (GLY 263)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 24.00

**Programmes** [BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** GLY 255

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Classification and nomenclature of igneous rocks. The nature of silicate melts; physical and chemical factors influencing crystallisation and textures of igneous rocks. Phase diagrams, fractional crystallisation and partial melting. Trace elements and isotopes, and their use in petrogenetic studies. Global distribution of magmatism and its origin. Mid-oceanic ridges, active continental margins, intraplate magmatism. Classification of metamorphic rocks. Anatexis, migmatite and granite; eclogite. Metamorphic textures. PT-time loops. Metamorphism in various plate tectonic environments.

## Geological field mapping 266 (GLY 266)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

**Programmes** [BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** GLY 253

**Contact time** 7 days full-time block week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to field mapping techniques.

## Geodynamics and ore formation 352 (GLY 352)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



**Programmes** [BEng Mining Engineering](#)  
[BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE](#)

**Prerequisites** GLY 256

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

### Module content

This module is offered to mining engineering students, and addresses the processes that formed mineral deposits, and the geological approach to exploiting such deposits. The module covers the principles of ore-forming processes and geological environments of ore formation, ore classification schemes, the geometry and geostatistical evaluation of ore bodies, the principles of rock deformation, stress, strain and rheology, joints, fault systems, folds and interference folding, tectonic fabrics, shear zones, and progressive deformation. The practicals cover the identification and classification of ore deposits, and the recognition and mitigation of geologically related mining hazards such as faults, shears and folding.

## Structural geology 365 (GLY 365)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** GLY 263

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1

### Module content

Integrated theoretical and practical course dealing with the principles of rock deformation and analysis of deformed rocks. Stress, strain and rheology, joints, experimental rock deformation, fault systems and Anderson's theory of faulting. Folds and interference folding, tectonic fabrics, shear zone, progressive deformation. Stereographic projection and structural analysis.

## Groundwater 366 (GLY 366)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)



<b>Prerequisites</b>	GLY 263
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 2

### Module content

The hydrological cycle, water resources and water usage; porosity and permeability, heterogeneity and isotropy; the occurrence of groundwater, vadose and phreatic zones; aquifer types, relations and groundwater flow; hydrostratigraphy, surface water and groundwater interaction, springs; water balance, water flow, recharge and baseflow; Darcy's Law, hydraulic conductivity and subsurface flow; capillarity, hydraulics, Bernoulli's equation and the continuity principle; hydraulic parameters and their derivation from aquifer pumping tests, including Theis, Cooper-Jacob and other modifications; water quality, solubility, natural waters, ionic balance and plotting water chemistry data; groundwater mining, aquifer compaction and subsidence; saline intrusion, dryland salinity, pollution, NAPLs; site remediation and toxicology.

## Economic geology 367 (GLY 367)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	36.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GLY 365
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

This module details the genesis and exploitation of major ore deposits, with an emphasis on South African examples. The processes through which ore deposits are formed and modified will be discussed, highlighting the relevance of sedimentary, metamorphic and igneous processes in the genesis of world-class ore bodies. The module will also address the methods of mining commonly used, and the international commodity market, including a brief introduction to ore reserve estimation and the evaluation of potential ore deposits. The section of the module involving mineral exploration and mining will emphasize the need of pursuing a sustainable mineral resources development mindset, by addressing and sharing ideas on the impact that mining has on environmental, social and economic issues including community welfare, impact of mining on land use, and rehabilitation post mining.

## Advanced Geological field mapping 368 (GLY 368)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------



---

<b>Module credits</b>	6.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Geology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GLY 263
<b>Contact time</b>	7 days full-time block week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Advanced field mapping techniques.

### Engineering geology and rock mechanics 369 (GLY 369)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	36.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Geology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GLY 365
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Definition and scope of engineering geology; engineering geological properties and problems of rocks and soils within different stratigraphic units and climatic regions in southern Africa. Strength and failure modes of rock material and rock failure criteria. The characteristics of joints in rock. Joint line surveys and interpretation of data. Characteristics of a rock mass, rock mass classification and determination of strength. Slope stability in surface mines. Induced seismicity due to deep mining and rock bursts. This is in support of United Nations Sustainable Development Goals dealing with clean water, sanitation, infrastructure development.

### Petrology and geochemistry 701 (GLY 701)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Geology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology

---





**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Interpretation and application of advanced petrogenetic tools: the Rb/Sr and Sm/Nd isotopic systems, quantitative interpretation of binary and ternary phase diagrams, Harker type diagrams, assimilation-fractional crystallisation - partial melting. Geothermometers and geobarometers, PT-t loops. Abundance of elements in the crust, crust-forming models. Hydrous geochemistry. Recognition of geochemical anomalies. Analytical methods and the treatment of geochemical data. A one-week field trip to the Bushveld Complex.

## Volcanology 702 (GLY 702)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

This module traces the path of magmas from their ultimate source in the mantle, storage and evolution in the crust, through eruption at the surface where they interact with the landscape and atmosphere. Volcanic eruptions and the transfer of mass and volatiles from the deep interior of the planet. Transformation of the landscape by violent eruptions, and impact on the atmosphere on short timescales. An integrated history of magmatism and its central role in the production of the crust and the degassing history of the planet. The fluid dynamics of volcanoes, from viscous magma flows to turbulent, multiphase eruptions.

## Crustal evolution 704 (GLY 704)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

Precambrian crustal evolution. Precambrian plate tectonics. Precambrian evolution of the African plate (Eburnean, Kibaran and Pan-African events). Phanerozoic evolution to the African plate; global examples of tectonics as a continental crustal source. Determination of deformational history of crustal rocks; determination of palaeostress conditions in ancient crustal rocks. Practical experience of structural analysis and determination of deformational history. A one-week field trip to a tectonically complex area.

### Mapping camp 707 (GLY 707)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Mapping and analysis of a geologically complex area using different techniques.

### Honours project 710 (GLY 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 35.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 5 practical sessions per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Independent acquisition of geological field and/or laboratory data, treatment and interpretation thereof, and writing of an honours essay.

### Economic geology 713 (GLY 713)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.



**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Basic remote sensing methods and their applications to geology; basic geophysical and geochemical exploration techniques; exploration target generation - philosophies and methods; professional geological practice; the SAMREC and similar codes; geologists in the business environment; case studies. Practical component (runs parallel to theory above) encompasses ore-microscopy; ore mineral identification; ore textures; analysis of ore assemblages; instrumental techniques applied to ores. Various short field trips to both opencast and underground mines.

## Modern analytical methods and sampling theory 715 (GLY 715)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Modern analytical methods, including X-ray Diffraction (XRD), X-ray Fluorescence (XRF), inductively coupled mass spectrometry (ICP-MS), methods of isotopic analysis, and electron beam methods (EPMA, SEM, CT). An introductory statistical course in sampling methods, treatment of data, statistical validity, and basic geostatistics.

## Trends in geoscience 716 (GLY 716)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

The field of Geology is rapidly evolving both in terms of industry requirements and the type of science done. This module includes short courses offered by staff and industry on a variety of topics, as well as a weekly departmental seminar on current research in the department. The content of this module is expected to vary year by year according to availability of internal and external lecturers.

## Remote sensing 220 (GMA 220)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

### Programmes

[BIT Information Systems](#)  
[BSc Environmental Sciences](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Information and Knowledge Systems](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** GMC 110

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

This module aims to provide students with a working knowledge and skills to learn methods and techniques for collecting, processing and analysing remotely sensed data. Throughout the module, emphasis will be placed on image processing, image analysis, image classification, remote sensing and applications of remote sensing in geographical analysis and environmental monitoring. The module is composed of lectures, readings, practical exercises research tasks and a project or assignments of at least 64 notional hours. In particular, the practical exercises and research tasks incorporate South African examples using satellite remotely-sensed data, as well as field spectral data measurements, to promote understanding of the state of land cover and land use types (e.g. spanning agricultural resources, water resources, urbanization) and how changes over time could impact on the changing climate in accordance with the United Nation's Sustainable Development Goals.

## Remote sensing 320 (GMA 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 22.00

### Programmes

[BSc Environmental Sciences](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)



<b>Prerequisites</b>	GMA 220
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

This module aims to provide students with a working knowledge and skills to learn methods and techniques for collecting, processing and analysing remotely sensed data. Throughout the module, emphasis will be placed on image processing, image analysis, image classification, remote sensing and applications of remote sensing in geographical analysis and environmental monitoring. The module is composed of lectures, readings, practical exercises research tasks and a project or assignments of at least 64 notional hours. In particular, the practical exercises and research tasks incorporate South African examples using satellite remotely-sensed data, as well as field spectral data measurements, to promote understanding of the state of land cover and land use types (e.g. spanning agricultural resources, water resources, urbanization) and how changes over time could impact on the changing climate in accordance with the United Nation's Sustainable Development Goals.

## Advanced remote sensing 705 (GMA 705)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Geography and Environmental Science</a> <a href="#">BScHons Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BScHons Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GMA 320 or equivalent
<b>Contact time</b>	28 contact hours per semester
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

The aim of the module is to provide knowledge and understanding of image analysis and information extraction methods in remote sensing. The emphasis is on equipping students with knowledge and skills necessary to process imagery to extract diverse biophysical and geospatial information. The course gives insight into the possibilities and limitations of the application of modern remote sensing/image acquisition systems for Earth and atmosphere research purposes at different levels of detail.

## Cartography 110 (GMC 110)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00



<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BIT Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BSc Chemistry</a> <a href="#">BSc Computer Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Environmental Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSc Information and Knowledge Systems</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a>
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

History, present and future of cartography. Introductory geodesy: shape of the earth, graticule and grids, datum definition, elementary map projection theory, spherical calculations. Representation of geographical data on maps: Cartographic design, cartographic abstraction, levels of measurement and visual variables. Semiotics for cartography: signs, sign systems, map semantics and syntactics, explicit and implicit meaning of maps (map pragmatics). Critique maps of indicators to measure United Nations Sustainable Development Goals in South Africa.

## Geometrical and space geodesy 310 (GMC 310)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	22.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GMC 110 and WTW 114/WTW 134
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Spherical trigonometry. Geometrical Geodesy: Datum surfaces and coordinate systems in Geodesy, Calculations on the ellipsoid, Datum transformations. Map projections: Projection principles, distortion determination, construction of conformal, equivalent and equidistant projections, the Transverse Mercator projection and UTM projection of an ellipsoidal earth, projection transformations. Space Geodesy: Time systems, Celestial and observer coordinate systems, Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS), Satellite orbits and orbital parameters, 3-D positioning. A project or assignments of at least 64 notional hours. Examples using data from South Africa are implemented.

## Geometrical optics 800 (GMO 800)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 36.00

**Programmes** [MMed Ophthalmology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Mathematical description of waves; Light as an electromagnetic wave; Nature of sources of light; Wave fronts (Huygens principle); Snell's Law; Index of refraction; Exploration of the laws of reflection and refraction at planar and curved surfaces; Ray tracing methodology to find position, Nature of images and magnification; Thin lens formula; Conjugate foci formula; Lensmaker's formula; Ophthalmic prisms: characteristics, classification and refractive power; Thin lenses: types, image formation; Cylindrical lenses: Introduction; Optical Systems: Lens combinations (notation, toric lenses); Thick lenses (cardinal points, system power); The Eye: structure and function, reduced eye; Aberrations in general; Eye defects: myopia, hyperopia, presbyopia, astigmatism; Optical apparatus for ophthalmology: invasive / non-invasive, ophthalmic laser, ophthalmoscope, fundus camera, light coagulator.

## Geoinformatics project 320 (GMT 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 22.00

**Programmes** [BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)

**Prerequisites** GIS 310 and GIS 311. Only for Geoinformatics students.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

A project focusing on a local community which is approved by the lecturer and in which one or more of the studied techniques of data acquisition and processing are used to produce an output of spatially referenced information. The project must be fully described in a project report.

### Seminar course 702 (GTK 702)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Genetics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 seminar per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Students are guided to collect relevant literature from disparate papers and to condense and collate this into a written seminar. Seminars are presented, along with formal article talks. Themes and articles covered in the course form part of the written examination upon completion of the module.

### Research project 703 (GTK 703)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 60.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Biotechnology](#)  
[BScHons Genetics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

A mini-dissertation with well-defined limits is undertaken under the guidance of a supervisor. The students are allowed to choose from a number of projects from the different research programmes in the department. The module also has a strong theoretical component since emphasis is placed on writing and presenting a comprehensive literature review and project proposal. Additional technical and analytical training is provided. The project is concluded with a final report, presented in the format of a short manuscript, as well as a poster and an oral presentation.

### Trends in genetics 704 (GTK 704)

**Qualification** Postgraduate





<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Genetics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Discussions and essays focusing on a selection of advanced topics, as well as recent advances in the field of genetics, with an emphasis on contextualising these developments within the broader framework of the Biosciences and its role in modern society. Ethical and philosophical issues in genetics are debated.

## Research methods 705 (GTK 705)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	30.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Biotechnology</a> <a href="#">BScHons Genetics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	10 discussion classes per week, 5 lectures per week, 5 practicals per week, 5 web-based periods per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Students are guided through the methodology of research planning and data handling. They are offered hands-on experience in a range of advanced techniques employed in molecular research and analysis. Scientific writing and presentation skills, required for research in genetics, are also addressed.

## Dissertation: Genetics 890 (GTK 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Biotechnology</a> <a href="#">MSc Genetics</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Genetics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology



**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Genetics 990 (GTK 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** PhD Biotechnology  
PhD Genetics

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Introductory genetics 161 (GTS 161)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology  
BVSc

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** MLB 111 GS



**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly tutorials

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Chromosomes and cell division. Principles of Mendelian inheritance: locus and alleles, dominance interactions, extensions and modifications of basic principles.. Probability studies. Sex determination and sex linked traits. Pedigree analysis. Genetic linkage and chromosome mapping. Chromosome variation.

## Molecular genetics 251 (GTS 251)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** GTS 161 GS

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly tutorials

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The chemical nature of DNA. The processes of DNA replication, transcription, RNA processing, translation. Control of gene expression in prokaryotes and eukaryotes. Recombinant DNA technology and its applications in gene analysis and manipulation.



## Genetic diversity and evolution 261 (GTS 261)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes**

- BSc Biochemistry
- BSc Biotechnology
- BSc Chemistry
- BSc Ecology
- BSc Entomology
- BSc Food Science
- BSc Genetics
- BSc Human Genetics
- BSc Human Physiology
- BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology
- BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
- BSc Medical Sciences
- BSc Microbiology
- BSc Plant Science
- BSc Zoology
- BScAgric Animal Science
- BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences
- BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** GTS 251 GS

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly tutorials

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Chromosome structure and transposable elements. Mutation and DNA repair. Genomics and proteomics. Organelle genomes. Introduction to genetic analysis of populations: allele and genotypic frequencies, Hardy Weinberg Law, its extensions and implications for different mating systems. Introduction to quantitative and evolutionary genetics.

## Eukaryotic gene control and development 351 (GTS 351)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Genetics BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology BSc Medical Sciences BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science BSc Zoology
-------------------	--

**Prerequisites** GTS 251 GS and GTS 261 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Regulation of gene expression in eukaryotes: regulation at the genome, transcription, RNA processing and translation levels. DNA elements and protein factors involved in gene control. The role of chromatin structure and epigenetic changes. Technology and experimental approaches used in studying eukaryotic gene control. Applications of the principles of gene control in eg cell signaling pathways, development cancer and other diseases in humans.

## Advanced population genetics 353 (GTS 353)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Prerequisites** GTS 251 GS and GTS 261 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Genetic variation and mating systems. Allele frequency change: genetic drift, natural and kin selection, mutation and migration. Molecular evolution: nucleotide substitutions to multigene families, and the neutral theory. Quantitative genetics: analysis of genetic variation, heritability, natural selection and artificial selection of quantitative traits. Identification of quantitative trait loci (QTLs).

## Genome evolution and phylogenetics 354 (GTS 354)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Genetics BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology BSc Information and Knowledge Systems BSc Medical Sciences BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science BSc Zoology
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GTS 251 GS and GTS 261 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Mechanisms involved in the evolution of genes, genomes and phenotypes. Comparison of the molecular organisation of viral, archaea, bacterial and eukaryotic genomes. Genome project design, DNA sequencing methods and annotation. Molecular evolution. Phylogenetic inference. Applications of phylogenetics and evolutionary genomics research, including relevance to sustainable development goals for food security, good health and the biosphere.

## Population and evolutionary genetics 367 (GTS 367)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Genetics BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Information and Knowledge Systems BSc Medical Sciences BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GTS 251 and GTS 261 GS.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology



**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Genetic and phenotypic variation. Organisation of genetic variation. Random genetic drift. Mutation and the neutral theory. Darwinian selection. Inbreeding, population subdivision and migration. Evolutionary quantitative genetics. Population genomics. Human population genetics. Levels of selection and individuality. Arms races and irreversibility. Complexity. Applied evolution.

## Genetics in human health 368 (GTS 368)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology

**Prerequisites** GTS 251 and GTS 261 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Application of modern genetics to human variability, health and disease. Molecular origin of Mendelian and multifactorial diseases. The use of polymorphisms, gene mapping, linkage and association studies in medical genetics. Genetic diagnosis: application of cytogenetic, molecular and genomic techniques. Congenital abnormalities, risk assessment and genetic consultation. Prenatal testing, population screening, treatment of genetic diseases and gene-based therapy. Pharmacogenetics and cancer genetics. Ethical aspects in medical genetics.

## Site investigation project 713 (GTX 713)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

### Programmes

BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Engineering Geology  
BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week for 11 wks, 13 practicals per week (11 weeks)



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Field work which includes mapping, soil and rock description, joint surveys, borehole testing, water sampling, interpretation of laboratory test results and compilation of site investigation reports. Larger projects of at least two months of fieldwork and report writing which involves surface and underground studies, mapping, drill core logging, discontinuity surveys, rock mass classification, stability analyses, interpretation of laboratory tests or pollution studies including water and/or soil sampling, interpretation of laboratory tests, development of a rehabilitation plan or groundwater model and compilation of a report. Compulsory attendance at conferences, short courses, specialist lectures, visits to construction sites and fields excursions.

## Engineering geology of South Africa 714 (GTX 714)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Engineering Geology](#)  
[BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week (4 weeks), 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Overview of site investigation phases; site investigation techniques; soil profiling and rock core description. Literature study and compilation of reports on the stratigraphy of South African rock types and engineering problems of rocks and soils within different stratigraphic units and climatic regions.

## Environmental geochemistry 715 (GTX 715)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week (4 weeks), 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year





### Module content

Principles of low temperature geochemistry; geochemistry and origin of acid mine water; acid-mineral reactions; industrial effluents, remediation methods, waste disposal, environmental sampling and data analysis; geochemical modelling.

## Environmental management and risk assessment 716 (GTX 716)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology](#) [Engineering Geology](#)  
[BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology](#)  
[BScHons Geography and Environmental Science](#)  
[BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week (3 weeks), 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Principles of integrated environmental management; environmental impact assessment; environmental management systems (ISO 14000 series); water resource management; environmental legislation; site investigation guidelines; natural hazard risk assessment; seismicity; project management and professional business practice. Geological models and software.

## Hydrogeological modelling 718 (GTX 718)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week (3 weeks), 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Finite-difference methods; numerical solution of the flow and transport equations; spatial and temporal discretisation, stability criteria; development of conceptual models; introduction to PMWIN/Modflow.

## Rock engineering 722 (GTX 722)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">Engineering Geology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week (4 weeks), 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Mapping, description (core logging and discontinuity surveys) and classification of rock masses; engineering properties of rock masses including deformability, shear strength of discontinuities, in situ strength and permeability of rock masses; effects, theoretical derivation and practical measurements of in situ stresses.

## Engineering applications 723 (GTX 723)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">Engineering Geology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GTX 722
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week for 3 weeks, 2 practicals per week (3 weeks)
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

The influence of geology on construction projects with specific reference to the requirements of dams, tunnels, slopes, waste disposal and urban development.

## Fluid mechanics in geological media 725 (GTX 725)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">Engineering Geology</a> <a href="#">BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">Hydrogeology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week (4 weeks), 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year



### Module content

Statics and dynamics of fluids, including water, aqueous phase liquids (saline water), non-aqueous phase liquids (petroleum hydrocarbons), gases (atmospheric air) and man-made fluids (gout) through natural and man-made porous media (eg soil, rock, concrete). Single phase flow and multiphase flow; saturated and unsaturated flow. Quantification of hydrological parameters. South African hydrostratigraphy. Drainage and dewatering.

### Applied geological field methods 728 (GTX 728)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology](#) [Engineering Geology](#)  
[BScHons Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 5 practicals per week (2 weeks)

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Practical field-based investigation methods for engineering geological and hydrogeological application; geological mapping.

### Dissertation: Hydrogeology 890 (GTX 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Hydrogeology 990 (GTX 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Engineering and Environmental Geology Hydrogeology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year



## Large stock nutrition and production 420 (GVK 420)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Animal Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VGE 320, and VKU 260 and simultaneously register for TLR 411 and PVK 420.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Production management of large stock. Aspects of business management of the large-stock enterprise. Management programmes, production systems and techniques applicable to beef cattle, dairy cattle and horses in an environmentally friendly manner, with reference to the role of Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) in a Southern African context. Specialised nutrition of beef and dairy cattle according to production systems. The use of computer systems in feeding management. Design and planning of farm buildings and structures. Storage and handling of fodder. The handling and management of refuse. Hygiene and herd health programmes. Practical work: This will include compiling rations based on requirements and least cost formulations, specialised assignments and on-farm experiential training.

## Large stock science 800 (GVK 800)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Management programmes and systems for beef cattle, dairy cattle and horses. Optimal use of breeds and regional adaptation of cattle. The stud industry and commercial units. Indigenous breeds and production development. The application of animal science practices and the practise of techniques for breed improvement. Seminars, class discussions, literature studies and assignments on certain fields. Research and production techniques. Agro-economic, agro-ecological and socio-economic assignments can be prescribed.

## Human nutrition 210 (HNT 210)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BDietetics BSc Nutrition
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	2nd-year status
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Human Nutrition
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Application of scientific principles in human nutrition.  
Standards, guidelines and food composition tables.

## Human nutrition 220 (HNT 220)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BDietetics BSc Nutrition
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	FLG 211 GS FLG 212 GS BCM 253 BCM 254 BCM 255 BCM 256 VDG 250 HNT 210
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Human Nutrition
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Human nutrition in the life cycle: Nutritional screening, nutritional needs, nutrition problems and prevention thereof, growth monitoring and meal/menu planning.

## Advanced human nutrition 411 (HNT 411)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BDietetics BSc Nutrition
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	4th-year status
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Human Nutrition

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

**Module content**

Seminars and case studies (theory and practical application): Eating behaviour, eating disorders, nutrient/nutrition supplementation, sports nutrition, vegetarianism, food safety, nutrition of the disabled, prevention of non-communicable disease of lifestyle; nutrition and immunity; nutrition and genetics.

**Principles and practices 351 (HSC 351)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

**Module content**

The organised nursery industry in South Africa. Principles: seed production; seed germination; rooting of cuttings; budding and grafting; propagation using specialised organs; micro propagation (tissue culturing). Practices: Greenhouse construction, lighting in the nursery; cooling and heating; soil-based and soil-less growing media; container types; irrigation and fertilisation; growth manipulation; pest and disease management. Management, economic and marketing aspects of a typical nursery operation. Students will get hands-on experience and will visit nurseries.

**Fruit tree crops 420 (HSC 420)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** GKD 250 and PGW 350

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Crop modelling, climate zones, climate requirements, cultivation regions, economic importance, anatomy and morphology, phenological modelling. Commercially important scions, rootstocks and their interactions. Crop management including fertilization, irrigation, pest and disease complex, tree and fruit manipulation, physiological disorders of economically important tropical, subtropical and temperate fruit crops produced in Southern Africa. The important role fruit production can play in achieving the Sustainable Development Goals will be highlighted, with emphasis placed on the sustainable use of resources.

## Ornamental horticulture 490 (HSC 490)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Economic importance of cut flowers, ornamentals and turfgrass. Taxonomy and plant description. Climatic requirements and production practices including establishing, growth manipulation, nutritional requirements, irrigation, pest and disease control, harvest and post-harvest handling. Identification of ornamental plants for commercial and landscape use. Climatic, reproduction and maintenance requirements for trees, palms, cycads, shrubs, flowering plants, ground covers, turfgrass, climbers and indoor plants. Functional and aesthetic value of plants in a landscape or indoors. Excursions to nurseries and practical experience on the experimental farm is compulsory for all participants in this module.

## Fruit tree crops 780 (HSC 780)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BScAgricHons Crop Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

An overview of the South African fruit industry indicating economic importance and the areas of production of the various crops. Principles governing orchard establishment and orchard management, including location and site selection, crop and cultivar choices, site preparation, orchard layout and design, irrigation, fertilisation, pruning and training, the application of plant growth regulators and disease and pest management. Harvesting practices and the post-harvest physiology of fruit which determines storage protocols and the quality of the fruit reaching the consumer. Climatic requirements, phenological models, cultivars and rootstocks, fruit manipulation, physiological disorders and pest and disease complexes of subtropical and deciduous fruit crops produced in South Africa. The important role fruit production can play in achieving the Sustainable Development Goals will be highlighted, with emphasis placed on the sustainable use of resources.

## Advanced coursework 801 (HSC 801)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	120.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 seminar per week, 2 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Any module and/or assignment(s) at the advanced level chosen in consultation with the head of department.

## Mini-dissertation: Horticultural science 891 (HSC 891)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	120.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

Each candidate must write a mini-dissertation on his/her research project in Horticulture and at least prepare a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

## Actuarial and Financial Mathematics in practice 111 (IAS 111)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	6.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Mathematical Statistics</a>





**Prerequisites** At least 6 (70-79%) in Mathematics and a APS score of 32 in the Grade 12 examination or WTW 133 (60%), WTW 143 (60%), WST 133 (60%) and WST 143 (60%).

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

**Module content**

Professionalism, working in multicultural environments, self-development, propositional logic, financial needs.

### Actuarial and Financial Mathematics in practice 121 (IAS 121)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

**Programmes** [BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Prerequisites** WTW 114 or WTW 153, WST 111 or WST 153, IAS 111.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Financial service providers, investment examples including an introduction to mathematics of finance, life insurance examples including an introduction to contingencies, general insurance examples including an introduction to reserving using run-off triangles, personal self-development.

### Financial mathematics 211 (IAS 211)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** IAS 111, IAS 121, WTW 114, WTW 123, WTW 124, WTW 152, WST 111, WST 121

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science



**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Principles of actuarial modelling, cash-flow models, the time value of money, interest rates, discounting and accumulating, level annuities, deferred and increasing annuities, equations of value.

## Contingencies 221 (IAS 221)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Prerequisites** IAS 211

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Fundamentals of survival models, select and ultimate life tables, Assurance and annuity functions, basic calculation of premiums and reserves, principles of pricing and reserving.

## Financial mathematics 282 (IAS 282)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** IAS 211

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Principles of actuarial modelling, cash-flow models, the time value of money, interest rates, discounting and accumulating, level annuities, deferred and increasing annuities, equations of value, loan schedules, project appraisal, elementary compound interest problems, term structure of interest rates.



### Contingencies 353 (IAS 353)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	IAS 382, WST 312
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Actuarial Science
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Annuities and assurances involving one or two lives, life tables, Calculating premiums and reserves allowing for fixed or variable benefits and premiums, competing risks, profit testing.

### Insurance and actuarial applications 361 (IAS 361)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	IAS 211 and IAS 221
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Actuarial Science
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Risk and insurance. Stakeholders and the external environment. Professionalism. Actuaries and the regulatory environment. Insurance products and their providers. Pricing of insurance products. Wider fields of actuarial practice. Reinsurance. New developments in the industry.

### Survival models 382 (IAS 382)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Statistics</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Mathematical Statistics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	IAS 221 60%, IAS 282 60%, WST 211, WST 221, WTW 211, WTW 218
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

**Module content**

Survival models and the life table, estimating the lifetime distribution, proportional hazard models, the binomial and Poisson models, exposed to risk, graduation and statistical tests, methods of graduation.

**Actuarial risk management 712 (IAS 712)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 50.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Actuarial Science](#)

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Year

**Module content**

Surplus management. Mergers, acquisitions, insolvency and closure. Options and guarantees. Stakeholders. External environment. Regulation. Introduction to financial products and customer needs. Benefits overview and providers of benefits. Life insurance overview and life products. General insurance overview and products. Cash flows of simple products. Contract design. Project management. Capital project appraisal. Money markets. Bond markets. Equity markets. Property markets. Futures and options. Collective investment schemes. Overseas markets. Economic influences on investment markets. Other influences on investment markets. Relationship between returns on asset classes. Valuation of individual investments. Valuation of asset classes and portfolios. Investment strategy – institutions. Investment strategy – individuals. Developing an investment strategy. Modelling. Data. Setting assumptions. Expenses. Pricing and financing strategies. Discontinuance. Valuing liabilities. Accounting and disclosure. Surplus and surplus management. Sources of risk. Risks in benefit schemes. Pricing and insuring risks. The risk Management process. Risk management tools. Capital management. Monitoring.

**Enterprise risk management 721 (IAS 721)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 40.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Actuarial Science](#)

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

ERM framework. External risk frameworks. Stakeholders. Risk appetite. The risk management function. Risk management processes. Risk identification and assessment. Risk classification. Risk Measurement. Risk modelling. Analysis of data. Copulas. Fitting models. Extreme Value Theory. The use of models in ERM. Analysis of selected risks. Risk optimisation and risk responses. Risk management of selected risks. Economic Capital.

## Actuarial communication 722 (IAS 722)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Actuarial Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Actuarial Science
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Communicating technical actuarial concepts effectively, the drafting process of a document, planning and structure of a document or presentation, style and tone of a document or presentation. Drafting documents (letters, reports, discussion documents, memos, emails). Presentations (preparation and delivery, follow up, designing visual aids).

## Engineering geology 703 (IGL 703)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	20 Contact hours
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Engineering geology 704 (IGL 704)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	10 lectures per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Dissertation: Engineering Geology 890 (IGL 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Engineering Geology](#)  
[MSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Engineering geology 990 (IGL 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Engineering Geology](#)  
[PhD Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Informatics 112 (INF 112)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BCom](#)  
[BCom Accounting Sciences](#)  
[BCom Financial Sciences](#)  
[BCom Informatics Information Systems](#)  
[BCom Investment Management](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BCom Supply Chain Management](#)  
[BIS Information Science](#)  
[BIT Information Systems](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)



<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	A candidate must have passed Mathematics with at least 4 (50-59%) in the Grade 12 examination; or STK 113 60%, STK 123 60% or STK 110
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Informatics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to information systems, information systems in organisations, hardware: input, processing, output, software: systems and application software, organisation of data and information, telecommunications and networks, the Internet and Intranet. Transaction processing systems, management information systems, decision support systems, information systems in business and society, systems analysis, systems design, implementation, maintenance and revision.

## Informatics 154 (INF 154)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Informatics Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BIS Information Science</a> <a href="#">BIT Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSc Information and Knowledge Systems</a>

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	A candidate must have passed Mathematics with at least 4 (50-59%) in the Grade 12 examination
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Informatics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Introduction to programming.

## Informatics 164 (INF 164)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------



<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Informatics Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BIS Information Science</a> <a href="#">BIT Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSc Information and Knowledge Systems</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	INF 154; A candidate must have passed Mathematics with at least 4 (50-59%) in the Grade 12 examination; AIM 101 or AIM 102 or AIM 111 and AIM 121
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Informatics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
<b>Module content</b>	Programming.

### **Informatics 171 (INF 171)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Informatics Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BIS Information Science</a> <a href="#">BIT Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSc Information and Knowledge Systems</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	A candidate must have passed Mathematics with at least 4 (50-59%) in the Grade 12 examination
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Informatics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year





## Module content

General systems theory, creative problem solving, soft systems methodology. The systems analyst, systems development building blocks, systems development, systems analysis methods, process modelling.

### Informatics 183 (INF 183)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 3.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Clothing Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Informatics

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Computer processing of accounting information.

### Informatics 214 (INF 214)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes** [BCom](#)  
[BCom Informatics Information Systems](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BIS Information Science](#)  
[BIT Information Systems](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** AIM 101 or AIM 111 and AIM 121

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Informatics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Database design: the relational model, structured query language (SQL), entity relationship modelling, normalisation, database development life cycle; practical introduction to database design. Databases: advanced entity relationship modelling and normalisation, object-oriented databases, database development life cycle, advanced practical database design.

## Informatics 225 (INF 225)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes**  
[BCom](#)  
[BCom Informatics Information Systems](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BIS Information Science](#)  
[BIT Information Systems](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** INF 112; AIM 101 or AIM 102 or AIM 111 and AIM 121

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 3 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Informatics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

An overview of systems infrastructure and integration.

## Informatics 261 (INF 261)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 7.00

**Programmes**  
[BCom](#)  
[BCom Informatics Information Systems](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BIS Information Science](#)  
[BIT Information Systems](#)  
[BSc Geography](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences



<b>Prerequisites</b>	INF 214
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Informatics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Database management: transaction management, concurrent processes, recovery, database administration: new developments: distributed databases, client-server databases: practical implementation of databases.

### Informatics 272 (INF 272)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	14.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Informatics Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BIS Information Science</a> <a href="#">BIT Information Systems</a> <a href="#">BSc Information and Knowledge Systems</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	AIM 101 or AIM 102 or AIM 111 and AIM 121, INF 164 and INF 171, Regulation IT.3(g)
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Informatics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year
<b>Module content</b>	Advanced programming.

### Informatics 282 (INF 282)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	3.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	FRK 111, FRK 121 or FRK 100 or FRK 101
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Informatics



**Period of presentation** Semester 1 and Semester 2

**Module content**

Computer processing of accounting information.

**Systems thinking and engineering 780 (ISE 780)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes**

[BEngHons Engineering and Technology Management](#)  
[BScHons Applied Science Mechanics: Physical Asset Management](#)  
[BScHons Engineering and Technology Management](#)  
[BScHons Financial Engineering](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 20 contact hours per semester

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Engineering and Technology Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 and Semester 2

**Module content**

A company's ability to remain competitive in modern times hinges increasingly on its ability to perform systems engineering. The technology and complexity of a company's products appears to steadily increase and with it, the risks that need to be managed. This module provides specialised knowledge to apply systems engineering by understanding the tools, processes and management fundamentals.

**Interior merchandise 121 (ITW 121)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Household material and equipment studies: Metals and non-metals used for the manufacturing of objects, equipment and components of appliances for household use. Study and evaluation of selected non-electrical household equipment in terms of specific end-use situations.

**Costume and fashion history 210 (KLD 210)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate



---

<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Costume and fashion history: Appearance characteristics of Western dress. Influencing factors. Evolution of styles from Ancient Egyptian up to and including the present.

### Fashion forecasting 222 (KLD 222)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

The South African fashion industry: Basic principles of fashion; fashion as a product; and the consumer. Fashion production: Haute Couture and ready-to-wear clothes. Fashion forecasting and fashion analyses.

### Social and cultural aspects of clothing 311 (KLD 311)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

Social-psychological and cultural aspects of clothing: development of a framework to study individuals' clothing behaviour, symbolic-interactionism and a cognitive perspective. Development of the self: self and self-concept: the body as indicator; personal values and norms. Appearance management and presentation of the self: role acceptance, identity, social control social cognition. Cultural context and dress: human adaptation; culture creations (technical, moral and ceremonial patterns); societies and clothing; beauty standards and beauty ideals. Social context, identity, change and clothing: the family, politics, religion, economy and the role of clothing as a reflection of social and personal identities; mentefacts and identities; social change and clothing.

## Clothing retail management 410 (KLD 410)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Clothing Retail Management](#)

**Prerequisites** Final-year status

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Clothing retail aspects: Functioning of clothing retail. Environments, formats and structures of clothing retailers. Merchandising and store positioning. Fashion consumer behaviour. Business ethics, social and environmental responsibilities of clothing retailers, and ethical consumer behaviour. Fashion marketing communication; advertising, direct marketing, sales promotions, personal selling and service provision, publicity and public relations, fashion shows and special events.

This module addresses UN sustainable development goals: 8 (decent work and economic growth), 9 (industry innovation and infrastructure) and 12 (responsible consumption and production).

## Clothing merchandising 420 (KLD 420)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Clothing Retail Management](#)

**Prerequisites** Final-year status

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Clothing merchandise managerial aspects: fashion buying and planning function, controlling inventories, factors influencing stock movement, redistribution of stock; merchandising processes, sourcing and relationship with suppliers; management roles and responsibilities. Buying strategies, forecasting and records, preparing a buying plan, developing an assortment plan. Global sourcing perspective for the SA clothing industry. Economic, social, environmental responsible sourcing practices of retailers.

This module addresses UN sustainable development goals: 8 (decent work and economic growth), 9 (industry innovation and infrastructure) and 12 (responsible consumption and production).

## Clothing production: sewing techniques 110 (KLR 110)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 9.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Clothing Retail Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Basic clothing construction techniques and quality control.

## Clothing production: processes 120 (KLR 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 9.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Clothing Retail Management](#)

**Prerequisites** KLR 110

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Application of basic clothing construction techniques and quality control.

## Flat pattern design 211 (KLR 211)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Clothing Retail Management](#)



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	KLR 120
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Flat pattern design. Computer Aided Design (CAD).

### Pattern use and good fit 221 (KLR 221)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	KLR 211
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Pattern use and good fitting. Commercial pattern sizing and use, pattern drafting, fit evaluation and pattern alterations to ensure good fit, grading techniques and size specification sheets. Electronic pattern design using Gerber Accumark software.

### Clothing production 321 (KLR 321)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	17.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	KLR 221
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Small scale production: Industrial machines, production systems, quality assurance. Practical exercises and assignments are based on the themes covered in the module theory component. The UN sustainable development goals #11&12 are addressed during the theory components and practical sessions. Projects are focused on responsible consumption and production as well as community engagement.





## Product development 411 (KLR 411)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	19.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	KLR 221 and KLR 321
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Entrepreneurship in the South African clothing industry, business planning, starting a business and the product development processes that form part of the manufacturing of clothing.

Production: planning, conceptualisation, development, product analysis, execution and presentation of products. Application of clothing, textile and consumer knowledge by utilising a CAD-program for planning and assembling apparel.

Marketing aspects: Small business marketing and management, economic and strategic decisions regarding a clothing small business as well as the development of new clothing products, bearing in mind the needs of the selected target market, financial aspects and overall business planning

Assignments are based on the themes covered in the module. The UN sustainable development goals #8, 11&12 are addressed during the module and all projects are focused on responsible consumption and production, community engagement and economic growth.

## Experiential training in industry 403 (KTP 403)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	5.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Documentation of work experience as required for years 1-3
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

During the first to fourth years of study students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community engagement and provide service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year, according to requirements as determined by the head of department. These "credits" include evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the study programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred



## Small stock nutrition and production 420 (KVK 420)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Animal Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VGE 320, and VKU 260 and simultaneously register for TLR 420 and VSX 420
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Specialised small stock and game nutrition. Principles of creep feeding, drought feeding, winter and supplementary feeding. Feeding pen nutrition and final nutritional preparation of lambs. Influence of nutrition on wool, pelts and mohair. Fodder-flow planning. Small stock management, making arrangements for shearing and preparing sheds and equipment, pens, dipping, drinking and feeding facilities. Optimum lamb production for both extensive and intensive flocks within commercial, communal and emerging production systems, recognising the Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs). Preparation and marketing of hides, wool, mohair and karakul. Lambing seasons and herd management. Management programmes for the production of wool, meat, karakul pelt and mohair according to the particular ecological region and for conditions of drought. Herd health programmes. Practical work: Formulation of lowest cost rations and practical work with small ruminants.

## Small stock science 800 (KVK 800)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Advanced aspects of the small stock industry. The wool, fur and meat production potential of South Africa. Production trends and factors influencing them. Production systems. The influence of flock composition on production. Discussions, seminars and prescribed scientific literature studies on various aspects of the small stock industry.

## Land development 990 (LDV 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.



<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Introduction to agricultural economics 210 (LEK 210)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Introduction to financial management in agriculture: Farm management and agricultural finance, farm management information; analysis and interpretation of farm financial statements; risk and farm planning. Budgets: partial, break-even, enterprise, total, cash flow and capital budgets. Time value of money. Introduction to production and resource use: the agricultural production function, total physical product curve, marginal physical product curve, average physical product curve, stages of production. Assessing short-term business costs; Economics of short-term decisions. Economics of input substitution: Least-cost use of inputs for a given output, short-term least-cost input use, effects of input price changes. Least-cost input use for a given budget. Economics of product substitution. Product combinations for maximum profit. Economics of crop and animal production.

### Agricultural economics 220 (LEK 220)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Agribusiness Management</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Food Science</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Plant Pathology</a>
-------------------	--

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The agribusiness system; the unique characteristics of agricultural products; marketing functions and costs; market structure; historical evolution of agricultural marketing in South Africa. Marketing environment and price analysis in agriculture: Introduction to supply and demand analysis.

Marketing plan and strategies for agricultural commodities; market analysis; product management; distribution channels for agricultural commodities, the agricultural supply chain, the agricultural futures market.

## Agricultural economics 310 (LEK 310)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Agribusiness Management</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</a>
-------------------	--

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** LEK 210 GS and EKN 110 GS

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Historical evolution of South African agricultural policy. Agriculture and the state: reasons for government intervention. Theoretical aspects of agricultural policy. Introduction to agricultural policy analysis. Welfare principles, pareto optimality. Macroeconomic policy and the agricultural sector. International agricultural trade.

## Agricultural economics 320 (LEK 320)



**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** [BCom Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** LEK 210 GS and LEK 220 GS.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The modern food and agribusiness system. Key drivers in the global context. Whole farm planning and budget development The financial analysis of farm financial, financial modelling, the financing decision: capital acquisition, creditworthiness, different capital sources, capital structures. The investment decision and working capital management. Value chains in agribusiness. Risk management. Strategic management and marketing principles in agribusiness. Operational management and human resources management. Business planning for agribusiness.

## Agricultural market and price analysis 410 (LEK 410)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BCom Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** LEK 210 GS and STK 220 GS

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

This module will focus on the fundamentals of demand, supply and agricultural price analysis. After providing an appropriate background in the theoretical concepts of demand and supply these basics will be applied in the generation of econometric simulation models. This will include the identification of supply and demand shifters as well as the elasticities, flexibilities, and impact multipliers. Practical experience in the formulation of these models will be attained from practical sessions. The student will submit a project in which he/she must analyse the demand or supply patterns of a commodity of his/her choice by generating an econometric model. Agricultural price analysis: price determination under different market structures followed by practical sessions on measuring market structures in various ways. This will include the calculation of market concentration. Price trend analysis and measurement of price changes by using indexes, and especially seasonal indexing. All of this will be supported by the relevant practical sessions.

## Agricultural economics 415 (LEK 415)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** [BCom Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** LEK 210 GS; STK 110 GS; STK 120 GS or WTW 134 GS or WTW 165 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Separate classes for Afrikaans and English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Derivative instruments in agriculture: To prepare students for taking the SAFEX Agricultural Markets Division brokerage exam. Giving an in-depth knowledge on the importance of hedging. Giving an in-depth knowledge on designing and implementation of low/zero risk hedging strategies. Introduction to the mathematics of portfolio management and mathematical modelling of derivatives. Working knowledge of the mathematical relationships in the management of a hedged portfolio. Working knowledge on the applicable software for managing derivative portfolios. Introduction into the management of option portfolios. To expand the thinking on the uses of derivatives, by also dealing with the hedging of diesel cost, interest rates and weather events.

## Agricultural economics 421 (LEK 421)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [BCom Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** LEK 410 GS



<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Separate classes for Afrikaans and English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Price and production function analysis. Input -output, input -input and product -product relationships; profit maximization; the production process through time, economies of size; decision making in agriculture under risk and uncertain circumstances; linear programming.

### Introduction to resource economics 424 (LEK 424)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Agribusiness Management</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	LEK 210 GS or EKN 110 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

This module reviews the origins and evolution of natural and environmental resource economics and its present-day main paradigms. Sources of externalities and causes of environmental degradation are examined. An introduction to the concepts and methods backing the design and implementation of environmental policies are provided. Economic valuation of natural and environmental resources is introduced.

### Advanced production economics 711 (LEK 711)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BComHons Agricultural Economics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	EKT 713 and MIE 780
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

Advanced production economics

(a) Primal approach: Structure of the production technology and properties, elasticity of substitution, homogeneity and returns to scale, separability, estimation of technology parameters and testing hypothesis about properties, functional forms.

(b) Normative supply analysis: Applications of linear programming to farm supply decisions.

(c) Dual approach: The profit function, the cost function, duality and technology structure, estimation and hypothesis testing.

(d) Positive supply analysis: Econometric specification of output supply and factor demand, restrictions from technology structure (homogeneity, etc.), aggregate supply analysis.

(e) Risk and uncertainty: Mean-variance analysis applications in agricultural production, stochastic dominance; MOTAD and quadratic programming.

## Agricultural marketing 713 (LEK 713)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Agricultural Economics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Agricultural marketing. The nature, development and conceptualisation of marketing and marketing study; the marketing environment, nationally and internationally; the functional and institutional approaches to marketing study; price discovery and margins; dynamics of agricultural and food marketing channels; competition and concentration on horizontal and vertical level; conflict and power relationships in agricultural marketing; economics of food consumption, consumer behaviour and consumer action; food market segmentation; food quality and branding, price, product, promotional and distributional policy; marketing analysis and planning. Global food marketing issues, contracting and changing global food retail patterns.

## Agribusiness management 720 (LEK 720)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BAgricHons Rural Development](#)  
[BComHons Agricultural Economics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 3 lectures per week





**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Strategic management in agriculture. Dynamics of agricultural management. Entrepreneurship. Environmental scanning. Productivity measurement and improvement thereof by the organisation of manpower, capital and financial sources. Business growth. Formulation and implementation of competitive strategy. Corporate governance, strategic analysis and strategic choice, strategy implementation, balanced scorecard.

## Agricultural finance and risk management 722 (LEK 722)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Agricultural Economics](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Agricultural finance. Economic theory underlying agricultural finance and agricultural finance institutions. Supply and demand of agricultural financial services. Servicing the farm and the agricultural business firm. Agricultural finance within the broader financial market in South and Southern Africa. Risk assessment and management. Risk in agricultural finance and mitigation strategies.

## Agribusiness research report: Case study 777 (LEK 777)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Agricultural Economics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

In this module students have to select a specific agribusiness and analyse one key dimension of this business. This dimension could be: marketing programme, supply chain management, strategic plan, market analyses, etc. This component of the course should serve as an opportunity for students to identify prevalent problems in an agribusiness and to devise appropriate solutions. This module should have a practical onslaught with a case study approach. It is envisaged that the student will have to work in close cooperation with companies and professionals in the industry, with the written report as the final deliverable of the the case study.

## International agricultural trade and policy 782 (LEK 782)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BComHons Agricultural Economics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

WTO/GATT-1994 and agricultural related Agreements and Understandings. Regionalism and trade blocks. International trade and economic development. South Africa's agricultural trade policy. Involvement in bilateral and plurilateral agreements. Application of international market analysis tools. International trade and tariff statistics, trade modelling, theory and familiarity in international and regional databases. The module covers the basic tools to understand what determines the flow of goods across countries, i.e. international trade, and applications to a number of topics of current interest, including the debate on globalisation, free trade agreements, the SA Current account and the medium run prospects for exchange rates.

## Advanced rural finance 784 (LEK 784)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BComHons Agricultural Economics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Advanced rural finance. Economic theory underlying rural financial markets and institutions. Economic growth and financial services. Supply and demand of financial services in rural areas. Rural financial institutions and application to South and Southern Africa.

## Agricultural project planning and appraisal 785 (LEK 785)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BAgricHons Rural Development</a> <a href="#">BComHons Agricultural Economics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

- Project planning and priority setting (project concept to rural socioeconomic development, logical framework analysis, research priority setting methods, strategic planning, scenario planning).
- Economic analysis of agricultural development projects through CBA (decision making in public and private sectors, financial, social and economic considerations; identification of Cs and Bs, valuation of Cs and Bs; project assessment criteria.
- Monitoring, evaluation and impact assessment (process and program monitoring, MandE systems; causality, incrementality and the attribution problem; impacts assessment methodology.
- Project management (scheduling, techniques for management, managing risk and uncertainty, monitoring performance
- Welfare economics and political economy considerations (Pareto optimality, compensation tests, efficiency and distribution, politics of CBA, development projects vs. development policies, first vs. second best shadow prices, market failure)

## Agricultural supply chain management 788 (LEK 788)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BComHons Agricultural Economics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Agricultural supply chain analysis. Explore the evolution of supply chain management in the global food industry. Establish the different ways in which supply chain management can provide a source of competitive advantage at industry level and for individual firms. Examine the crossfunctional and multidisciplinary nature of supply chain management as it applies in the global food industry. Introduce the core elements of the theoretical literature on supply chain management and consider applications in different sectors. Provide students with practical experience in applying the principles of supply chain management to the exploitation of a marketing opportunity, using case examples from the fresh produce and meat sectors. Provide students with practical experience of undertaking a supply chain audit, with a view to establishing an appropriate business strategy for a food manufacturing company.

## Agricultural economics 800 (LEK 800)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year

## Applied econometrics 810 (LEK 810)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Environmental Economics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisite.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Econometrics. Linear regression: assumptions of the linear regression model, OLS estimators and properties, hypothesis testing (single and multiple restrictions), forecasting, dummy variables. Violations of the linear model assumptions: multi-colinearity, heteroscedasticity, serial correlation and distributed lag models, (GLS estimators). Advanced topics: Quantitative response models (logit, tobit and probit analysis) co-integration, instrumental variables and 2-stage least squares.



## Production economics 811 (LEK 811)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Environmental Economics (Coursework)</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

This module follows on the final-year module LEK 421 and is taught at the intermediate level and now moves beyond the single input production function to analysis with multi-variable functions. Detailed exposure to production, cost and profit functions, and the duality that exists between these is a core element of the module. The focus will also be on the implications of the properties for the economic behavior of agents. At the end of this module students will have complete competence in algebraically solving for the cost minimisation and profit maximisation problems. Themes covered in the module are: Properties of production functions. Economic theory of cost. Economic Theory of Profits. Duality between the cost and production functions. Duality between the profit and production functions. Applied topics.

## Agricultural policy analysis 812 (LEK 812)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Agricultural policy analysis. The importance and place of agricultural policy. Policy incidence. Design of agricultural policy Instruments. Public choice theory and agricultural policy. Political economy of agricultural policy. Agricultural policy distortions. The role of the media in agricultural and food policy. Seminars.

## Agribusiness marketing management 813 (LEK 813)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week



<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to global food markets. Understanding marketing management in food and agriculture. Consumer behaviour and marketing research. Marketing management. Risks in agricultural commodity marketing. Marketing high-value and agro-processed foods. Food franchising. Food quality, labelling and food safety, intellectual property and geographical indicators. Procurement. Supermarkets, etc. Contract growing and marketing. Case studies.

## Quantitative methods for agricultural and environmental policy 814 (LEK 814)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MPhil Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a> <a href="#">MSc Environmental Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Quantitative models for agricultural and environmental policy. This module will introduce students to applications of discrete choice and linear regression models to agricultural and environmental economics. These include demand systems, production functions and treatment effects/impact assessment models. The second part of the class will focus on mathematical programming and numerical methods including but not limited to multisector models, Input-output and programming models and social accounting matrices for consistent production planning, growth, income distribution and trade policy analysis. Computable general equilibrium models.

## Applied micro-economics 815 (LEK 815)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Environmental Economics (Coursework)</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Economic models and empirical applications in food demand and agricultural production, welfare economics, risk analysis, and industrial organisation as it relates to the agricultural and food industry.

## Partial equilibrium modelling and commodity market analysis 820 (LEK 820)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MPhil Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** EKT 723 or LEK 810

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

This module focuses on the modelling of agricultural commodity markets, price determination, policy and trade. The main objective is to provide the basic theoretical principles and skills for partial-equilibrium model building and an opportunity to apply these skills. The approach will include:

- 1) Economic theory: The theoretical foundations of each modelling component of a typical commodity balance sheet and set of prices will be emphasised in the design and specification of models; price formation and model closure under alternative equilibrium pricing conditions
- 2) Applied research: Advanced steps in modelling will be emphasised. Throughout the module, applied modelling research will be conducted and presented to gain experience with methods discussed in class. The course applies economic theory and quantitative methods to analyse food and agricultural markets, price, trade and policy issues. The module examines problem formulation, model structure, estimation, and model evaluation applied to demand and supply and to trade and policy interventions.

## Advanced agricultural finance and risk management 822 (LEK 822)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Nature and scope of financial management. Investment alternatives and philosophy. Investment returns and risks. Security analysis, valuation and management. Turnaround strategies under financial stress: unbundling and unlocking value. Asset allocation and portfolio management. Influence of mega forces on financial decisions. Risk in agriculture and management thereof. Stochastic efficiency measures and simulation. Dynamic decision models.

## Advanced agribusiness management 823 (LEK 823)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Strategic management process in agribusiness. Strategic direction and leadership. Corporate governance and strategy. Internal environmental analysis for agribusiness strategy. External environmental analysis for an agribusiness. Competitor analysis. Strategy formulation: long-term goals and generic strategies. Strategy formulation: grand and functional strategies. Aligning strategy with industry life cycle. Strategic analysis and choice. Strategic risks. Strategy implementation and change management. Drivers of strategy implementation. Structural drivers and instruments for strategy implementation. Continuous improvement through strategic control and evaluation. Strategic management in not-for-profit organisations. Strategic management concepts for agribusiness in the global marketplace. Scenario planning. Agribusiness case studies.

## Environmental valuation and policy 826 (LEK 826)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MPhil Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a> <a href="#">MSc Environmental Economics (Coursework)</a> <a href="#">MSc Environmental Management (Coursework)</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2





## Module content

Environmental valuation and policy. This module will review the basic principles of microeconomic theory needed for understanding and analysis of environmental problems, introduce market and non-market techniques of valuation of natural resources and environmental services (hedonic pricing, contingent valuation, transport cost, willingness-to-pay, cost-based techniques, etc.), public goods and environmental externalities, property rights regimes and selection of appropriate environmental policy instruments for management of environmental externalities.

## International agricultural trade and policy 827 (LEK 827)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

WTO/GATT-1994 and agricultural-related agreements and understandings. Regionalism and trade blocks. International trade and economic development. South Africa's agricultural trade policy. Involvement in bilateral and multilateral agreements. Application of international market analysis tools. International agricultural trade and tariff statistics, trade modeling, theory and familiarity in international and regional databases. The module covers the basic tools to understand what determines the flow of agricultural goods across countries, i.e. international trade, and applications to a number of topics of current interest, including the debate on globalisation, free trade agreements, the SA Current account and the medium run prospects for exchange rates.

## Forest resource economics and policy 831 (LEK 831)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Forest Management and the Environment (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

The economics of optimal management of cultivated and natural forests. Optimal rotation age and harvesting in timber production. Managing forest for their non-timber services. The multiple ecosystem services of forest and their contributions to human wellbeing. Economic valuation of the services of forest ecosystems. Forest resource rents and their capture and distribution under different property rights regimes. Regulation and taxation of forest users. Designing logging concessions and forest exploitation policies. Forest resource accounting and optimal management of the resource rents. Communities and forests. Case study examples from Sub-Saharan Africa.

## Agricultural science and technology policy 832 (LEK 832)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Registration for at least a master's degree
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

## Module content

The basic definitions and concepts related to agricultural science policy. An overview of the trends in research investment, capacity development in the field of agricultural research, juxtaposed against the regional and international performance in this field. The application of concepts and methodologies used in project planning and management with respect to research evaluation and monitoring. Productivity analysis and its use in evaluating technological change, the determination of the RandD effects in terms of agricultural research and development. Case studies dealing with current topics in agricultural science policy highlighting the application of the methodologies learned.

## Food policy 833 (LEK 833)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MAgric Rural Development</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Registration for at least a master's degree
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week, 1 seminar per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

The concept and interrelated causes of food insecurity (production, markets and socio-economic climate) and the global food economy. Household coping strategies and response to risk and shocks. Household dynamics (including livelihoods, purchasing behaviour and nutrition). Practical tools for programme and policy analysis and targeting. Evaluation of possible programme and policy options and their effectiveness in terms of achieving comprehensive and pro-poor growth.

## Measuring and monitoring food security 834 (LEK 834)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MAgric Rural Development</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Registration for at least a master's degree
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Indicators, scores, indexes, measurement approaches, systems and analysis methods, for food security monitoring and evaluation. Best practice for surveys and qualitative methodologies. Communicating research results and food security information for decision makers. The data included in the module will cover agricultural crop and livestock, food stocks, nutrition, health, agrometeorological, behavioural and sanitation related information.

## Natural resource and environmental economics 880 (LEK 880)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Environmental Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

Natural resource and environmental economics. This module reviews the origins and evolution of natural and environmental resource economics. It describes and studies the application of economic principles and analytical methods for sustainable development of renewable, non-renewable and environmental economics. Examine sources of inefficiency and causes as well as indicators of environmental degradation. The economics of pollution management: Concepts, policies and instruments. Sustainable management of natural and environmental resources. Introduction to natural and environmental resource policy. Economic valuation of natural and environmental resources.

## Institutional economics 882 (LEK 882)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MAgric Rural Development](#)  
[MPhil Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Economics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Institutional and behavioural economics. This module will expose students to the principles of the New Institutional Economics paradigm and how it can be utilized to improve the analysis of agricultural economic and agricultural development problems and issues. Major themes covered are: The agricultural development challenge: stylised features; new institutional economics: distinctive features and concepts; institutions and development: A historical and macro-perspective techno-economic characteristics and agricultural systems and products in poor countries; NIE analysis of markets and markets structures; the State: Political and institutional determinants of agricultural policy; collective action; transactions costs in smallholder agriculture; case studies.

## Agricultural supply chain management 883 (LEK 883)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MPhil Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Agricultural supply chain analysis. Explore the evolution of supply chain management in the global food industry. Establish the different ways in which supply chain management can provide a source of competitive advantage at industry level and for individual firms. Examine the crossfunctional and multidisciplinary nature of supply chain management as it applies in the global food industry. Introduce the core elements of the theoretical literature on supply chain management and consider applications in different sectors. Provide students with practical experience in applying the principles of supply chain management to the exploitation of a marketing opportunity, using case examples from the fresh produce and meat sectors. Provide students with practical experience of undertaking a supply chain audit, with a view to establishing an appropriate business strategy for a food manufacturing company.

## Advanced rural finance 884 (LEK 884)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MAgric Rural Development](#)  
[MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Overview of rural finance: conceptual issues. Role of financial services in economic development. Relationship between financial development and economic growth. Economic theory underlying rural financial markets: market and government failure, imperfect information, transaction costs, agency theory, and pecking order theory. Supply of and demand for financial services in rural areas: theory and measurement issues. Estimating credit demand, supply and constraints. Institutions involved in the provision of rural financial services and innovations in rural finance. Assessing performance of institutions providing rural financial services.

## Agricultural and rural development 885 (LEK 885)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MAgric Rural Development](#)  
[MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Review of theories and principles of growth and development. The role of agriculture in rural and economic development. The economic nature of smallholder agriculture. Problems and policies in agricultural and rural development: issues, options and challenges. Strategies for modernising agriculture (lessons from experience). Poverty dynamics, food and the environmental nexus. Land tenure reforms and policy.

**The economics of natural resources 886 (LEK 886)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MPhil Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Economics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** LEK 810 or equivalent

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

The economics of natural resources. This course will introduce students to the techniques of optimisation overtime, optimal allocation and management of non-renewable and renewable resources, with case studies from Africa. The influence of property rights regimes on optimal natural resource use will also be stressed. The course consists of three main sections: Methods of dynamic optimisation; Theory of exhaustible and renewable resources and growth models; and Property rights and natural resource use with case studies from Africa.

**Selected topics in environmental economics 887 (LEK 887)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MPhil Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** MIE 780 and EKT 713 or equivalents

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo



**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Selected topics in environmental economics. This module will introduce students to various issues of special importance in environmental economics and policy with special emphasis on international dimensions. Examples of key themes to be covered include trade and the environment, trans-boundary externalities, global public goods, multi-lateral environmental agreements, international aid, economic growth and environmental change, poverty and the environment, etc. The main objective of the module is to equip students with the appropriate tools for analysing the linkages between economic development, trade and globalization, poverty, economic and environmental policy and environmental change.

### Research methodology 888 (LEK 888)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MScAgric Agricultural Economics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Research methodology and dissertation design. Research in perspective. The research process. Formulating research problems, hypotheses and objectives. Developing a conceptual framework. Review of literature. Methods and procedures. Data collection, processing and analysis. Developing a good research proposal.

### Dissertation: Agricultural economics 890 (LEK 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MCom Agricultural Economics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo

**Period of presentation** Year

### Mini-dissertation 891 (LEK 891)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 100.00



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### **Mini-dissertation: Agricultural economics 892 (LEK 892)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	90.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Environmental Economics (Coursework)</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### **Mini-dissertation: Environmental economics 893 (LEK 893)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	90.00
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### **Dissertation: Agricultural economics 898 (LEK 898)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	120.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MPhil Agricultural Economics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### **Thesis: Agricultural economics 990 (LEK 990)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Agricultural Economics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.





---

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Agricultural economics 991 (LEK 991)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Agricultural Economics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Agricultural Economics Extension and Rural Develo
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Life assurance 700 (LEW 700)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	40.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Actuarial Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Actuarial Science
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

The following aspects of the operation of a life insurance company are covered: General business environment; products offered; asset shares for life insurance contracts; with-profits surplus distribution; actuarial funding; models; setting of assumptions; aspects of products design; alterations to contracts; development and maintenance; investment; risk management procedures including reinsurance and underwriting; cost of guarantees; policy data checks; capital management and the actuarial control cycle. Modelling and monitoring policy cashflows for purposes of pricing, profit analysis, statutory valuation reserves and ongoing solvency.

### Environmental biophysics 450 (LKM 450)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 134

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------



**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Environmental variables. Quantitative description and measurement of atmospheric environmental variables and water in organisms. Mass and energy fluxes. Quantitative description of energy fluxes in organisms' environments. Energy balances of animals and plant communities will be derived.

## Environmental biophysics 750 (LKM 750)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgricHons Crop Science](#)  
[BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Environmental variables. Quantitative description and measurements of atmospheric environmental variables and water in organisms. Mass and energy fluxes. Quantitative description of energy fluxes in organisms' environments. Energy balances of animals and plant communities will be derived.

## Linear models 710 (LMO 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Financial Engineering](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 311, WST 312, WST 321

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Projection matrices and sums of squares of linear sets. Estimation and the Gauss-Markov theorem. Generalised t- and F- tests.

## Linear models 720 (LMO 720)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Financial Engineering](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** LMO 710

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

The singular normal distribution. Distributions of quadratic forms. The general linear model. Multiple comparisons. Analysis of covariance. Generalised linear models. Analysis of categorical data.

## Language and study skills 110 (LST 110)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00



## Programmes

BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology  
BVSc  
BVetNurs

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Unit for Academic Literacy

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

The module aims to equip students with the ability to cope with the reading and writing demands of scientific disciplines.



## Language, life and study skills 133 (LST 133)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Admission into BSc Four-year programme and BCom Four-year programme
<b>Contact time</b>	4 discussion classes per week, Foundation Course
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Unit for Academic Literacy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

In this module students use different information and time management strategies, build academic vocabulary, revise basic grammar concepts and dictionary skills, examine learning styles, memory and note-taking techniques, practise academic reading skills and explore basic research and referencing techniques, learn how to use discourse markers and construct definitions, and are introduced to paragraph writing. The work is set in the context of the students' field of study.

## Language, life and study skills 143 (LST 143)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	LST 133
<b>Contact time</b>	4 discussion classes per week, Foundation Course
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Unit for Academic Literacy
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

In this module students learn how to interpret and use visual literacy conventions. Students write more advance paragraphs, and also learn how to structure academic writing, how to refine their use of discourse markers and referencing techniques and how to structure their own academic arguments. Students' writing is expected to be rational, clear and concise. As a final assignment all aspects of the LST 133 and LST 143 modules are combined in a research assignment. In this project, students work in writing teams to produce a chapter on a career and to present an oral presentation of aspects of the chapter. The work is set in the context of the students' field of study.

## Introduction to microbiology 161 (MBY 161)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

### Programmes

- BSc Biochemistry
- BSc Biological Sciences
- BSc Biotechnology
- BSc Chemistry
- BSc Computer Science
- BSc Culinary Science
- BSc Ecology
- BSc Entomology
- BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences
- BSc Food Science
- BSc Genetics
- BSc Human Genetics
- BSc Human Physiology
- BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
- BSc Medical Sciences
- BSc Microbiology
- BSc Nutrition
- BSc Plant Science
- BSc Zoology
- BScAgric Animal Science
- BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences
- BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly tutorials

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

The module will introduce the student to the field of Microbiology. Basic Microbiological aspects that will be covered include introduction into the diversity of the microbial world (bacteria, archaea, eukaryotic microorganisms and viruses), basic principles of cell structure and function, microbial nutrition and microbial growth and growth control. Applications in Microbiology will be illustrated by specific examples i.e. bioremediation, animal-microbial symbiosis, plant-microbial symbiosis and the use of microorganisms in industrial microbiology. Wastewater treatment, microbial diseases and food will be introduced using specific examples.

## Bacteriology 251 (MBY 251)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** MBY 161 GS

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Growth, replication and survival of bacteria, Energy sources, harvesting from light versus oxidation, regulation of catabolic pathways, chemotaxis. Nitrogen metabolism, iron-scavenging. Alternative electron acceptors: denitrification, sulphate reduction, methanogenesis. Bacterial evolution, systematic and genomics. Biodiversity; bacteria occurring in the natural environment (soil, water and air), associated with humans, animals, plants, and those of importance in foods and in the water industry.

## Mycology 261 (MBY 261)

**Qualification** Undergraduate



**Module credits** 12.00

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Programmes**

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** MBY 161 GS

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, Fortnightly practicals/tutorials

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Organisation and molecular architecture of fungal thalli, chemistry of the fungal cell. Chemical and physiological requirements for growth and nutrient acquisition. Mating and meiosis; spore development; spore dormancy, dispersal and germination. Fungi as saprobes in soil, air, plant, aquatic and marine ecosystems; role of fungi as decomposers and in the deterioration of materials; fungi as predators and parasites; mycoses, mycetisms and mycotoxicoses; fungi as symbionts of plants, insects and animals. Applications of fungi in biotechnology.

**Food microbiology 262 (MBY 262)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology

**Programmes**

**Prerequisites** MBY 251 GS.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week





**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Primary sources of microorganisms in food. Factors affecting the growth and survival of microorganisms in food. Microbial quality, spoilage and safety of food. Different organisms involved, their isolation, screening and detection. Conventional approaches, alternative methods rapid methods. Food fermentations: fermentation types, principles and organisms involved.

## Virology 351 (MBY 351)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

[BSc Biochemistry](#)  
[BSc Biotechnology](#)  
[BSc Genetics](#)  
[BSc Human Genetics](#)  
[BSc Human Physiology](#)  
[BSc Microbiology](#)  
[BSc Plant Science](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Prerequisites** MBY 251 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Introduction to the viruses as a unique kingdom inclusive of their different hosts, especially bacteria, animals and plants; RNA and DNA viruses; viroids, tumour viruses and oncogenes, mechanisms of replication, transcription and protein synthesis; effect on hosts; viral immunology; evolution of viruses.

## Bacterial genetics 355 (MBY 355)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

[BSc Biochemistry](#)  
[BSc Biotechnology](#)  
[BSc Genetics](#)  
[BSc Human Genetics](#)  
[BSc Human Physiology](#)  
[BSc Microbiology](#)  
[BSc Plant Science](#)



**Prerequisites** MBY 251 GS, GTS 251 GS and GTS 261 GS.

**Contact time** 1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

DNA replication and replication control. DNA recombination. DNA damage and repair. Genetics of bacteriophages, plasmids and transposons. Bacterial gene expression control at the transcriptional, translational and post-translational levels. Global regulation and compartmentalisation.

## Genetic manipulation of microbes 364 (MBY 364)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Prerequisites** MBY 251 and GTS 251

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Isolation of clonable DNA (genomic libraries, cDNA synthesis) cloning vectors (plasmids, bacteriophages, cosmids) plasmid incompatibility and control of copy number. Ligation of DNA fragments, modification of DNA end and different ligation strategies. Direct and indirect methods for the identification of recombinant organisms. Characterization (polymerase chain reaction, nucleic acid sequencing) and mutagenesis of cloned DNA fragments. Gene expression in Gram negative (*E.coli*) Gram positive (*B.subtilis*) and yeast cells (*S.cerevisiae*). Use of *Agrobacterium* and baculoviruses for gene expression in plant and insect cells respectively. Applications in protein engineering, diagnostics and synthesis of useful products.

## Microbe interactions 365 (MBY 365)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biochemistry BSc Biotechnology BSc Genetics BSc Human Genetics BSc Human Physiology BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science
-------------------	--

**Prerequisites** MBY 251 and MBY 355 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical/tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Interactions between microbes and their abiotic environment; microbial interaction with other strains of the same and other species; microbial interactions across kingdoms; pathogenic interactions between microbes and plant or animal hosts; mutualistic interactions between microbes and their hosts; introduction to systems biology.

### Research project 756 (MBY 756)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 50.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Microbiology and Plant Pathology

**Period of presentation** Year

#### Module content

Research undertaken in a specific topical area in microbiology.

### Dissertation: Microbiology 890 (MBY 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** MSc Microbiology

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year



## Thesis: Microbiology 990 (MBY 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Microbiology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Mediation, conciliation, arbitration 810 (MCA 810)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	30.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Procedural Law
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

The topics covered include:

- Mediation practice, techniques, theory.
- Conciliation practice, techniques, theory.
- Arbitration practice, techniques, theory
- Practical case studies and practical training

## Mathematics and mathematical literacy education 730 (MCE 730)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BEdHons Assessment and Quality Assurance in Education and Training</a> <a href="#">BEdHons Mathematics Education</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Science Mathematics and Technology Education



**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Perspectives in the teaching and learning of mathematics. This module will focus on contemporary issues in mathematics education such as: Types of mathematical knowledge in teacher education; learning theories in mathematics education; use of technology in the teaching of mathematics; classroom research; gender; language; culture (Ethno mathematics). Mathematics in context: prospects and challenges. This module also focuses on the role of mathematics in different contexts (including vocational and real life contexts): Nature of mathematics – mathematics as a human activity; rationale for learning mathematics; the theory of realistic mathematics education; content-driven and context-driven approach in mathematics; mathematical literacy; knowledge ‘transfer’: some challenges – school mathematics vs real world.

### Research methods 751 (MCP 751)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Biotechnology](#)  
[BScHons Microbiology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 5 practicals per week, 7 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

The module provides students with planning, data handling, writing, and presentation skills required for microbiological research. In addition, students are provided with hands-on experience in the advanced techniques utilised in research and analysis. Ethical and philosophical issues in the broader field of Microbiology and Plant Pathology are also addressed.

### Seminar course 752 (MCP 752)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Microbiology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 seminars per week, 3 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

Students are guided to collect relevant literature from disparate papers in the broader field of Microbiology and Plant Pathology and to condense and collate this into a written seminar, which is also presented verbally.

### Trends in microbiology 753 (MCP 753)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Microbiology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 seminars per week, 3 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Discussions and essays focusing on recent advances in the broader field of Microbiology and Plant Pathology, as well as contextualising these developments within the broader framework of the Biosciences and its role in modern society.

### Research project and literature study 754 (MCP 754)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 60.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Biotechnology](#)  
[BScHons Microbiology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

The module includes both practical and theoretical components. In addition to an individual research project with well-defined limits that is undertaken under the guidance of a lecturer, the module also acquaint the student with the theoretical aspects relevant to a specific research topic. The research project is thus preceded by the presentation of an in-depth review of the relevant literature, and the project is concluded with a progress report, presented in the format of a short publication and an oral presentation.

### Multivariate techniques 720 (MET 720)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00



---

<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BComHons Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BScHons Statistics and Data Science</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	STK 310 and STK 320. This prerequisite cannot be replaced with any WST modules.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Point and Interval estimation. Sampling distributions, central limit theorem, simulations and Bootstrap. Bayesian inference, posterior distribution, Hypotheses testing using confidence intervals, ratio tests, simulated null distributions and power function.

### Medical physics 700 (MFK 700)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Medical physics 800 (MFK 800)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	36.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MMed Radiological Diagnostics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Medical physics 801 (MFK 801)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	36.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MMed Radiation Oncology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.



---

<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### People and their environment 112 (MGW 112)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	6.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BChD MBChB
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Sociology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

This module comprises basic psychology and sociology concepts relevant to Medicine, and to Dentistry, in the case of BChD students.

Basic psychiatric concepts are also taught.

### Molecular and cell biology 111 (MLB 111)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00





## Programmes

BChD  
BDietetics  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Culinary Science  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Nutrition  
BSc Physics  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology  
BVSc  
MBChB

## Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

## Prerequisites

A candidate who has passed Mathematics with at least 60% in the Grade 12 examination

## Contact time

1 practical/tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week

## Language of tuition

Module is presented in English

## Department

Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

## Period of presentation

Semester 1

## Module content

Introduction to the molecular structure and function of the cell. Basic chemistry of the cell. Structure and composition of prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells. Ultrastructure and function of cellular organelles, membranes and the cytoskeleton. General principles of energy, enzymes and cell metabolism. Selected processes, e.g. glycolysis, respiration and/or photosynthesis. Introduction to molecular genetics: DNA structure and replication, transcription, translation. Cell growth and cell division.



## Molecular and cell biology 133 (MLB 133)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** Admission to the relevant programme.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, Fortnightly discussions, Fortnightly practicals, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Introduction to life science and life on earth, including the importance and relevance of the Sustainable Development Goals; the scientific method, principles of microscopy, introduction to the molecular structure and function of the cell. Basic chemistry of the cell. Structure and composition of prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells.

## Molecular and cell biology 143 (MLB 143)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** Admission to the relevant programme.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, Fortnightly discussions, Fortnightly practicals, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Ultrastructure and function of cellular organelles, membranes and the cytoskeleton. General principles of energy, enzymes and cell metabolism including selected cellular.



## Molecular and cell biology 153 (MLB 153)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** MLB 143

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals/tutorials per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Cell growth and cell division, Mendelian and human genetics, principles of molecular genetics, principles of recombinant DNA technology and its application.

## Molecular and cellular biology 721 (MLB 721)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Biochemistry](#)  
[BScHons Bioinformatics](#)  
[BScHons Biotechnology](#)  
[BScHons Genetics](#)  
[BScHons Microbiology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Principles and applications of recombinant DNA, and other novel molecular and genomics technologies, to address questions in the biological sciences and/or biotechnology. Strong emphasis is placed on the principles of research planning, including identifying suitable research objectives, formulating a research strategy and understanding the relevance and feasibility of research. The module is assessed by means of a research project proposal, conceived and formulated by each student. The proposal must focus on the use of molecular technologies in addressing realistic questions in biology and/or biotechnology. There is also an oral defense of the project proposal.

This module is jointly presented in the Departments of Biochemistry, Genetics and Microbiology.



### Dissertation: Medical plant science 890 (MPS 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Medicinal Plant Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Medicinal plant science 990 (MPS 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Medicinal Plant Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Medical terminology 180 (MTL 180)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BA Audiology</a> <a href="#">BA Speech-Language Pathology</a> <a href="#">BChD</a> <a href="#">BNurs</a> <a href="#">BOccTher</a> <a href="#">BRad in Diagnostics</a> <a href="#">BSportSci</a> <a href="#">BVSc</a> <a href="#">MBChB</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Health Sciences Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences Faculty of Veterinary Science
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Ancient and Modern Languages and Cultures
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 and Semester 2



## Module content

The acquisition of a basic medical orientated vocabulary compiled from Latin and Greek stem forms combined with prefixes and suffixes derived from those languages. The manner in which the meanings of medical terms can be determined by analysing the terms into their recognisable meaningful constituent parts, is taught and exercised. The functional use of medical terms in context as practical outcome of terminological application is continually attended to.

## Multivariate analysis 710 (MVA 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Financial Engineering](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 311, WST 312, WST 321

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Matrix algebra. Some multivariate measures. Visualising multivariate data. Multivariate distributions. Samples from multivariate normal populations. The Wishart distribution. Hotelling's  $T^2$  statistic. Inferences about mean vectors.

## Multivariate analysis 720 (MVA 720)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Financial Engineering](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** MVA 710

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Discriminant analysis and classification. Principal component analysis. The biplot. Multidimensional scaling. Factor analysis. Probabilistic clustering.

## Statistical and machine learning 880 (MVA 880)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [MCom Advanced Data Analytics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Advanced Data Analytics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** Admission to the relevant programme.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

## Module content

Unsupervised learning: deterministic clustering, model-based clustering, latent class and behavioural analytics, dimension reduction. Natural language processing and topic modelling; recommender systems. Organisation of data, data wrangling and data structure exploration.

## Mini-dissertation: eScience 800 (NEP 800)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 90.00

**Programmes** [MSc eScience \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** Completion of the coursework programme.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

This is the research component of the MSc (eScience) degree and comprises a mini-dissertation which develops the research skills and bridges the gap between theory and practice.

## Research methods and capstone project in data science 801 (NEP 801)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc eScience \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Scientific writing styles; layouts for assignments, projects, theses or publications; research methodologies; scientific assignments; integration of all the aforementioned content items for a capstone project in data science.

## Data privacy and ethics 802 (NEP 802)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc eScience \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Technical processes of data collection, storage, exchange and access; Ethical aspects of data management; Legal and regulatory frameworks in South Africa and in relevant jurisdictions; Data policies; Data privacy; Data ownership; Legal liabilities of analytical decisions and discrimination; and the Technical and algorithmic approaches to enhance data privacy, and relevant case studies.

## Adaptive computation and machine learning 803 (NEP 803)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc eScience \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2



## Module content

Introduction: Basic concepts. Supervised learning setup: Least means squares, logistic regression, perceptron, exponential family, generative learning algorithms, Gaussian discriminant analysis, naïve Bayes, support vector machines, model selection and feature selection. Learning theory: bias/variance tradeoff, union and Chernoff/Hoeffding bounds, VC dimension, worst case (online) learning. Unsupervised learning: clustering, k-means, expectation maximisation, mixture of Gaussians, factor analysis, principal components analysis, independent components analysis. Reinforcement learning and control: Markov decision processes, Bellman equations, value iteration and policy iteration, Q-learning, value function approximation, policy search, reinforce, partially observable Markov decision problems.

## Data visualisation and exploration 804 (NEP 804)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc eScience (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

## Module content

Data and image models; visualisation attributes (colour) and design (layout); exploratory data analysis; interactive data visualisation; multidimensional data; graphical perception; visualisation software (Python & R); and types of visualisation (animation, networks and text).

## Large-scale computing systems and scientific computing 805 (NEP 805)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc eScience (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

## Module content

Introduction to scientific computing architectures in Python, introduction to distributed systems, introduction to distributed databases, introduction to parallelism, large-data computation and storage models, introduction to well-known distributed systems architectures, and programming large-data applications on open-source infrastructures for data processing and storage systems.

## Mathematical foundations of data science 806 (NEP 806)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------





---

<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc eScience (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

High-dimensional space, best-fit subspaces and singular value decomposition, random walks and Markov chains, statistical machine learning, clustering, random graphs, topic models, matrix factorisation, hidden Markov models, graphical models, wavelets, and sparse representations.

### Special topics in data science 807 (NEP 807)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc eScience (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

Specialised and applied concepts and trends in data science.

### Statistical foundations of data science 808 (NEP 808)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc eScience (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

An understanding of multivariate statistics, hypothesis testing and confidence intervals. The ability to model data using well-known statistical distributions as well as the ability to handle data that is both continuous and categorical. The ability to perform statistical modelling including multivariate linear regression and adjust for multiple hypotheses. Forecasting, extrapolation, prediction and modelling using statistical methods. Bayesian statistics, an understanding of bootstrapping and Monte Carlo simulation.



## Large-scale optimisation for data science 809 (NEP 809)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc eScience (Coursework)</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to convex optimisation, subgradient methods, decomposition and distributed optimisation, proximal and operator splitting methods, conjugate gradients, and nonconvex problems.

## Ecosystems and wildlife management 311 (NLB 311)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	4.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	6 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

NLB 311 and NLB 312 are presented over a period of 21 days as one integrated module. Both modules are aimed at students of wildlife management and veterinary sciences. These study programmes offer an exciting, hands-on, in-depth educational experience, taking students behind the scenes in the wildlife field in Southern Africa.

The training takes part during a camping and lodging expedition. Students interact with wildlife biologists, rangers, veterinarians and researchers working in the field, giving them an insight into the successes and problems associated with conservation from both an ecological and veterinary perspective. Participants also meet and learn from pioneers in game capture and those actively involved in the field of wildlife veterinary science on a day-to-day basis. The students also participate in actual game capture operations. Students also study and observe the role that veterinarians play at a wildlife rehabilitation centre, a reptile park and a rare-species breeding ranch.

Module content

- Wildlife management techniques
- Sustainable resource utilization
- Ecosystem and biodiversity conservation
- Reserve and resort management
- African local community cultures and conservation perspectives
- Capture and care of wild animals
- Wildlife disease management
- Population dynamics

## Participatory nature conservation 312 (NLB 312)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 4.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 6 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

NLB 311 and NLB 312 are presented over a period of 21 days as one integrated module. Both modules are aimed at students of wildlife management and veterinary sciences. These study programs offer an exciting, hands-on, in-depth educational experience, taking students behind the scenes in the wildlife field in Southern Africa.

The training takes part during a camping and lodging expedition. Students interact with wildlife biologists, rangers, veterinarians and researchers working in the field, giving them an insight into the successes and problems associated with conservation from both an ecological and veterinary perspective. Participants also meet and learn from pioneers in game capture and those actively involved in the field of wildlife veterinary science on a day-to-day basis. The students also participate in actual game capture operations. Students also study and observe the role that veterinarians play at a wildlife rehabilitation centre, a reptile park and a rare-species breeding ranch.

### Module content

- Wildlife management techniques
- Sustainable resource utilization
- Ecosystem and biodiversity conservation
- Reserve and resort management
- African local community cultures and conservation perspectives
- Capture and care of wild animals
- Wildlife disease management
- Population dynamics

## Wildlife ecology 780 (NLB 780)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Wildlife Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Research in wildlife management focuses on gaining a better understanding of patterns of animal distribution, abundance, and diversity, and implementation of scientifically sound strategies for sustainable management and conservation of wildlife populations. This module will develop an in-depth understanding of core wildlife management concepts with a focus on population characteristics, the density concept, mortality, natality, life tables, population growth, harvesting quotas, population regulation, population structure, dispersal, dispersion, aggregation, isolation and territoriality, competition and predator-prey relationships. This module will also explore new ideas, and advanced research methods to evaluate ecological data in the context of wildlife ecology.



## Wildlife management principles and techniques 781 (NLB 781)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Wildlife Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per month, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

The most important techniques applicable to wildlife management and wildlife research are discussed. The principles, applications and restrictions of the following are discussed amongst others: wildlife counts, age determination, age and sex ratios, translocation of animals, chemical immobilisation, mechanical capture techniques, transport of wildlife, land-use, predator control and predator-prey studies.

## Wildlife nutrition 782 (NLB 782)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Wildlife Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals, 3 Block weeks
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Ensuring essential prior knowledge of the fundamentals of nutrition through peer-assisted learning strategies. The digestive functioning of selected wild ruminant and non-ruminant herbivores is discussed as well as their nutrient requirements and deficiencies that commonly occur. The spatial scaling of nutrients in vegetation is explained, followed by which foraging strategies large African herbivores of varying body sizes use to adapt to spatial and temporal nutrient heterogeneity, including optimal foraging theory.

## Parasites, diseases and the capture of wildlife animals 783 (NLB 783)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Wildlife Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Parasites, diseases and capture of wild animals. An overview of veterinary aspects with reference to important parasites and diseases of wild animals. The capture of wildlife and the stress-related consequences of the capture of wild animals. The module content includes a discussion of all the different chemicals used to immobilise wild animals, darting, and handling of wild animals under sedation. The internal and external parasites, most important contagious wildlife diseases and the prevention of capture related diseases are discussed.

## Research project 795 (NLB 795)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 50.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Wildlife Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

A research protocol, field work and project report based on an ecological or wildlife management topic. This module will introduce aspects of scientific communication, developing skills in communication, writing and public presentation. The module addresses the Life on Land Sustainable Development Goal.

## Wildlife management (Exam) 801 (NLB 801)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 1.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

## Wildlife ecology 810 (NLB 810)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [MSc Wildlife Health, Ecology and Management \(Coursework\)](#)

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

A module on plant ecology, veld management, animal ecology and plant and animal interactions. The students will gain a solid grounding and in-depth understanding of ecological theory and ecological management to maintain and improve ecosystem health. This module will provide a broad view, illustrating a wide variety of different ecosystem examples and will include in-field training in areas around HHWS.

### Dissertation: Wildlife management 890 (NLB 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Wildlife Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Wildlife management 990 (NLB 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Wildlife Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Research methodology 814 (NMN 814)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

The aim of this module is to analyse the core concepts in social research and to provide a conceptual framework of the research process. It includes the following topics: a conceptual model of social science research, the logic of the research process, the different forms of scientific reasoning, and the stages in the research process being the formulation of the research problem, research design, conceptualisation, operationalisation, sampling, data-collection and data-analysis.

## Educational research methodology 745 (NMQ 745)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling](#)

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Science Mathematics and Technology Education

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

The nature of educational enquiry: contexts of research, research ethics, truth, rationality, subjectivity and objectivity; Quantitative and qualitative modes of enquiry, research designs and data collection techniques. Various approaches to qualitative research including case study research, historical research, ethnographic research, and action research. Basic concepts and principles of quantitative research. Statistical techniques in the educational research process. Survey methodology and questionnaire design. Classification and graphical representation of data. Descriptive measures. Statistical inference. Data-processing procedures. Parametric versus non-parametric tests. Some test statistics (e.g. F-Test and T-test). Formulating a research methodology for a limited project.

## Research project 780 (NPN 780)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Actuarial Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Actuarial Science

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

The research project is compulsory. A detailed project proposal should be submitted to the head of department by a prescribed date for approval, as described in the departmental document in this regard.





### Nutritional assessment 313 (NTA 313)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	30.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BDietetics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	3rd-year status
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Human Nutrition
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Evaluation of nutritional status.

Nutrition care process, overview of evaluation of nutrition status. Scientific principles of evaluation of nutrition status; nutrition screening; clinical, anthropometric, biochemical and dietary evaluation of nutrition status. Practice training: practising of theoretical principles of nutrition status evaluation in hospital/clinic and/or skills laboratory.

### Nutritional assessment 314 (NTA 314)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	22.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Nutrition</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Third-year status
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Human Nutrition
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Evaluation of nutritional assessment.

Nutrition care process; overview of evaluation of nutritional status. Scientific principles of evaluation of nutritional status; nutritional screening; clinical, biochemical and dietary evaluation of nutritional status.

### Design principles 111 (OBG 111)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	7.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a> <a href="#">BConSci Food Retail Management</a> <a href="#">BConSci Hospitality Management</a>



<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

An introduction to the elements and principles of design as is applicable to interior and clothing design and food preparation. Colour theory.

## Business management 114 (OBS 114)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Accounting Sciences  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Econometrics  
BCom Economics  
BCom Financial Sciences  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Investment Management  
BCom Law  
BCom Marketing Management  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BIS Information Science  
BIT Information Systems  
BSW  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Mathematics  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism  
BSocSci Industrial Sociology and Labour Studies

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** May not be included in the same curriculum as OBS 155



**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Business Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The entrepreneurial mind-set; managers and managing; values, attitudes, emotions, and culture: the manager as a person; ethics and social responsibility; decision making; leadership and responsible leadership; effective groups and teams; managing organizational structure and culture inclusive of the different functions of a generic organisation and how they interact (marketing; finance; operations; human resources and general management); contextualising Sustainable Development Goals (SDG) in each of the topics.

## Business management 124 (OBS 124)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Economics  
BCom Financial Sciences  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Law  
BCom Marketing Management  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BIS Information Science  
BIT Information Systems  
BSW  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSocSci Heritage and Cultural Tourism  
BSocSci Industrial Sociology and Labour Studies

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** Admission to the examination in OBS 114

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Business Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Value chain management: functional strategies for competitive advantage; human resource management; managing diverse employees in a multicultural environment; motivation and performance; using advanced information technology to increase performance; production and operations management; financial management; corporate entrepreneurship.

**Business management 133 (OBS 133)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** Only available to BCom (Four-year programme) students

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Business Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

**Module content**

Introduction to Business Management as a science, the environment in which the enterprise operates, the field of business, the mission and goals of an enterprise, management and entrepreneurship. The choice of a form of enterprise, the choice of products and/or services, profit and cost planning for different sizes of operating units, the choice of location, the nature of production processes and the layout of the plant or operating unit.

**Business management 143 (OBS 143)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** OBS 133; Only available to BCom (Four-year programme) students

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Business Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Introduction to and overview of general management, especially regarding the five management tasks, strategic management, contemporary developments and management issues, financial management, marketing, public relations. (Note: For marketing students, marketing is replaced by financial management, and public relations by small business management.)

Introduction to and overview of the value chain model, management of the input, management of the purchasing function, management of the transformation process with specific reference to production and operations management, human resources management, and information management; corporate governance and black economic empowerment (BEE).

## Business management 210 (OBS 210)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Law  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BIS Information Science  
BIT Information Systems  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** OBS 114 or 124 with admission to the examination in the other

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Business Management

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Logistics management

The role of logistics in an enterprise; definition and scope of customer service; electronic and other logistics information systems; inventory management; materials management with special reference to Japanese systems; management of the supply chain. Methods of transport and transport costs; types and costs of warehousing; electronic aids in materials handling; cost and price determination of purchases; organising for logistics management; methods for improving logistics performance.



## Business management 220 (OBS 220)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BCom BCom Agribusiness Management BCom Business Management BCom Human Resource Management BCom Informatics Information Systems BCom Law BCom Marketing Management BCom Supply Chain Management BConSci Clothing Retail Management BConSci Hospitality Management BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching BIS Information Science BIT Information Systems BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	OBS 114 or 124 with admission to the examination in the other. Students from other Faculties are required to have 50% for Mathematics in Grade 12.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Business Management
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Project management and negotiations:

Introduction Project management concepts; needs identification; the project, the project manager and the project team; types of project organisations; project communication and documentation. Planning and control: planning, scheduling and schedule control of projects; resource considerations and allocations; cost planning and performance evaluation.

Negotiation and collective bargaining: The nature of negotiation; preparation for negotiation; negotiating for purposes of climate creation; persuasive communication; handling conflict and aggression; specialised negotiation and collective bargaining in the South African context.

## Design communication 100 (OKU 100)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	6.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 studio hour per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Architecture

**Period of presentation** Year

**Module content**

Visual communication, digital visualisation and representation tools, basic computer aided space modelling and drawing conventions to support design and construction projects.

**Weed science 413 (OKW 413)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Prerequisites** PLG 251

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Identification of important weeds of crops, gardens and recreational areas. Identification of alien invasive and indigenous encroaching species. Impacts of weeds on desirable vegetation. Interference between crop and weed species through allelopathy and competition phenomena. Role of weeds in plant-biodiversity and crop production potential. Weeds in annual and perennial crop situations. Weed biology and ecology. Mechanical, cultural, biological and chemical weed management practices. Integrated weed management. Herbicide formulations and application techniques. Modes of action of herbicides, and their behaviour and fate in the environment.

**Environmental change 881 (OMS 881)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MA Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Environmental Management \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Forest Management and the Environment \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Water Resource Management \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

This module involves the study of the causes and consequences of environmental change from multidisciplinary perspectives. A focus of this course is human environmental interactions. Past processes leading to environmental change will also be discussed. In a given period, the following will be investigated: principles of environmental change, causes and consequences of environmental change, Global warming and climate change: causes and impacts of climate change on natural resources; water, forests, biodiversity, land use and land cover change, environmental/Climate change and infectious disease, human dimensions of global change and Climate change political responses including the Kyoto protocol. Mitigation and adaptation strategies to climate change and effects of Climate change on sustainable development.

## Research report: Environment and society 895 (OMS 895)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

## Experiential training in industry 400 (OPI 400)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 5.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)

**Prerequisites** Documentation of work experience as required for years 1-3

**Contact time** 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2





## Module content

During the first to fourth years of study students must complete a total of 600 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills, participate in community engagement and provide service learning. This is equal to 3 weeks x40 hours (120 hours) per year for the first to third year and 6 weeks x 40 hours in the fourth year, including the following:

- event management for Hospitality Management students, according to requirements as determined by the head of department;
- or
- a culinary science project application for Culinary Science students, according to requirements as determined by the head of department.

These 'credits' comprise 50 learning hours and the balance of the hours include work-related experience evidence of experiential training, service learning and community engagement during the four years of the degree programme and must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred.

Please note: Various practical and industry-interaction activities support the theoretical component of VDS 322, 413, 414, 417, 424, 427 and FST 412 (as applicable to the respective Consumer Science programmes) and take place after hours to develop practical and industry skills.

## Experiential training in industry 480 (OPI 480)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	6.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

Experiential training in the industry: During the 4 years of study, during holidays, weekends and after hours, students must complete a total of 480 hours experiential training in the industry to develop practical and occupational skills. This is equal to 3 weeks x 40 hours (120 hours) per year, according to requirements as determine by the head of department. This training must be successfully completed together with a complete portfolio before the degree will be conferred.

## Production physiology 700 (PFS 700)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	22.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Specialised study of physiological and anatomical factors that influence growth, development, production and product quality. Stress and intensification effects on product quality. Animal science pharmacology. (Theoretical components include VKF 411 and VSX 420.)

## Production physiology 801 (PFS 801)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Specialised study of physiological and anatomical factors that influence growth, development, reproduction and production. Stress and intensification effects on the metabolism of animals. The mechanisms of disease and erosion losses and the modification of reproduction and growth. Specific topics are studied by way of literature, seminars, discussions and research assignments.

## Soil-water relationship and irrigation 350 (PGW 350)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes** [BSc Geology](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** GKD 250

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Quantitative description and measurement of soil water content and potential as well as saturated and unsaturated hydraulic conductivity. Modelling water flow in soil (Darcy's law, Richards's equation). Infiltration, redistribution, evaporation, runoff and percolation. Irrigation in South Africa. Modelling and managing the soil water balance. Plant water consumption and the soil-plant-atmosphere continuum. Irrigation scheduling (soil, plant and atmosphere approaches). Managing poor quality water. Irrigation systems. The module includes a field trip to an irrigation scheme.



## Seminar 400 (PGW 400)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Plant Pathology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 3 seminars per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Basic principles of the scientific process. Literature accessing and article assessment. Manuscript preparation and presentation of seminars. Basic instruction on the use of visual aids, etc. for effective oral presentations.

## Research project in crop science 701 (PGW 701)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	30.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgricHons Crop Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Students will design, execute and write up a research project in any one of the subdisciplines of Crop science, eg Agronomy, Horticultural science or Pasture science.

## Scientific communication 702 (PGW 702)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgricHons Crop Science</a> <a href="#">BScHons Soil Science Environmental Soil Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 2 seminars
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences



**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Principles of the scientific process. Literature accessing and article assessment. Manuscript preparation and presentation of seminars. Use of visual aids.

## First course in physics 114 (PHY 114)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Geography  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

### Prerequisites

A candidate must have passed Mathematics and Physical Science with at least 60% in the Grade 12 examination

### Contact time

1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

### Language of tuition

Module is presented in English

### Department

Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

SI-units. Significant figures. Waves: intensity, superposition, interference, standing waves, resonance, beats, Doppler. Geometrical optics: Reflection, refraction, mirrors, thin lenses, instruments. Physical optics: Young-interference, coherence, diffraction, polarisation. Hydrostatics and dynamics: density, pressure, Archimedes' principle, continuity, Bernoulli. Heat: temperature, specific heat, expansion, heat transfer. Vectors. Kinematics of a point: Relative, projectile, and circular motion. Dynamics: Newton's laws, friction. Work: point masses, gasses (ideal gas law), gravitation, spring, power. Kinetic energy: Conservative forces, gravitation, spring. Conservation of energy. Conservation of momentum. Impulse and collisions. System of particles: Centre of mass, Newton's laws. Rotation: torque, conservation of angular momentum, equilibrium, centre of gravity.

## First course in physics 124 (PHY 124)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Geography  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Programmes**

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 114 GS and PHY 114 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

**Module content**

Simple harmonic motion and pendulums. Coulomb's law. Electric field: dipoles, Gauss' law. Electric potential. Capacitance. Electric currents: resistance, resistivity, Ohm's law, energy, power, emf, RC-circuits. Magnetic Field: Hall-effect, Bio-Savart. Faraday's and Lenz's laws. Oscillations: LR-circuits. Alternating current: RLC-circuits, power, transformers. Introductory concepts to modern physics. Nuclear physics: Radioactivity.

**Physics for biology students 131 (PHY 131)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00



<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BChD          BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching          BPhysio          BSc Biochemistry          BSc Biological Sciences          BSc Biotechnology          BSc Computer Science          BSc Ecology          BSc Entomology          BSc Food Science          BSc Genetics          BSc Human Genetics          BSc Human Physiology          BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology          BSc Medical Sciences          BSc Microbiology          BSc Nutrition          BSc Plant Science          BSc Zoology          BScAgric Animal Science          BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences          BScAgric Plant Pathology          BSportSci          BVSc          MBChB</p>
-------------------	--

<b>Service modules</b>	<p>Faculty of Education          Faculty of Health Sciences          Faculty of Veterinary Science</p>
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	A candidate must have passed Mathematics with at least 60% in the Grade 12 examination
----------------------	--

<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Physics
-------------------	---------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------

**Module content**

Units, vectors, one dimensional kinematics, dynamics, work, equilibrium, sound, liquids, heat, thermodynamic processes, electric potential and capacitance, direct current and alternating current, optics, modern physics, radio activity.

**Physics 133 (PHY 133)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
-----------------------	------

<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences          BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences          BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences</p>
-------------------	--



**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** Admission to the relevant programme.

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week,  
Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Heat: temperature and scales, work, energy and heat, calorimetry, specific heat, expansion, heat transfer. Measurements: SI-units, measuring error and uncertainty, (graphs), significant figures, mathematical modelling. One-dimensional kinematics. Geometrical optics: reflection, refraction, dispersion, mirrors, thin lenses.

## General physics 141 (PHY 141)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** Examination entrance to (PHY 131) or (PHY 154) in the previous semester.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 2 tutorials per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*This is an anti-semester presentation of the module PHY 131 General Physics 131. Refer to PHY 131 for the content description. Students will not be credited for both PHY 131 and PHY 141 for degree purposes.

## Physics 143 (PHY 143)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** PHY 133

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week,  
Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Vectors. Kinematics of a point: relative motion, projectile, circular motion. Dynamics: Newton's laws, friction. Work: point masses, ideal gas law, springs, power. Energy: kinetic energy, potential energy, conservative forces, spring, conservation of mechanical energy. Hydrostatics and dynamics: density, pressure, Archimedes' law, continuity, Bernouli.

## Physics 144 (PHY 144)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** PHY 133

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The main topics covered in this module are Mechanics and Thermodynamics. Kinematics: Basic types of motion, one-dimensional motion, two- and three dimensional motion, linear momentum and its conservation, multi-object systems and the centre of mass.

Forces: Types of forces, Newton's Laws of Mechanics and applications, friction.

Energy: Work, heat, conservation of mechanical energy.

Thermodynamics: First law of thermodynamics, empirical gas laws, mechanical model of the ideal gas, energy of the ideal gas, basic thermodynamic processes.

## Physics 153 (PHY 153)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** PHY 143

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 practicals per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics





**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

System of particles: centre of mass, Newton's laws. Rotation: torque, conservation of momentum, impulse and collision, conservation of angular momentum, equilibrium, centre of gravity. Oscillations. Waves: sound, intensity, superposition, interference, standing waves, resonance, beats, Doppler effect. Physical optics: Young-interference, coherence, thin layers, diffraction, gratings, polarisation.

## Physics 154 (PHY 154)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** PHY 143

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The main topic in this module is Electricity, Sound, Optics, and Modern Physics.

Static Electricity: Electric charge and force, electric field, the electric energy, electric potential, conservation of electrical energy.

Flow of charge: Capacitors, application of charge flow to nerves.

Sound: Vibrations, waves in unconfined and confined media, applications to human hearing.

Optics: Reflection, refraction, applications to optometry and ophthalmology.

Atomic physics: Atomic models, x-rays.

Nuclear physics: The stable atomic nucleus, radioactivity, nuclear spin and applications to medical diagnostics.

## Astronomy for physicists 210 (PHY 210)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 24.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** PHY 114, PHY 124

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Introduction to the universe: distance and time scales. Solar System overview. Techniques of astronomy: telescopes and optics, basic radio receiver. Solar system: gas giants, terrestrial planets, small bodies. Stellar evolution and death. Interstellar medium: gas, dust, molecules and masers. Supernova and Pulsars: galaxies and the Milky Way, galactic evolution and classification. Quasars, apparent superluminal motion, black holes. Big Bang, and the age of the universe. Expansion of the universe. SKA, MeerKAT, SALT, HESS and history of astronomy in SA. Other current topics in astronomy.

## Waves, thermodynamics and modern physics 255 (PHY 255)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 24.00

**Programmes** BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** [PHY114 and PHY124] or [PHY171] or [PHY143 and PHY153 and PHY163] and [WTW211#] and [WTW218#]

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 discussion classes per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Vibrating systems and waves (14 lectures)

Simple harmonic motion (SHM). Superposition (different frequencies, equal frequencies). Perpendicular vibrations (Lissajous figures). Damped SHM. Forced oscillations. Resonance. Q-value. Transverse wave motion. Plane wave solution using method of separation of variables. Reflection and transmission at a boundary. Normal and eigenmodes. Wave packets. Group velocity.

Modern physics (30 lectures)

Special relativity: Galilean and Lorentz transformations. Postulates. Momentum and energy. 4 vectors and tensors. General relativity. Quantum physics. Failure of classical physics. Bohr model. Particle-wave duality. Schrödinger equation. Piece-wise constant potentials. Tunneling. X-rays. Laser. Nuclear physics: Fission. Fusion. Radioactivity.

Heat and thermodynamics (12 lectures)

Heat. First Law. Kinetic theory of gases. Mean free path. Ideal, Clausius, Van der Waals and virial gases. Entropy. Second Law. Engines and refrigerators. Third Law. Thermodynamic potentials: Enthalpy Helmholtz and Gibbs free energies, Chemical potential. Legendre transformations (Maxwell relations). Phase equilibrium. Gibbs phase rule.

Modelling and simulation (7 practical sessions)

Introduction to programming in a high level system: Concept of an algorithm and the basic logic of a computer programme. Symbolic manipulations, graphics, numerical computations. Applications: Selected illustrative examples.

Error Analysis (7 practical sessions)

Experimental uncertainties. Propagation of uncertainties. Statistical analysis of random uncertainties. Normal distribution. Rejection of data. Least-squares fitting. Covariance and correlation.

## General physics 263 (PHY 263)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 24.00

**Programmes**

[BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** PHY 255 GS and WTW 218 GS and WTW 220# and WTW 248#

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 discussion classes per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Classical mechanics (28 lectures)

Fundamental concepts, energy and angular momentum, calculus of variations and Lagrangian mechanics, conservative central forces and two body problems, scattering, mechanics in rotating reference frames, many body systems.

Physical Optics (14 lectures)

Maxwell's equations, wave equation and plane wave solution, coherence, interference, diffraction, polarisation.

Physics of Materials (14 lectures)

Classification of materials. Atomic bonding. Crystallography. Defects. Material strength.

Phase diagram's, Ceramics. Polymers. Composites. Fracture. Electrical and magnetic properties. Semiconductors. Smart materials Nanotechnology.

Experiments (14 sessions)

## Observational astronomy 300 (PHY 300)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 36.00

**Programmes** BSc Geology  
BSc Physics

**Prerequisites** PHY 210, PHY 255 and PHY 263

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Structure of the universe, navigation of the sky, spherical geometry, optical, radio and high energy physics and sources, instruments, practical observational skills, data recording, analysis, interpretation (signal and image processing, noise, calibration, error analysis). Project: A selected project in either optical or radio astronomy, resulting in a formal report and a presentation.

## Particle and astroparticle physics 310 (PHY 310)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Physics

**Prerequisites** PHY 255 and PHY 263 and PHY 356

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Relativistic kinematics, fundamentals of elementary particle physics, the four forces of nature and the Standard Model, beyond the Standard Model, early universe cosmology (inflation, baryogenesis), the Cosmic Microwave Background, high-energy astronomy (cosmic rays, gamma rays and neutrinos), gravitational waves, dark matter (evidence, candidates, detection), dark energy and the Standard Cosmological Model.

## Physics project 353 (PHY 353)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Availability of a suitable project and supervisor has to be confirmed with the head of department.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

\*Cannot be used as substitute for other Physics 300 modules to obtain admission to the BSc(Hons) in Physics. A student is required to complete a project under guidance of the lecturer. The nature of the project is determined jointly by the student, lecturer and the head of department.

## Electronics, electromagnetism and quantum mechanics 356 (PHY 356)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	36.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Applied Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Computer Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Education
<b>Prerequisites</b>	PHY 255 GS and PHY 263 GS and WTW 211 GS and WTW 218 GS and WTW 248 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 discussion classes per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Electronics (14 lectures)

Thévenin and Norton equivalent circuits, superposition principle, RC, LC and LRC circuits. Semiconductor diode. Bipolar transistor. Operational amplifiers. Computer controlled instrumentation.

Electromagnetism (21 lectures)

Electrostatics: Coulomb's law, divergence and curl of E, Gauss' law, Laplace's equation, image charge problems, multipole expansion.

Magnetostatics: Lorenz force, Biot-Savart law, divergence and curl of magnetic field strength, Ampère's law, magnetic vector potential, multipole expansion, boundary conditions.

Electrodynamics: Electromotive force, electromagnetic induction, Maxwell's equations, wave equation.

Electric and magnetic fields in matter: Polarisation, electric displacement and Gauss's law in dielectrics, linear dielectrics. Magnetisation (diamagnets, paramagnets, ferromagnets), auxiliary field H and Ampère's law in magnetised materials, linear and nonlinear media.

Quantum mechanics (28 lectures)

The Schrödinger equation, the statistical interpretation of the wave function, momentum, the uncertainty principle, the time-independent Schrödinger equation, stationary states, the infinite square well potential, the harmonic oscillator, the free particle, the Delta-Function potential, the finite square well potential, Hilbert spaces, observables, eigen functions of a Hermitian operator, Dirac notation, the Schrödinger equation in spherical coordinates, the hydrogen atom, angular momentum spin.

## Physics project 363 (PHY 363)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BSc Physics](#)

**Prerequisites** Availability of a suitable project and supervisor has to be confirmed with the head of department.

**Contact time** 3 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*Cannot be used as substitute for other Physics 300 modules to obtain admission to the BSc(Hons) in Physics  
A student is required to complete a project under guidance of the lecturer. The nature of the project is determined jointly by the student, lecturer and the head of department.

## Statistical mechanics, solid state physics and modelling 364 (PHY 364)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 36.00



**Programmes**  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** PHY 356 and WTW 211 and WTW 218 and WTW 248 GS

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Statistical mechanics (28 lectures)

Isolated systems in thermodynamical equilibrium. Systems in equilibrium with a heat bath: the canonical ensemble, Gibbs' entropic formula, classical statistical mechanics, energy equipartition theorem, thermodynamic potentials, paramagnetism.

The classical limit of perfect gases: non-distinguishable character of quantum particles, the equation of state of the classical ideal gas. Quantum perfect gases: Black body radiation, the grand canonical ensemble, Fermi-Dirac distribution, the free electron gas in metals, the Bose-Einstein distribution, Bose-Einstein condensation.

Solid state physics (28 lectures)

Crystal structures, the reciprocal lattice, x-ray diffraction, lattice vibration, the Debye model, characteristics of solids, the free electron model, Pauli paramagnetism, electronic heat capacity, the relaxation time, electrical conduction, the classical Hall effect, thermal conduction in metals, failures of the free electron model, the independent electron model, band theory of solids.

Computational Physics and modelling. Assessment will be done through a portfolio of project reports. The topics for the projects will be selected from various sub-disciplines of Physics.

### Mathematical methods 701 (PHY 701)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 6 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

The purpose of this course is twofold: (1) To refresh and systematize your knowledge of mathematics (sequences, series, vector calculus, functions of many variables etc.); (2) To give you working knowledge of mathematical methods that were not (or not sufficiently) covered in the underground courses, such as Fourier series and transforms; Ordinary and partial differential equations; Abstract vector spaces; Operators and their eigenvectors; Complex analysis; Calculus of variations; Integral equations; Group theory; Probability and statistics; Numerical methods.

### Classical mechanics 702 (PHY 702)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 6 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Lagrangian dynamics: Lagrange's equations, d'Alembert's principle, energy, applications, the tangent bundle, action, symmetry, conservation, Noether's Theorem, linear oscillations, normal modes.

Hamiltonian dynamics: Hamilton's equations, symplectic notation, phase space, Liouville's Theorem, Poisson brackets, canonical transformations, generating functions, the Hamilton-Jacobi equation. Elementary Lagrangian field theory.

### Quantum mechanics 703 (PHY 703)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

Origins of quantum mechanics; Mathematical tools; Postulates and quantization; Conservation laws; One-dimensional problems; Linear harmonic oscillator; Three-dimensional problems; Angular momentum; Hydrogen atom; Addition of angular momenta; Spin; Approximate methods (WKB, variational approach, time-independent perturbations); Time-dependent perturbations; Scattering; Partial wave scattering; Identical particles; Hartree-Fock approach; Many-body problems and quantum statistics; Second quantisation; Relativistic equations.





## Statistical physics 704 (PHY 704)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Thermodynamic behaviour of an ideal Bose gas: Bose-Einstein functions, the virial expansion, the Riemann zeta-function, Bose-Einstein condensation. Phonons: the field of sound waves, inertial density of the sound field, elementary excitations in liquid helium II. Ideal Fermi systems: thermodynamic behaviour of an ideal Fermi gas, Fermi-Dirac functions and their relation to Bose-Einstein functions, the virial expansion, the Fermi energy, asymptotic expansions at low temperature, magnetic behaviour of an ideal Fermi gas (Pauli paramagnetism, Landau diamagnetism). Quantised fields: free bosonic quantum fields, interacting quantum fields, interacting Hamiltonian, interactions in terms of creation and annihilation operators, imperfect Bose gasses at low temperature, fermionic quantum fields, interacting theory, the ground state of an imperfect Fermi gas. Phase transition in the Ising model: mean field theory, critical exponents.

## Electrodynamics 705 (PHY 705)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	6 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Conservation laws in electrodynamics; electromagnetic waves in vacuum, dielectrics, conductors and wave guides; potentials and fields, gauge transformations, Liénard-Wiechert potentials; electric and magnetic dipole radiation, radiation by a point charge; relativistic electrodynamics.

## Project and seminar 706 (PHY 706)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	25.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

A theoretical or an experimental project can be selected. The project must be approved by the head of department. The project must be summarised in the form of a written report and presented at an open seminar.

## Many body physics 708 (PHY 708)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 6 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Second quantisation. Coherent states. Single particle behaviour. Hartree-Fock – perturbation – linearisation of operators. Quasi-particles, effective mass and applications: atom physics, electron gas, one dimensional delta function. Collective behaviour. Tamm- Dancoff approximation: linearisation. Time dependent Hartree-Fock. Random phase approximation. Applications: giant dipole resonance, screening in an electron gas, correlation energy in an electron gas, plasma oscillations, zero sound. Canonical transformation – Cooper pairs, BSC theory. Thomas-Fermi theory. Density functional theory. Superconduction. Ginzberg-Landau theory. Zero field finite temperature BCS.

## Numerical physics 710 (PHY 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Numerical nature of physical problems such as atomic structure, electric fields, harmonic oscillators (classic and quantum mechanics), heat conduction, hydrodynamics, Ising model, molecular vibrations, order and chaos, potential scattering, Schrödinger equation, wave equation.

## Solid state physics 711 (PHY 711)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	6 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Electronic band structure, vibration properties of solids, electronic properties of defects, electric transport, optical properties, quantum confinement.

### Quantum optics 712 (PHY 712)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Coherent states of free and forced oscillators. Semi-classical electrodynamics (including time dependent perturbations and stimulated transitions). Mode composition of the electromagnetic field. Properties of laser light. Resonators and modes. Laser types (ruby, Nd-YAG, Carbondioxide, He-Ne, excimer and GaAs).

### Electronic materials 713 (PHY 713)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	6 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Structure, electrical and optical properties of semiconductors; semiconductor metal contacts; Ohmic and Schottky contacts; influence of impurities and defects on properties of the contacts; quantum well semiconductor structures.



## Analytical physics 714 (PHY 714)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Review of surface analytical techniques, surface structure determinations, surface topography techniques, theory of contrast in electron microscopy; electron microscopic surface and interface techniques; scanning tunnelling microscopy; electrical and electro-optical characterisation of semiconductors; determination of defects and impurities in semiconductors; propagation of laser rays; photoluminescence.

## Nuclear solid state physics 715 (PHY 715)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Mössbauer effect; positron annihilation; perturbed angular correlations; neutron scattering; RBS; channeling; nuclear reaction analyses.

## Group theory 716 (PHY 716)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Introduction to group theory needed in physics. Thirty-two crystallographic point groups; selected groups; full rotation groups; applications such as classification of spectral terms; selection rules; Clebs-Gordon coefficients.

## Quantum field theory 717 (PHY 717)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Prerequisites** Admission only by permission of the Head of the Department of Physics

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Special relativity. Representation of transformations in quantum physics. Canonical quantisation of free scalar fields. Interactions, scattering and the reduction formula. Path integrals in quantum mechanics; the harmonic oscillator. Free fields. Interacting fields, perturbation theory and Feynman diagrams. Scattering amplitudes and the Feynman rules. Renormalisation: Dimensional analysis, the exact propagator, the exact three point vertex, higher order corrections and perturbation theory to all orders. Symmetry: Continuous symmetries and conserved currents, discrete symmetries. The renormalisation group: Infrared divergences, different renormalisation schemes and asymptotic freedom, the renormalisation group. Spontaneous symmetry breaking: A discrete example, a continuous example, the Goldstone boson.

## Experimental physics 718 (PHY 718)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Guided experiments designed to expose students to modern experimental techniques, leading to a report written in the format of a research article.

## Nuclear physics 719 (PHY 719)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Prerequisites** Admission only with permission by the Head of the Department of Physics



<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Quarks, Nucleons, Isobaric Invariance, NN-interaction, Two-nucleon system, Deuteron, Elements of scattering theory, NN-scattering, Few-body nuclear systems, General properties of medium and heavy nuclei, Nuclear models, Radioactivity, Nuclear reactions,  $\alpha$ -,  $\beta$ -, and  $\gamma$ -decays, Nuclear fission, Nuclear fusion, nuclear astrophysics.

### Radio astrophysics 720 (PHY 720)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Completion of the core components of the BScHons
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Goals and techniques of modern radio astronomy, studies of galaxies and interstellar medium, radiation mechanisms, neutral hydrogen, astro-chemistry, masers, supernovae, pulsars and transient phenomena, high red-shift universe, quasars. Radio receivers and techniques.

### Foundations of physics 781 (PHY 781)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Conceptual basis of physics: The nature of Laws of Physics, basic concepts and misconceptions. Nature of physics, its history, nature of evidence, paradigms, current views and controversies of the nature of the physics enterprise. Indigenous knowledge in the field of physics, and alternative world views, physics in society. Limits and abuses of the results of Modern Physics.



## Current trends in physics 782 (PHY 782)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Completion of core components of the BScHons
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

A chosen field of physics that is linked to the research specialisations of groups within the Physics Department. Approaches and trends in research advances in new topics in physics. The module follows a format of guided advanced readings, seminars and discussion sessions.

## Introduction to crop protection 251 (PLG 251)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Biotechnology</a> <a href="#">BSc Ecology</a> <a href="#">BSc Plant Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Zoology</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Plant Pathology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Development and importance of crop protection. Basic principles in crop protection i.e. epidemic development of disease and insect pest populations, ecology of plant diseases and abiotic factors that affect plant health i.e. environmental pollution and pesticides, nutrient deficiencies and extreme environmental conditions. Ecological aspects of plant diseases, pest outbreaks and weed invasion. Important agricultural pests and weeds, globally as well as in African context. Life cycles of typical disease causing organisms. Basic principles of integrated pest and disease management. The importance of crop protection in the context of sustainable development will be highlighted.

## Principles of plant pathology 262 (PLG 262)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biotechnology BSc Ecology BSc Genetics BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science BSc Zoology BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences BScAgric Plant Pathology
-------------------	--

**Prerequisites** MBY 161

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Fundamental principles of plant pathology. The concept of disease in plants. Causes of plant diseases. Stages in development of plant diseases. Disease cycles and selected examples relevant to Africa. Diagnosis of plant diseases and the sustainable development goals that articulate with plant pathology.

## General plant pathology 351 (PLG 351)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Biotechnology BSc Genetics BSc Microbiology BSc Plant Science BScAgric Plant Pathology
-------------------	--

**Prerequisites** MBY 161 and PLG 262

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Principles and examples of plant diseases and their socio-economic importance particularly in the context of Africa. Current trends in plant pathology such as biosecurity, sanitary and phytosanitary issues of trade. Risk assessment and international food safety standards. The use of global information systems to assess disease spread and impact of global warming. Supply chain analysis, postharvest technology and food trade and how these aspects relate to the sustainable development goals.

## Plant disease control 363 (PLG 363)

**Qualification** Undergraduate





**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Biotechnology](#)  
[BSc Genetics](#)  
[BSc Plant Science](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Prerequisites** PLG 251 or PLG 262.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Principles of plant disease control and how it resonates with the sustainable development goals. Non-chemical control including biological control, disease resistance, regulatory measures, cultivation practices, physical methods. Modern chemo-therapy: characteristics, mode of action and application of bioproducts, fungicides, bactericides and nematicides. Principles of integrated disease management. The module will also cover applicable South African legislation, the local crop protection industries and the procedure of registering new chemicals.

## Host pathogen interactions 364 (PLG 364)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Includes fungal, bacterial and viral interactions. Focuses on molecular and cellular events occurring during recognition, during fungal evasion of the host's defence mechanisms and during disease symptom development. Topics discussed will also include cell biology of interactions, systemic acquired resistance and the role of pathogenesis related proteins and toxins in pathogenesis. Basic aspects of plant disease epidemiological theory and concepts. Introduction to equipment and techniques used in epidemiological research as well as practical applications of epidemiology in plant disease management.

## Research project 462 (PLG 462)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 28.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

A practical research project of limited extent under the supervision of one of the lecturers within the department. Any topic in plant pathology can be selected that reflect a current plant disease in South Africa.

### Plant disease epidemiology 463 (PLG 463)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Plant Pathology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	PLG 251 or PLG 262 and PLG 363
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Understanding of how plant disease epidemics occur in nature and how they can be monitored and analysed. In-depth knowledge how of plant diseases cause crop losses, how these losses are quantified, and how losses are predicted. Examples of how epidemiology is used to set the strategy of plant disease control. Use of some statistical procedures and modelling for quantifying and comparing epidemics. Classical case studies from South African disease epidemiological models will be discussed i.e. citrus black spot. Impact of climate change on plant disease development and how this relates to achieving the sustainable development goal #13 Take urgent action to combat climate change and its impact. In-depth discussions on plant-pathogen interactions and plant defence mechanisms.

### Advanced plant disease control 483 (PLG 483)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Plant Pathology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	PLG 251 or PLG 262 and PLG 363.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Advanced aspects of chemical and biological control of plant diseases as well as disease resistance. The importance of plant disease control in the context of sustainable development will be emphasised.

### Current concepts in plant pathology 490 (PLG 490)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Plant Pathology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	PLG 351
<b>Contact time</b>	1 seminar per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

This module will address the most recent concepts in plant pathology with a focus on diseases that is unique in the African context and the unpacking of the sustainable development goals in plant pathology.

### Advanced plant disease control 783 (PLG 783)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Plant Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	PLG 363 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Advanced aspects of chemical and biological control of plant diseases as well as disease resistance.

### Plant disease epidemiology 785 (PLG 785)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Plant Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	PLG 262, PLG 351 and PLG 363 or permission from the HOD.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Understanding of how plant disease epidemics occur in nature and how they can be monitored and analysed. In-depth knowledge of how plant diseases cause crop losses, how these losses are quantified, and how losses are predicted. Examples of how epidemiology is used to set the strategy of plant disease control. Use of some statistical procedures for quantifying and comparing epidemics. Impact of climate change on plant disease development. In-depth discussions on plant-pathogen interactions and plant defence mechanisms.

**Current concepts in plant pathology 786 (PLG 786)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Plant Science](#)

**Prerequisites** PLG 351 or permission from the HOD.

**Contact time** 1 seminar per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

This module will address the most recent concepts in plant pathology.

**Parametric stochastic processes 720 (PNP 720)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 312

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Introduction to statistical measure theory. Queueing processes: M/M/1; M/M/S; M/G/1 queues and variants; limiting distribution of the queue length and waiting times. Queueing networks. Some stochastic inventory and storage processes.



## Sustainable crop production and agroclimatology 251 (PPK 251)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BSc Biotechnology](#)  
[BSc Environmental Sciences](#)  
[BSc Plant Science](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Animal Science](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)  
[BScAgric Plant Pathology](#)

**Prerequisites** BOT 161

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Influence of climate on cropping systems in South Africa. The surface energy balance. Hydrological cycles and the soil water balance. Sustainable crop production. Simple radiation and water limited models. Potential yield, target yield and maximum economic yield. Crop nutrition and fertiliser management. Principles of soil cultivation and conservation. Climate change and crop production – mitigation and adaptation.

## Plant production: Herbicides and control 712 (PPR 712)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgricHons Crop Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Weeds and their importance in Southern Africa. Properties and uses of herbicides. Herbicides in soils and their mode of action in plants.

## Agroforestry 713 (PPR 713)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgricHons Crop Science](#)



<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Agro-ecological zones (climate and soil); trees for fruit, fodder, fuel and/or timber; intercropping or alley cropping with grains, vegetables or pastures; management (including aspects such as nursery production, establishment, fertilization, pest control) and utilization/marketing.

### Dissertation: Plant pathology 890 (PPT 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Plant Pathology</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Plant Pathology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Mini-dissertation: Plant protection 892 (PPT 892)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	120.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Each candidate must write a mini-dissertation on his/her project in plant protection. The mini-dissertation can be either factor- or strategic research and case studies. The candidate must have at least one paper submitted to a peer-reviewed journal.

### Thesis: Plant pathology 990 (PPT 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Plant Pathology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### **Poultry nutrition and production 420 (PVK 420)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** VGE 320 and VKU 260 and simultaneously register for TLR 411 and GVK 420

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### **Module content**

Specialised nutrition of poultry in different physiological stages and production systems. Industrial science and management of production systems and feeding systems in poultry production units. Applied breeding of poultry. Design and utilisation of equipment and housing facilities. Product quality and marketing of poultry products. Hygiene and health programmes. Practical work: The use of computer systems in feeding management of poultry in different production systems. Management of different poultry production systems.

### **Poultry science 800 (PVK 800)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

#### **Module content**

Specialised study of the management of hatcheries, broiler and layer production units, broiler breeding parent farms, ostriches, cage bird, game bird and waterfowl units, as well as threatened species in conservation programmes. Planning of production units and facilities. Determining ventilation requirements, disease control and biosecurity systems. Product quality, marketing and promotion of birds and their products. Computer aided management systems and product projection. Execution of projects in certain areas of specialisation. Studies aimed at optimising production efficiency and minimising risk.

### **Regression analysis 780 (RAL 780)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate



<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BComHons Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BScHons Statistics and Data Science</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	STK 310 and STK 320. This prerequisite cannot be replaced with any WST modules.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 1 web-based period per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Matrix methods in statistics. Simple and multiple regression models. Sums of squares of linear sets. Generalised t- and F-tests. Residual analysis. Diagnostics for leverage, influence and multicollinearity. Indicator variables. Regression approach to analysis of variance. Weighted least squares. Theory is combined with practical work.

### Research project 310 (RCH 310)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	3rd-year status
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Human Nutrition
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Research methods and process.

### Research project 320 (RCH 320)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	RCH 310
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Human Nutrition
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2





## Module content

Literature study, protocol and statistics (1 l + 1 x 2h discussion).

Preparation of protocol and submission for approval (1 x 2h discussion).

## Social research: Methodological thinking 320 (RES 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** BA

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisite.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Psychology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

The module introduces methods of inquiry in the social sciences and humanities. The purpose of this module is to introduce students to the research process in order to equip them with the necessary competence to:

identify social problems, formulate research questions and hypotheses;

have a basic understanding of writing the literature review and research proposal;

know and select relevant methods of inquiry;

be aware of the necessity of conducting ethically sound research; and

interpret and present data graphically.

## Radiation physics 110 (RFI 110)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

Units: converting, dimensional analysis. Mechanics: momentum, force, energy, circular motion, moment of inertia, angular momentum, simple harmonic motion.

Electrostatics: Coulomb's law, electric field, potential. Direct currents: resistors, Ohm's law. Capacitors:

capacitance, series, parallel energy. Magnetism: force on a moving charge, electric motor. Electromagnetic

induction: Faraday's law, Lenz's Law, generators. Alternating currents: average and rms value, three phase, rectification, transformers. Electrical safety. Atomic structure: ionization, excitation.

X-rays: production, absorption.



## Radiation physics 210 (RFI 210)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Health Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	RFI 110, MTL 180, RAN 100, FSG 161, FSG 162, RAW 182 and RAW 180
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

X-ray generator: transformer, energy losses, rectifiers, capacitor-discharge systems, kVp and mA control, high voltage cables. Image intensifiers: design, brightness gain, coupling systems. TV camera and monitor: design, video signal, scanning. Image quality. Optics: reflection, refraction, total internal reflection, mirrors, lenses, thin lens formula, lens aberrations, fibre optics, lasers, laser camera. Computers: basic hardware, digital principles and terminology, data storage.

## Radiation physics 211 (RFI 211)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Health Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	RFI 110, RAW 180, RAN 100, FSG 161, FSG 162, RAW 182 and MTL 180
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Radio-active decay: half-life, alpha decay, beta decay, gamma decay. Production of isotopes cyclotron, nuclear reactor, Van de Graaff accelerator. Absorption: nucleons, alpha particles, beta particles. Dosimetry: exposure, absorbed dose, equivalent dose, effective dose, dose limits. Radiation detectors: Geiger counter, scintillation counter, thermoluminescent detector, semi-conductor detectors. Radiopharmaceuticals. Biological effects: genetic and somatic effects.

## Radiation physics 310 (RFI 310)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Health Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	FSG 251, RFI 210, RAW 281, RBG 281, RAN 280, RAW 282, FSG 252, FSG 262, RAW 284 and RFI 211
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Computed tomography: CT generations. Equipment: x-ray tube, collimators, detectors. Image reconstruction: fundamental equations, algorithms.

Image properties: field size, image matrix, voxel, pixel, CT number, window width and height. Image quality: spatial resolution, contrast resolution, quantum mottle, spatial uniformity and frequency. Image processing: edge enhancement, pixel shifting and subtraction. Digital radiography: X-ray, equipment, analogue to digital conversion, linear and logarithmic subtraction, image noise. Ultrasound: theory, transducers, piezo-electric crystals, resonant frequency, interaction with matter, acoustic impedance, Doppler techniques. Magnetic resonance: medical applications.

## Reproduction science 310 (RPL 310)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** DAF 200 GS

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Theriogenology, spermatogenesis, zoogenesis, the female sexual cycle. Species differences. Hormonal control of the sexual functions.

## Reproduction science 320 (RPL 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** RPL 310 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Artificial insemination. Semen collection techniques, the evaluation, dilution and conservation of semen. Collection, conservation and transfer of embryos. Collection of ova and in vitro fertilization. Handling of apparatus and practical insemination, oestrus observation and determination of gestation.

## Small animal medicine and surgery 410 (SAS 410)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	21.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BVSc
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per year, 9 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Companion Animal Clinical Studies
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Patient assessment; therapeutic and monitoring plans for selected key critical situations; identification, diagnosis and treatment of important cardiovascular, respiratory, kidney, skin, endocrine and eye conditions/diseases; multi-systemic conditions; dentistry; oncology; behaviour-related disorders and treatment, critical care and traumatology in dogs and cats.

## Small animal medicine and surgery 420 (SAS 420)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	21.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BVSc
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per year, 9 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Companion Animal Clinical Studies
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Patient assessment; therapeutic and monitoring plans for selected key critical situations; identification, diagnosis and treatment of important gastrointestinal, liver, pancreas, peritoneal, urogenital, skin, musculoskeletal, nervous system; dentistry in dogs and cats.



## Religious instruction 171 (SCE 171)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Prominent religions in South Africa, world views associated with these religions, the cultural role of religions, importance of holy days. Mysticism and the occult.

## Science education 201 (SCE 201)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

An introduction to patterns of scientific thinking. An introduction to science and science literacy. Ethics of science. Using the scientific method to encourage discovery learning. Exploring the concept of knowledge. The Learning Cycle. Principles of curriculum design.

## Science education 303 (SCE 303)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	36.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	CIL 111 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Physics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year



## Module content

Understanding the application of OBE in the teaching of science. The infusion of scientific thinking into the science curriculum in a developmentally appropriate way. The design of learning programmes by programme organisers at school level. Macro planning in the natural science learning area. Provincial and national models of assessment. The assessment and implementation of learning programmes. The assessment of learner progress in the context of specific science learning programmes. Introduction to the principles of discipline and motivation. Some aspects of school guidance and career planning. Practical: Practical experience with learning opportunities. Use of computers as a teaching aid.

## Research methods in science education 881 (SCE 881)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MSc Environmental Education \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Centre for Science Development

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

The purpose of this course is to:

- Be exposed to the discipline of Educational Research
- Understand research concepts, principles and methods
- Obtain skills such as: the formulation and definition of a research problem, the use of literature to obtain an in depth understanding of a problem, the design of the research protocol, the interpretation of research results to draw conclusions about a research problem.

## Statistics for science education 882 (SCE 882)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Centre for Science Development

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

The course follows a conceptual approach to the field of statistical principles as applied within educational research. The emphasis lies on understanding selected statistical procedures and the logic underlying statistical deduction. The purpose of the course is to promote statistical literacy as a research tool.



## Curriculum development and assessment - Science education 883 (SCE 883)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Centre for Science Development
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

The course reviews modern thinking in science content and curriculum development in both a South African and an International context. Assessment is treated as an integral part of curriculum design. Special attention is given to the theoretical principles of assessment, with special reference to accuracy and reliability: The application of these elements to standardised as well as teaching developed tests are reviewed. Finally, new forms of assessment are explored.

## Current developments: Science education 884 (SCE 884)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Centre for Science Development
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

The objectives of this course are: to explore and discuss the major approaches currently advocated in science education (e.g. constructivist learning) and as they pertain to the nature of the scientific fields; to explore and discuss some current restructuring proposals underway and the consequences of the above proposals for the classroom teacher; to develop a curriculum or curricular units, strategies for the implementation of the curriculum and evaluation strategies consistent with the goals of the new curriculum and evaluation strategies consistent with the goals of the new curriculum; to explore activities, computer software, computer interfaced laboratories, video recordings and integrated technological systems that will support the new curriculum.

## Seminar: Science education 885 (SCE 885)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 seminar per week



<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Centre for Science Development
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

The purpose of the seminar is to contribute and learn from the interaction and research of fellow postgraduate students and professionals. At least 5 presentations on recent literature or your own research in science education or in a science speciality are required. The programme contributes both to the development of the underlying knowledge and research project, but also build a team approach to scientific endeavour, develops and demonstrates scientific presentation skills and scientific reporting and writing.

### Dissertation: Science education 890 (SCE 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Science Education</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Centre for Science Development
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Science education 990 (SCE 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Science and Mathematics Education</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Centre for Science Development
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Exploring the universe 154 (SCI 154)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Computer Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Prohibited combination SCI 164
<b>Contact time</b>	4 lectures per week





**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Physics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Students from all faculties are welcome to join us in our exploration of the universe from an earth-bound perspective. We reflect on the whole universe from the sub microscopic to the vast macroscopic and mankind's modest position therein. To what degree is our happiness determined by stars? Echoes from ancient firmaments - the astronomy of old civilisations. The universe is born with a bang. Stars, milky ways and planets are formed. Life is breathed into the landscape on earth, but is there life elsewhere? The architecture of the universe - distance measurements, structure of our solar system and systems of stars. How does it look like on neighbouring planets? Comets and meteorites. Life cycles of stars. Spectacular exploding stars! Exotica like pulsars and black holes.

## Sampling techniques 720 (SFT 720)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

### Programmes

[BComHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BComHons Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Statistics and Data Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 311, WST 312, WST 321, or STK 310, 320.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Simple random sampling. Estimation of proportions and sample sizes. Stratified random sampling. Ratio and regression estimators. Systematic and cluster sampling. Introduction to spatial statistics. Spatial sampling - both model and design based approaches.

## Soil mechanics 311 (SGM 311)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

### Programmes

[BEng Civil Engineering](#)  
[BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE](#)  
[BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	(SWK 210)
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 tutorials per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Separate classes for Afrikaans and English
<b>Department</b>	Civil Engineering
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Introduction to soil mechanics. Introduction to clay mineralogy. Mass, volume relationships and phases of soil. Groundwater flow and permeability. Effective stress principles. Suction pressures in saturated as well as partially saturated soil. The Mohr circle and stresses at a point. The Mohr-Coulomb strength theory and the stress-strain properties of soil. The Boussinesq theory. Consolidation theory and soil settlement.

### Geotechnical engineering 323 (SGM 323)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	(SGM 311)
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 discussion classes per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Separate classes for Afrikaans and English
<b>Department</b>	Civil Engineering
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Application of consolidation theory. Bearing capacity of soil and foundation design, Terzaghi and general methods. Horizontal stresses in soil and design of retaining structures, Rankine and Coulomb's methods. Slope stability including Bishop's method of slices. Introduction to site investigation.

### Insect diversity: Economic and ecological implications 711 (SIZ 711)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

Insect classification and the structuring of diversity; economically and ecologically important insect taxa: apterygote and exopterygote insects - silverfish, mayflies, dragonflies, cockroaches, mantids, termites, earwigs, locusts, stick insects, lice, bugs and thrips; endopterygote insects - lacewings, beetles, flies, fleas, butterflies, moths, bees, wasps and ants.

## Integrated pest management 724 (SIZ 724)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

The origin of insect pests; their host crops; threshold values; pest status; insect pest management; biological-, cultural- and chemical control of insects; insect herbivores as weed biocontrol agents; insects as vectors in human and animal disease; non-vector problem insects; control methods in veterinary entomology; conservation, agriculture and human health; beneficial insects; beekeeping; silk production; insects as human and animal food; insects and ecosystems; chemicals and the environment; insects and eco-tourism.

## Psychology 110 (SLK 110)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BA</a> <a href="#">BA Audiology</a> <a href="#">BA Extended programme</a> <a href="#">BA Fine Arts</a> <a href="#">BA Languages</a> <a href="#">BA Law</a> <a href="#">BA Speech-Language Pathology</a> <a href="#">BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching</a> <a href="#">BIS Information Science</a> <a href="#">BNurs</a> <a href="#">BOccTher</a> <a href="#">BPhysio</a> <a href="#">BSW</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology</a>
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Health Sciences Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	--



<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Psychology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

This module is a general orientation to Psychology. An introduction is given to various theoretical approaches in Psychology, and the development of Psychology as a science is discussed. Selected themes from everyday life are explored and integrated with psychological principles. This module focuses on major personality theories. An introduction is given to various paradigmatic approaches in Psychology.

## Psychology 120 (SLK 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes**

- BA
- BA Audiology
- BA Extended programme
- BA Fine Arts
- BA Languages
- BA Law
- BA Speech-Language Pathology
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BIS Information Science
- BOccTher
- BSW
- BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences
- BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology

**Service modules**

- Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
- Faculty of Education
- Faculty of Health Sciences
- Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Psychology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



## Module content

This module introduces the student to a basic knowledge and understanding of the biological basis of human behaviour. The module addresses the key concepts and terminology related to the biological subsystem, the rules and principles guiding biological psychology, and identification of the interrelatedness of different biological systems and subsystems. In this module various cognitive processes are studied, including perception, memory, thinking, intelligence and creativity. Illustrations are given of various thinking processes, such as problem solving, critical, analytic and integrative thinking.

## Psychology 210 (SLK 210)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** BA  
BA Audiology  
BA Languages  
BA Law  
BA Speech-Language Pathology  
BOccTher  
BPhysio  
BSW  
BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Health Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** SLK 110, SLK 120(GS)

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Psychology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

In this module human development from conception through adolescence to adulthood is discussed with reference to various psychological theories. Incorporated are the developmental changes related to cognitive, physical, emotional and social functioning of the individual and the context of work in adulthood. Traditional and contemporary theories of human development explaining and describing these stages are studied in order to address the key issues related to both childhood and adulthood.

## Psychology 220 (SLK 220)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 20.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BA BA Audiology BA Languages BA Law BA Speech-Language Pathology BSW BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology
-------------------	--

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Health Sciences Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	SLK 110, SLK 120(GS) and (RES 210 recommended)
----------------------	--

<b>Contact time</b>	2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Psychology
-------------------	------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

This module is a social-psychological perspective on interpersonal and group processes. Themes that are covered include communication, pro-social behaviour, social influence and persuasion, political transformation, violence, and group behaviour.

## Psychology 310 (SLK 310)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	30.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	BA BA Audiology BA Law BA Speech-Language Pathology BSW BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology
-------------------	--

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	SLK 210(GS), SLK 220(GS)
----------------------	--------------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Separate classes for Afrikaans and English
----------------------------	--

<b>Department</b>	Psychology
-------------------	------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------



## Module content

Identification of abnormal behaviour in children based on knowledge of normal childhood development; introduction to the study of various models pertaining to abnormal behaviour; understanding and application of basic concepts in child psychopathology. This module also provides an introduction to psychopathology and symptomatology of adult abnormal behaviour. Terminology, definitions of abnormal behaviour, problems in diagnosis, labelling, and myths regarding abnormal behaviour are discussed. Neurosis as a specific mental disorder is studied critically from a multidimensional perspective, including intrapsychic, interpersonal and social-cultural explanations.

## Psychology 320 (SLK 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** BA  
BA Law  
BSW

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** SLK 210 GS, SLK 220 GS, (RES 320 recommended)

**Contact time** 2 discussion classes per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Separate classes for Afrikaans and English

**Department** Psychology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

This module deals with a community psychological perspective on human behaviour and psychological interventions and also critically explores the contribution of various perspectives in psychology. The module focuses on themes such as definitions of key concepts, principles and aims of community psychology, and the role of the community psychologist as well as the impact of earlier thought frameworks on contemporary perspectives. The implications of these ideas for practical initiatives focussed on mental health in communities, are discussed. The module further focuses on critical psychology. Critical psychology is an orientation towards psychology that is critical towards the assumptions and practices of psychology as it is practiced in the mainstream. It attempts to address power issues as they manifest in the practice of mainstream psychology. The focus is on examining how the practice and theories of mainstream psychology contribute to these power issues impacting on marginalised groups.

## Statistical process control 780 (SPC 780)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** BComHons Statistics and Data Science  
BScHons Statistics and Data Science

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences



**Prerequisites** STK 310, 320 or WST 311, 312, 321

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Quality control and improvement. Shewhart, cumulative sum (CUSUM), exponentially weighted moving average (EWMA) and Q control charts. Univariate and multivariate control charts. Determining process and measurement systems capability. Parametric and nonparametric (distribution-free) control charts. Constructing control charts using Microsoft Excel and/or SAS. Obtaining run-length characteristics via simulations, the integral equation approach, other approximate methods and the Markov-chain approach.

## Statistics 122 (STC 122)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 13.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)

**Prerequisites** At least a 60% in STK 110 or an average of 60% for either (1) WST 133, WST 143, WST 153; (2) STK 113, STK 123, STK 121; (3) STK 133, STK 134, STK121; (4) WST 133, WST 143, STK 121 (An aegrotat exam is available to students who obtained 50%-59%)

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Inferential concepts. Experimental and observational data. Measures of association, uncertainty and goodness of fit. Sampling error and accuracy of estimation. Introduction to linear regression, reduction of variation due to regression. Conditional distributions of residuals. Simulation based inference: conditional means and prediction intervals. Bivariate data visualisation. Supporting mathematical concepts. Statistical concepts are demonstrated and interpreted through practical coding and simulation within a data science framework.

*This module is also presented as a summer school for students who initially elected and passed STK 120 with a final mark of at least 60% and then decides to further their studies in statistics as well as for students who achieved a final mark of between 40% - 49% in STC 122 during semester 2.*

## Simulation and computation 710 (STC 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Statistics and Data Science](#)





<b>Prerequisites</b>	STK 353
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Efficient programming, Monte Carlo simulation, sampling of discrete and continuous probability models, General transformation methods, Accept-reject methods, Monte Carlo integration, importance sampling, numerical optimisation, Metropolis-Hastings algorithm, GIBBS sampling.

### Capita selecta: Statistics 720 (STC 720)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Mathematical Statistics</a> <a href="#">BScHons Statistics and Data Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	STK 353
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

This module considers specific topics from the diverse field of statistics as deemed supportive towards the training of the cohort of scholars.

### Statistics 110 (STK 110)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	13.00



**Programmes**

BA  
BAdmin Public Management and International Relations  
BCom  
BCom Accounting Sciences  
BCom Agribusiness Management  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Economics  
BCom Financial Sciences  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Investment Management  
BCom Law  
BCom Marketing Management  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BIT Information Systems  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Construction Management  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Quantity Surveying  
BSc Real Estate  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics  
BTRP

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	At least 5 (60-69%) in Mathematics in the Grade 12 examination. Candidates who do not qualify for STK 110 must register for STK 113 and STK 123
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Descriptive statistics:

Sampling and the collection of data; frequency distributions and graphical representations. Descriptive measures of location and dispersion.

Probability and inference:

Introductory probability theory and theoretical distributions. Sampling distributions. Estimation theory and hypothesis testing of sampling averages and proportions (one and two-sample cases). Supporting mathematical concepts. Statistical concepts are demonstrated and interpreted through practical coding and simulation within a data science framework.

## Statistics 120 (STK 120)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 13.00

### Programmes

BA  
BAdmin Public Management and International Relations  
BCom  
BCom Business Management  
BCom Economics  
BCom Financial Sciences  
BCom Human Resource Management  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Law  
BCom Marketing Management  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Supply Chain Management  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Geoinformatics  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BTRP

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

### Prerequisites

STK 110 GS or both STK 113 GS and STK 123 GS or both WST 133 and WST 143 or STK 133 and STK 143

### Contact time

1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week

### Language of tuition

Module is presented in English

### Department

Statistics

### Period of presentation

Semester 2



## Module content

Students can only get credit for one of the following two modules: STK 120 or STK 121.

Analysis of variance, categorical data analysis, distribution-free methods, curve fitting, regression and correlation, the analysis of time series and indices. Statistical and economic applications of quantitative techniques: Systems of linear equations: solving and application. Optimisation, linear functions, non-linear functions. Marginal and total functions. Stochastic and deterministic variables in statistical and economic context: producers' and consumers' surplus. Supporting mathematical concepts. Statistical concepts are illustrated using simulation within a data science framework.

This module is also presented as STK 121, an anti-semester module. This is a terminating module.

## Statistics 121 (STK 121)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	13.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	STK 133 and STK 143 or WST 133 and WST 143 or both STK 113 GS and STK 123 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Students can only get credit for one of the following two modules: STK 120 or STK 121.

Analysis of variance, categorical data analysis, distribution-free methods, curve fitting, regression and correlation, the analysis of time series and indices. Statistical and economic applications of quantitative techniques: Systems of linear equations: solving and application. Optimisation, linear functions, non-linear functions. Marginal and total functions. Stochastic and deterministic variables in statistical and economic context: producers' and consumers' surplus. Supporting mathematical concepts. Statistical concepts are illustrated using simulation within a data science framework.

This is a terminating module.

## Statistics 210 (STK 210)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00



<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BCom BCom Agribusiness Management BCom Economics BCom Informatics Information Systems BCom Investment Management BCom Law BCom Statistics BCom Statistics and Data Science BIT Information Systems BSc Information and Knowledge Systems BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics</p>
-------------------	--

<b>Service modules</b>	<p>Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Humanities Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences</p>
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	STK 110, STC 122 or WST 111, WST 121
----------------------	--------------------------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
---------------------	---

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Statistics
-------------------	------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------

**Module content**

Statistical problem solving. Causality, experimental and observational data. Probability theory. Multivariate random variables. Discrete and continuous probability distributions. Stochastic representations. Measures of association. Expected values and conditional expectation. Simulation techniques. Supporting mathematical concepts. Statistical concepts are demonstrated and interpreted through practical coding and simulation within a data science framework.

**Statistics 220 (STK 220)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	<p>BCom BCom Agribusiness Management BCom Economics BCom Informatics Information Systems BCom Investment Management BCom Law BCom Statistics BCom Statistics and Data Science BIT Information Systems BSc Information and Knowledge Systems BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management BSocSci Philosophy, Politics and Economics</p>
-------------------	--



**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** STK 210 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Multivariate probability distributions. Sampling distributions and the central limit theorem. Frequentist and Bayesian inference. Statistical learning and decision theory. Simulation techniques enhancing statistical thinking. Supervised learning: linear regression, estimation and inference. Non-parametric modelling. Supporting mathematical concepts. Statistical algorithms. Statistical concepts are demonstrated and interpreted through practical coding and simulation within a data science framework.

## Statistics 310 (STK 310)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 25.00

**Programmes** [BCom](#)  
[BCom Economics](#)  
[BCom Informatics Information Systems](#)  
[BCom Investment Management](#)  
[BCom Law](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BIT Information Systems](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Humanities  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** STK 210, STK 220

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Supervised learning. Linear and non-linear regression. Ordinary least squares and maximum likelihood estimation. Violations of the assumptions, residual analysis. Cross validation. Statistical inference. Bootstrap inference. Supporting mathematical concepts. Statistical concepts are demonstrated and interpreted through practical coding and simulation within a data science framework.



## Statistics 320 (STK 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 25.00

**Programmes** BCom  
BCom Economics  
BCom Informatics Information Systems  
BCom Investment Management  
BCom Law  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** STK 210, STK 220 or WST 211, WST 221

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Stationary and non-stationary univariate time series. Properties of ARIMA processes. Identification, estimation and diagnostic testing of a time series models. Forecasting. Multivariate time series. Supervised learning: introduction to generalised linear models. Modelling of binary response variables, logistic regression. Supporting mathematical concepts. Statistical concepts are demonstrated and interpreted through practical coding and simulation within a data science framework.

## The science of data analytics 353 (STK 353)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 25.00

**Programmes** BCom Investment Management  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BIT Information Systems  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Physics  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** STK 210, STK 220, WST 212 or WST 211, WST 221, WST 212



**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Data exploration. Data wrangling. Statistical coding. Algorithmic thinking. Sampling: basic techniques in probability, non-probability, and resampling methods. Text mining and analytics. Machine learning: classification and clustering. Statistical concepts are demonstrated and interpreted through practical coding and simulation within a data science framework.

## Linear mixed models 781 (STK 781)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Statistics and Data Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BScHons and BComHons in Mathematical Statistics: WST 311; BComHons Statistics: STK 310, STK 320.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Specification of linear mixed model, model assumptions, estimation (REML and ML), diagnostics, hypothesis tests, interpretation of parameter estimates, calculating predicted values. Specific models: two- and three-level models for clustered data, intraclass correlation coefficients, repeated measures data, random coefficient models for longitudinal data, models for clustered longitudinal data, models for data with crossed random factors. Using statistical software to analyse LMMs.

## Research report: Statistics 795 (STK 795)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BScHons Statistics and Data Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** STK 310, STK 320, RAL 780

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English





**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Year

**Module content**

Refer to the document: Criteria for the research management process and the assessment of the honours essays, available on the web: [www.up.ac.za](http://www.up.ac.za) under the Department of Statistics: Postgraduate study.

**Research orientation 796 (STK 796)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Programmes**

[BComHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BComHons Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Statistics and Data Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** Admission to the relevant programme.

**Contact time** Ad Hoc

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Year

**Module content**

A compulsory bootcamp must be attended as part of this module – usually presented during the last week of January each year (details are made available by the department). The bootcamp will cover the basics of research to prepare students for the research component of their degree. The bootcamp should be done in the same year as registration for STK 795/WST 795. Each year of registration for the honours degree will also require the attendance of three departmental seminars. Students should ensure that their attendance is recorded by the postgraduate co-ordinator present at the seminars. The department approves the seminars attended. In addition, students are required to present their STK 795/WST 795 research in the department during the year of registration for these modules.

**Capita selecta: Statistics 880 (STK 880)**

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes**

[MCom Advanced Data Analytics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Advanced Data Analytics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** Admission to the relevant programme.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 other contact session per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

This module covers the most recent literature that discusses current and contemporary research topics in advanced data analytics.

### Research orientation 899 (STK 899)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Programmes** [MSc Advanced Data Analytics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** Admission to the relevant programme.

**Contact time** Ad Hoc

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

A compulsory bootcamp must be attended as part of this module – usually presented during the last week of January each year. Details regarding the venue and specific dates are made available by the department each year. The bootcamp will cover the basics of research to prepare students for the research component of their degree. Students can be exempt from the bootcamp if it was already attended in a previous year or for a previous degree. Each year of registration for the master's degree will also require the attendance of three departmental seminars. Students should ensure that their attendance is recorded by the postgraduate coordinator present at the seminars. The department approves the seminars attended. Students are also required to present their mini-dissertation research proposal within the department or at a conference.

### Research orientation 911 (STK 911)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Programmes** [PhD Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[PhD Statistics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** Ad Hoc

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

A compulsory bootcamp must be attended as part of this module – usually presented during the last week of January each year. Details regarding the venue and specific dates are made available by the department each year. The bootcamp will cover the basics of research to prepare the student for the research component of their degree. Students can be exempt from the bootcamp if it has already been attended in a previous year or for a previous degree. Each year of registration for the doctoral degree will also require the attendance of three departmental seminars. Students should ensure that their attendance is recorded by the postgraduate coordinator present at the seminars. The department approves the seminars attended.

## Surveying 210 (SUR 210)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week, 4 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Adjustment and use of following instruments: Plane table, level, compass and theodolite. Elementary site surveying and levelling, tachometry. Definition of survey. Co-ordinate systems and bearing. Connections and polars. Methods of determining points. Elevation. Tachometry.

## Surveying 220 (SUR 220)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	14.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BEng Mining Engineering</a> <a href="#">BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Geoinformatics</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 114 GS/WTW 134
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2



### Module content

Adjustment and use of following instruments: Plane table, level, compass and theodolite. Elementary site surveying and leveling, tachometry. Definition of survey. Co-ordinate systems and bearing. Connections and polars. Methods of determining points. Elevation. Tachometry.

### Mechanics 122 (SWK 122)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

BEng Chemical Engineering  
BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Civil Engineering  
BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electrical Engineering  
BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electronic Engineering  
BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Industrial Engineering  
BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mechanical Engineering  
BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mining Engineering  
BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Meteorology

### Programmes

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WTW 158

**Contact time** 2 tutorials per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Civil Engineering

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Equivalent force systems, resultants. Newton's laws, units. Forces acting on particles. Rigid bodies: principle of transmissibility, resultant of parallel forces. Vector moments and scalar moments. Relationship between scalar- and vector moments. Couples. Equivalent force systems on rigid bodies. Resultants of forces on rigid bodies. Equilibrium in two and three dimensions. Hooke's law. Trusses and frameworks. Centroids and second moments of area. Beams: distributed forces, shear force, bending moment, method of sections, relationship between load, shear force and bending moment.



## Strength of materials 210 (SWK 210)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BEng Chemical Engineering</a> <a href="#">BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE</a> <a href="#">BEng Civil Engineering</a> <a href="#">BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE</a> <a href="#">BEng Mining Engineering</a> <a href="#">BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE</a> <a href="#">BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Geology</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology: SWK 122 and WTW 164 OR SWK 122, WTW 161 and WTW 168. Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences: SWK 122 and WTW 124 OR SWK 122, WTW 126 and WTW 128.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 tutorials per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Civil Engineering
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Stresses, strains and the mechanical properties of materials: Normal stress and shear stress, tension and compression, equilibrium in shear, factor of safety, design, shear strain, stress/strain diagram, Hooke's Law, Poisson's Ratio and the shear stress/strain diagram. Axial loads: Elastic deformation, displacements, statically determinate and indeterminate structures and thermal effects. Torsion: Torsion of circular bars and power transmission bending of straight members and composite beams. Transverse shear: Shear in straight members and shear flow. Combined loads: Thin walled pressure vessels and stresses as a result of combined loads. Stress transformation: Plane stress transformation, principle stresses, maximum values and stress variation in prismatic beams. Strain transformation: Plane strain transformation, principle strains, maximum values, strain gauges and rosettes and the relationship between  $E$ ,  $G$  and  $\mu$ . Design of beams from section characteristics. Deflection of beams: The elastic curve, integration method, Macaulay's method and superposition.

## Tourism and hospitality management 311 (TBE 311)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Hospitality Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Marketing Management
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2



## Module content

This module introduces tourism management from a systems perspective, covering tourism demand and supply as well as the functional and physical links between demand and supply. The environment in which tourism operates is also presented. The sectors within the tourism industry are introduced and special attention is given to hospitality management where the operational and management functions of the "guest cycle" are covered. The policies, principles and procedures relating to the financial operations and management in hospitality establishments are also discussed in this module.

### Dissertation: Horticultural science 890 (TBK 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MScAgric Horticulture](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

#### Module content

This module involves the development, presentation and approval of a research proposal, the execution of the research project, and the writing up and presentation of the research results. In addition to the dissertation, the student is also expected to compile a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed UP accredited scientific journal.

### Thesis: Horticultural science 990 (TBK 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Horticultural Science](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

#### Module content

This module involves the development, presentation and approval of a research proposal, the execution of the research project, and the writing up and presenting of the research results. In addition to the thesis, the student is also expected to publish at least one research paper in a peer-reviewed, UP accredited scientific journal. An oral examination covering Pasture Science and other fields related to the thesis will be conducted after the thesis has been accepted by examiners. A candidate needs to pass both the written thesis and oral examination to qualify for the degree.



## Textiles: Utilities, fibres and yarns 212 (TKS 212)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	14.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a> <a href="#">BSc Interior Architecture</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Utility aspects: basic components of textiles, consumer decision making, utility aspects that include durability, comfort, maintenance, health/safety/protection and aesthetic aspects. Fibres and yarns: Fibre structure and performance including textile chemistry, fibre morphology and formation, fibre properties, classification and identification. Yarn structure and performance (including spun yarns, filament yarns, compound and novelty yarns).

## Textiles: Structures and finishes 222 (TKS 222)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	10.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	TKS 212 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Fabric structures: Introduction to fabric structures. Woven fabrics, knits, non-woven fabrics and compound fabrics. Finishes and dyeing processes: Introduction to fabric finishing. Preparatory and final finishes. Finishes for special end-uses: durability, comfort and protection; ease of maintenance; aesthetic appeal. Dyed and printed fabrics.

## Textiles: new and sustainable developments 411 (TKS 411)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	13.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>



<b>Prerequisites</b>	TKS 212 and TKS 222 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

New developments that address the impact of textiles on the environment and sustainability. Focus is directed toward the UN sustainable development goal #12 through assignments that include principles of life cycle assessment, reusability as well as open- and closed loop recycling of textile and apparel products.

### Textiles: marketing and consumer aspects 421 (TKS 421)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Clothing Retail Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	TKS 411
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Clothing textiles and textile products from a marketing and consumer perspective. Practical project: Project to assess performance properties of textiles for specific end-use by using laboratory tests. A written report of the results is also required.

### Animal breeding 320 (TLR 320)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Animal Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	GTS 261 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2





## Module content

Karyotyping of farm animals; breed and specie differences and the influence on classification of breeds. Influence of chromosomal aberrations. Phenotypic expression of genes and gene-interaction in farm animals. Single gene, major genes and polygenes. Variation in traits of economic importance and statistical description. Use of genetic variation. Estimation of breeding values and family indices on traits determined by single genes. Principles of breeding systems.

### Animal breeding 411 (TLR 411)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Animal Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	TLR 320 and GTS 261 and simultaneously register for GVK 420 and PVK 420
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

## Module content

Components of animal performance. Sources of variation, population parameters and the estimation thereof. Introduction to matrix algebra for application in animal breeding. Selection indices theory. Statistical models in estimation of breeding values. Application of breeding values and prerequisites for accuracy. Breeding and selection for reproduction and growth. Principles of QTLs.

### Applied animal breeding 420 (TLR 420)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Animal Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	TLR 411 GS and simultaneously register for KVK 420 and VSX 420
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

## Module content

Formulation and application of breeding objectives. Animal recording systems and international guidelines for evaluation. Specie-specific breeding systems. Breeding objectives and selection programmes for beef and dairy cattle, small stock, poultry, pigs and companion animals. Selection of traits of economic importance and the efficiency thereof. Crossbreeding systems in meat producing farm animals. Breed development.



## Animal breeding and genetics 700 (TLR 700)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	24.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Qualitative characteristics. Calculation of population criteria and the interpretation in the industry. Specific problems with relation to the selection and breeding of cattle, small stock, pigs and poultry. The application of genetic theory in practice with relation to heritability of quantitative characteristics. (Theoretical components include TLR 410 and TLR 420)

## Animal breeding and genetics 801 (TLR 801)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 seminar per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Specialised studies in quantitative and molecular animal breeding in various livestock species. Advanced statistical modelling and EBV estimation. Application of genetic theory in practice with relation to heritability of quantitative characteristics. Advanced theory on the role of molecular technology in genetic improvement of farm animals. Experimental designs for QTL and MAS research and biodiversity studies as well as principles of genomic EBVs and GWAS. The study entails seminars, a literature study and discussion of selected topics relating to the industry specialisation programme. Discussion of research methods and results under local conditions. Policies regarding animal breeding.

## Analysis of time series 880 (TRA 880)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Advanced Data Analytics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WST 321 or TRA 720



<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

Difference equations. Lag operators. Stationary ARMA processes. Maximum likelihood estimation. Spectral analysis. Vector processes. Non-stationary time series. Long-memory processes.

### Data science: analytics and visualisation 880 (TRG 880)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	20.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MCom Advanced Data Analytics (Coursework)</a> <a href="#">MSc Advanced Data Analytics (Coursework)</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Admission to relevant programme.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

Supervised learning and applications. Multicollinearity, ridge regression, the LASSO and the elastic net. Parametric and nonparametric logistic regression and nonlinear regression. Survival regression. Regression extensions: Random forests MARS and Conjoint analysis. Neural networks.

### Site surveying 213 (TRN 213)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Construction Management</a> <a href="#">BSc Quantity Surveying</a> <a href="#">BSc Real Estate</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

General surveying; instruments, their handling and adjusting; surveying systems and simple calculations; determining of levels; setting out of the works; tacheometry and plotting; scales, planimetry; areas and volumes; construction surveying; aerial photography.

## Dissertation: Applied mathematics 890 (TWS 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Applied Mathematics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Thesis: Applied Mathematics 990 (TWS 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Mathematical Sciences</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Academic orientation 102 (UPO 102)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	0.00



**Programmes**

- BConSci Clothing Retail Management
- BConSci Food Retail Management
- BConSci Hospitality Management
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Biochemistry
- BSc Biological Sciences
- BSc Biotechnology
- BSc Chemistry
- BSc Culinary Science
- BSc Ecology
- BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology
- BSc Entomology
- BSc Environmental Sciences
- BSc Food Science
- BSc Genetics
- BSc Geography
- BSc Geoinformatics
- BSc Geology
- BSc Human Genetics
- BSc Human Physiology
- BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Medical Sciences
- BSc Meteorology
- BSc Microbiology
- BSc Physics
- BSc Plant Science
- BSc Zoology
- BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management
- BScAgric Animal Science
- BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences
- BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Natural and Agricultural Sciences Deans Office

**Period of presentation** Year

**Academic orientation 120 (UPO 120)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Programmes**

- BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences
- BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences
- BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Humanities Deans Office



**Period of presentation** Year

### Consumer facilitation 222 (VBF 222)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes**

BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BSc Culinary Science

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Consumer decision making (determinants of informed, responsible consumer decisions, complexity of consumer decisions), consumer satisfaction, consumer socialisation (consumer education; development of consumer skills); consumerism (consumer protection) and consumer complaint behaviour. Gender issues in consumer decision-making, expenditure patterns of the diverse South African consumer market and globalisation. The UN sustainable development goals #5 and 12 are addressed in this module and all projects are focused on responsible consumption behaviour.

### Research project 400 (VBR 400)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes**

BConSci Clothing Retail Management  
BConSci Food Retail Management  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BSc Culinary Science

**Prerequisites** BEM 314 and Final-year status

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

**Module content**

Research methodology. Planning, executing and reporting a research project in clothing retail management; food retail management, hospitality management or culinary science.

### Dissertation: Consumer science 890 (VBR 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes**  
MConSci  
MConSci Clothing Management  
MConSci Food Management  
MConSci Interior Merchandise Management

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Consumer Science 990 (VBR 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes**  
PhD Consumer Science Clothing Management  
PhD Consumer Science Development  
PhD Consumer Science Food Management  
PhD Consumer Science Interior Merchandise Management

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Food service management 321 (VDB 321)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**  
BConSci Hospitality Management  
BDietetics  
BSc Culinary Science

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** Natural and Agricultural Sciences students: VDS 322 #

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### Module content

Planning and layout of food service units for different food service systems. Equipment for food services. Factors influencing the choice and purchasing of equipment for different food service units. Hygiene and safety in food services. management in food service systems. Financial management in food services.



## Food service management 420 (VDB 420)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	21.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BConSci Food Retail Management BConSci Hospitality Management BSc Culinary Science
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VDB 321 GS and ABV 320
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

The professional food service manager's roles, responsibilities and characteristics. Contemporary leadership and management styles in food service systems. Professionalism and ethics. Advanced food service systems and production management techniques and training facilitation. Marketing of food services.

All lectures and practical discussion sessions focus on the role of food service management in addressing the UN Sustainable Development Goal #12 to promote sustainable consumption and production patterns. The practical components of presenting a workshop and setting up a small business encourages innovation and entrepreneurial growth and sustainability, thereby addressing the UN Sustainable Development Goal #8 to promote full and productive employment and economic growth.

## Nutrition 250 (VDG 250)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Natural and Agricultural Sciences students: CMY 127; Health Sciences students: second year status
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Nutrition in the context of growth, development and composition of organisms. Metabolic processes and control in the body. Overview of nutritional processes. The study of the fundamental principles of nutrient metabolism (including macro- and micro-nutrients and water) and digestion physiology. Applications are made regarding man and animals.

Practical work: Experimental work and problem orientated tasks.

## Nutrition 260 (VDG 260)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------





<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	CMY127
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Nutrition in the context of growth, development and composition of organisms. Metabolic processes and control in the body. Overview of nutritional processes. The study of the fundamental principles of nutrient metabolism (including macro- and micro-nutrients and water) and digestion physiology. Applications are made regarding man and animals.

Practical work: Experimental work and problem orientated tasks.

## Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 210) 310 (VDG 310)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	17.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Food Retail Management</a> <a href="#">BConSci Hospitality Management</a> <a href="#">BSc Culinary Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Food Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

The study of nutrients and water regarding their chemical composition, characteristics, basic digestion, absorption, metabolism, functions, food sources and symptoms of deficiency and toxicity. Energy metabolism. Dietary recommendations and guidelines, dietary guides and meal planning. The use and application of food composition tables in dietary analysis.

## Nutrition (Capita Selecta from HNT 220) 320 (VDG 320)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	17.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Food Retail Management</a> <a href="#">BConSci Hospitality Management</a> <a href="#">BSc Culinary Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.



**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The role of nutrition in the life cycle: Prevention of lifestyle related diseases such as osteoporosis, cancer, coronary heart disease, tooth decay. Protein energy malnutrition and obesity.

## Dissertation: Nutrition 890 (VDG 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Nutrition](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

## Thesis: Nutrition 990 (VDG 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Nutrition](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

## Basic food preparation 111 (VDS 111)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 0.5 practical per week, 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Module 1: Basic food preparation and food preparation techniques. Mise en place, weighing and measurement techniques, equipment and terminology as applied in food preparation. History of the foodservice industry and contemporary chefs. Basic food quality control.

Module 2: Food preparation basics of the following: stocks, soups and sauces

## Basic food preparation 121 (VDS 121)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 6.00

### Programmes

[BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** VDS 111

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Module 1: Principles and practices of food preparation and cooking techniques. Mise en place, weighing and measurement techniques, equipment and terminology as applied in food preparation. Basic food quality control.

Module 2: Food preparation basics of the following: starches and cereals

## Food commodities and preparation 210 (VDS 210)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

[BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** VDS 121

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Module 1: The study of different food systems with regard to food preparation. Physical and chemical properties and the influence of the composition in food preparation.

Module 2: Food preparation basics of the following: soups and sauces, fruit and vegetables; salads; frozen desserts; gelatine.

Module 3: Origin and development of food habits; Factors influencing habits and choice; Dynamics of food habits.

Influence of religion on food habits. Food habits of different ethnic groups.

All modules encompass sustainable food preparation practices through the principles of waste management, including the utilising and minimization of food waste and portion control. Sustainability is addressed by the food practices of local ethnic cultures, the ingredients used by these cultures and how to utilise these ingredients and substituting ingredients with local alternatives.

## Food commodities and preparation 221 (VDS 221)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**

[BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Health Sciences

**Prerequisites** VDS 210

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Module 1: The study of different food systems with regard to food preparation. Physical and chemical properties and the influence of the composition in food preparation.

Module 2: Food preparation basics of the following: meat; poultry; fish, legumes, eggs and milk, baked products (whole spectrum); leavening agents.

Module 3: The influence of culture on cuisines. Study of the cuisines of selected African, European and Eastern countries.

All modules encompass sustainable food preparation practices through the principles of waste management, including the utilising and minimization of food waste and portion control. Sustainability is addressed by the food practices of local ethnic cultures, the ingredients used by these cultures and how to utilise these ingredients and substituting ingredients with local alternatives.

## Basic food preparation and food preparation techniques 231 (VDS 231)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes**

[BDietetics](#)



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### **Module content**

Basic food preparation and food preparation techniques.

### **Food commodities and preparation 232 (VDS 232)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BDietetics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### **Module content**

Food commodities and preparation.

### **Consumer food research 310 (VDS 310)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	21.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BConSci Food Retail Management</a> <a href="#">BSc Culinary Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VDS 221
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### **Module content**

Planning executing and reporting consumer food research. Food preservation and evaluation techniques. Experiments in food, emphasizing ingredient function and standard preparation methods. Application of experimental methods through which the chemical and physical reactions of food to different food handling, preparation and preservation techniques are illustrated. Quality evaluation and consumer orientated sensory evaluation of food products.



## Large-scale food production and restaurant management 322 (VDS 322)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	31.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BConSci Hospitality Management BSc Culinary Science
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Health Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VDS 210 and VDS 221
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week, 3 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Module 1: Restaurant management. Table setting, table serving, wine service, food and wine pairing, beverage management.

Module 2: Menu planning for different food service systems and styles of food service.

Module 3: Large scale food procurement, consumption and storage.

Practical work: Principles of large-scale food preparation and the practical application thereof in a practical restaurant situation. Recipe formats and adjustment applicable to large-scale food preparation. Work scheduling and the practical exposure to the use of large scale catering equipment in a real life situation.

The UN sustainable development goals #3; 8; 9; 11 and 12 are addressed during the theory components and practical sessions. Projects are focused on identifying not only critical areas of concern but also possible mitigating strategies thus encouraging initiatives to achieve good health and well-being, responsible industry consumption, production community engagement and economic growth.

## Large-scale food production 323 (VDS 323)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	19.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BDietetics
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VDS 231
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Large-scale production.

## Food safety and hygiene 354 (VDS 354)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------



**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Module 1: General anatomy and morphology of bacteria, viruses and fungi. Basic nutritional requirements of micro-organisms and the effect of environmental factors on microbiological growth. Food decay, food poisoning and preservation of food by micro-organisms. Basic principles involved in disinfections, sterilization and control of microbes; techniques of microbial repression: sterilization by using heat, radiation, filtration, chemicals decimation of numbers.

Module 2: Food safety approached from retail, commercial and institutional angles. Safety issues surrounding food. Principles of food safety and food hygiene; good manufacturing practices; HACCP and risk analysis; employee health, hygiene and safety; Consumer rights and protection; occupational health and safety; health and food safety legislation in South Africa.

## Recipe development and standardisation 413 (VDS 413)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Food Retail Management](#)  
[BConSci Hospitality Management](#)  
[BSc Culinary Science](#)

**Prerequisites** VDS 310 or VDS 322

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Recipe development process. Development of appropriate recipes and food products for a given situation. Standardisation of recipes. Food styling and food photography.

The UN sustainable development goals #3; 8; 9; 11 and 12 are addressed during the theory components and practical sessions. Projects are focused on identifying not only critical areas of concern but also possible mitigating strategies thus encouraging innovation to achieve good health and well-being, responsible industry consumption, production community engagement and economic growth.



## Culinary art 414 (VDS 414)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	22.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BConSci Hospitality Management BSc Culinary Science
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VDS 322
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Advanced food preparation and presentation techniques. Event planning and banqueting for Hospitality Management students and a culinary science project application for Culinary Science students

## Consumer aspects of food 417 (VDS 417)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BConSci Food Retail Management
<b>Prerequisites</b>	BEM 212
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Consumer and Food Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Role playing factors relating to consumer behaviour, food procurement and consumption. The introduction of the 2011 Consumer protection act and food labelling laws. Consumer education in relation to consumers' social responsibility. The UN sustainable development goal #12 is addressed in this subject. Projects are focused on consumer education, responsible consumer consumption and household production as well as community engagement.

## Culinary art 424 (VDS 424)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	22.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BConSci Hospitality Management BSc Culinary Science
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VDS 414
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week, 2 practicals per week





**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Advanced food preparation and presentation techniques. Event planning and banqueting for Hospitality Management students and a culinary science project application for Culinary Science students.

## Food retailing and visual merchandising of food 427 (VDS 427)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 17.00

**Programmes** [BConSci Food Retail Management](#)

**Prerequisites** VDS 417

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

A South African perspective on food retail management with a focus on how general logistics throughout the supply chain is implemented with the South African consumer in mind. Aspects of food retailing with regard to display, presentation and shop layout as applied to food products are accentuated. This includes a practical application of the principles in visual merchandising of food and food retailing in the food industry. The UN sustainable development goal #12 is addressed during the theory components and practical sessions. Projects are focused on identifying not only critical areas of concern across the supply chain with possible mitigating strategies (thus encouraging responsible industry consumption, production) but also the adoption of innovative marketing strategies/ visual merchandising that educate consumers in terms of more sustainable consumption and production.

## Food consumerism and product advice 723 (VDS 723)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer Science

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2



### Module content

Factors influencing food consumption, consumer behaviour and food choice. Food product advice. Consumer advice, marketing of food products, consumer education.

## Veterinary ethology 202 (VET 202)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BVSc](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 20 practicals, 81 lectures over a two week period

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Production Animal Studies

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

The husbandry of and common procedures performed on key domestic species, behavioral principles of key domestic species, handling skills for key domestic animals, aspects of animal welfare.

## Nutrition science 310 (VGE 310)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** BCM 251 GS and BCM 261 GS and DAF 200 GS and VKU 260 GS

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week, Fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Basic principles of chemistry, biochemistry of feed constituents, digestion and metabolism in all livestock species. Description of the characteristics of commonly used feedstuffs, such as forages, silage and hay protein and energy concentrates and by-products.

## Nutrition science 320 (VGE 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)



<b>Prerequisites</b>	VGE 310 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	3 lectures per week, Fortnightly practicals
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Evaluation of energy and nutrient content of feedstuffs and assessment of nutritional requirements, and feeding standards for maintenance, growth, reproduction and lactation.

### Monogastric nutrition and production 411 (VGE 411)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Animal Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VGE 320 and VKU 260 and simultaneously register for TRL 420, VSX 420 and KVK 420
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Specialised nutrition of monogastric animals: poultry, pigs, horses and selected freshwater aquatic organisms. Pig production and management – sow, boar and growing pigs. The design and utilisation of equipment and housing facilities are discussed and the impact of manure management on environmental health and sustainability. Hygiene and herd health programmes, product quality and marketing. Practical work: The use of computer systems in managing the feeding of selected monogastric animals.

### Animal nutrition 703 (VGE 703)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	50.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 practical per week, 5 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year



## Module content

Advanced study with specialisation in the nutrition of monogastric species for example poultry, dogs and pigs. Advanced study of foregut and hindgut digestive processes and flow dynamics. Manipulation of digestion, end product metabolism, ad libitum and controlled feed intake. Energy, protein, mineral and vitamin requirements and standards for beef and dairy cattle, small stock and horses. Appropriate ration formulation. The study embodies lectures, seminars, practical assignments and a research project with the results reported in a research paper. (Theoretical components include VGE 411, VGE 421 and VGE 423.)

### Monogastric nutrition 801 (VGE 801)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

#### Module content

Advanced study with specialisation in the nutrition of monogastric species for example poultry, dogs, pigs, aquaculture species, pets, cage birds, game birds and waterfowl as well as monogastric species in zoos and game breeding ranches. The study entails research, seminars and practical assignments.

### Ruminant nutrition 802 (VGE 802)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

#### Module content

Advanced study of foregut and hindgut digestive processes and flow dynamics. Manipulation of digestion, end product metabolism, ad libitum and controlled feed intake. Energy, protein, mineral and vitamin requirements and standards for beef and dairy cattle, small stock and horses. Appropriate ration formulation. The study entails lectures, seminars, practical assignments and a research project with the results reported in a research paper.

### Pig science 800 (VKD 800)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Specialised study concerning pig production, considerations when planning pig production units, policy planning and market conditions. Production physiology, housing, nutritional management, breeding practices, diseases and hygiene. Products. Practical scientific and industry orientation through different assignments.

## Animal science pharmacology 411 (VKF 411)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Prerequisites** DFS 320 and VGE 320

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The pharmacology, laws, control and use of substances for animal production.

## Animal science, breeding and nutrition 223 (VKU 223)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to adaptation physiology with reference to origin and domestication of farm and companion animals. Livestock species, breed development and diversity. Principles of applied animal breeding, quantitative and qualitative inheritance. Trait classification and factors influencing genetic progress in farm animals. Introduction to animal nutrition with the focus on feed intake, digestibility and metabolism of feeds in both monogastric and ruminant animals. Classification of feedstuffs and the nutritive value in the diet for the different farm animal species. An introduction to applied nutrition and feeding of monogastric and ruminant animals, equine and companion animals.

## Principles of animal nutrition 224 (VKU 224)



---

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BVSc</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	6 lectures per week over 10 weeks
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Introduction to animal nutrition with the focus on feed intake, digestibility and metabolism of feeds in both monogastric and ruminant animals. Classification of feedstuffs and the nutritive value in the diet for the different farm animal species. An introduction to applied nutrition and feeding of monogastric and ruminant animals, equine and companion animals.

### Animal science 250 (VKU 250)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Animal Science</a>
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

A brief perspective on the South African livestock industry with reference to the role of Sustainable development goals (SDGs) in a Southern African context. South African biomes in which animal production is practised. Animal ecological factors that influence regional classification. Introduction to adaptation physiology with reference to origin and domestication of farm and companion animals. Livestock species, breed development and breed characterisation. Basic principles of animal breeding and genetics, animal nutrition. Practical work includes identification and classification of different breeds of livestock.

### Animal science 260 (VKU 260)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</a> <a href="#">BScAgric Animal Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VKU 250 GS



**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to the concepts of animal production systems in South African production environments. Principles and requirements for extensive, semi-intensive and intensive livestock production with reference to large- and small stock, poultry and pigs. Principles of communal farming systems in Southern Africa. Game management systems with reference to conservation and game farming. The role of the human in livestock production systems and sustainable production.

## Research methodology 400 (VKU 400)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** Must be able to register for all final-year modules (TLR 411, GVK 420, PVK 420, TLR 420, KVK 420, VGE 411, VSX 420, WDE 450)

**Contact time** 1 seminar per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Introduction to research methodology. Principles and terminology related to research in animal science. Scientific writing skills and communication. Popular articles, seminars and preparation of scientific manuscripts. Project proposals: approach to problem solving, methodology and appropriate referencing and reporting. Presentation of seminar. Multidisciplinary case studies in a Southern African context. Sustainable Development Goals (SDGs) are reviewed with the focus on the challenges and applications in South Africa and Africa.

## Animal science 700 (VKU 700)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 70.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

The study of animal-environment and genotype-environment interactions and the impact on natural resources. Adaptational mechanisms of breeds and species. The formulation of optimal farming systems with respect to adaptation. The determination of biological outputs and the classification of animal breeds and species in terms of biological traits. A study of specific topics by way of literature, seminars, discussions and research assignments. Each student does a research project and compiles a research paper. Research and study assignments are executed taking the academic needs of the candidates into consideration. (Theoretical components GVK 420, KVK 420, PVK 420, VKD 410, VKU 411, VKU 412 and WKE 420.)

## Dissertation: Animal science 801 (VKU 801)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Dissertation: Animal science 890 (VKU 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MScAgric Animal Science Animal Breeding and Genetics</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Animal Science Animal Nutrition</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Animal Science Livestock Production and Ecology</a> <a href="#">MScAgric Animal Science Production Physiology and Product Quality</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

Dissertation of 180 credits.

## Thesis: Animal science 990 (VKU 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Animal Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English





**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

### Meat science 801 (VLE 801)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

#### Module content

Advanced study of carcass and meat quality characteristics as influenced by breeding, nutrition, physiology, growth and development as well as treatment and processing technology. Cattle, sheep, goats, pigs, poultry and game. Processing. Saleability, marketing methods, consumer profiles. Organisation and legislation.

### Distribution-free methods 710 (VMT 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BComHons Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 311, WST 312, WST 321

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

#### Module content

A selection of: Nonparametric stochastic processes. Power and asymptotic power of distribution-free procedures. Theory and simulation. Asymptotic relative efficiency. Linear rank tests: Definition, properties and applications. Equal in distribution technique. Counting and ranking statistics. Introduction to one and two sample U-statistics. Permutation and distribution-free rank-like statistics. Multi-sample distribution-free tests, rank correlation and regression. Some nonparametric bootstrap and smoothing methods.

### Livestock ecology 800 (VNE 800)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.



**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

#### **Module content**

The study of animal-environment and genotype-environment interactions and the impact on natural resources. Adaptational mechanisms of breeds and species. The formulation of optimal farming systems with respect to adaptation. The determination of biological outputs and the classification of animal breeds and species in terms of biological traits. Research and study assignments are executed taking the academic needs of the candidates into consideration.

### **Meat and dairy science 420 (VSX 420)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)

**Prerequisites** DFS 320 GS

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Animal and Wildlife Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

#### **Module content**

Meat industry. Meat species. Composition of carcass and meat, slaughtering process, meat quality, and the consumer. Dairy industry. Composition and nutritional value of milk and factors that influence it. Milk production, milk quality and distribution.

### **Food composition and applied nutritional programmes 364 (VWV 364)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Food Science](#)  
[BSc Nutrition](#)

**Prerequisites** FST 351 and FST 352 or permission from the HOD.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Generation, interpretation and application of food composition data in nutrition programmes. Chemical composition of foods: sampling for food analysis, assessing methods of food analysis for inclusion in food composition data. Interpretation of food composition data. Nutritional labeling of food. Use of nutritional data in food formulations. Dietary supplementation, enrichment and fortification of foods.

## Advanced nutrition and food sciences 720 (VVW 720)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 12 discussion classes

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Discussion classes in advanced level nutrition and food sciences. Problem solving and literature discussion.

## Research project 763 (VVW 763)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 40.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 3 practicals per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences

**Period of presentation** Year

## Module content

A short research project on an approved topic in Nutrition and Food Sciences is planned, executed and presented in the form of a written report.

## Micronutrient malnutrition 765 (VVW 765)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Consumer and Food Sciences



**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to malnutrition in sub-Saharan Africa. Selected micronutrients (i.e. vitamin A, Fe, iodine, Zn): Their role as micronutrients and their significance in health, deficiency disorders and prevention thereof. Conceptual framework for understanding micronutrient deficiencies. Nutritional epidemiology. Micronutrients in nutritional support of individuals with HIV/aids.

## Pasture science 213 (WDE 213)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BVSc](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 blocks with a total of 60 lectures

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Basic principles of pasture science: the influence of biotic and abiotic factors on the productivity of different strata and components of natural and planted pastures. This will enable the student to understand the management, production, appropriate and optimal utilisation as well as the conservation of these pastures. These principles can be used to ensure sustainable animal production and health.

One large assignment to be completed during recess in addition to lecture time.

## Principles of veld management 310 (WDE 310)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Animal Science](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



### Module content

The influence of biotic and abiotic factors on the productivity of different strata and components of natural pastures. This will enable the student to advise users, with the necessary motivation, on the appropriate use of these strata and components and will form a basis for further research on this system. The principles of veld management and the influence of management practices on sustainable animal production from natural pastures. This will enable the student to advise users on veld management and veld management principles. It will also form a basis for further research on veld management.

### Planted pastures and fodder crops 320 (WDE 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management](#)  
[BScAgric Animal Science](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** WDE 310 GS

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The establishment and use of planted pastures species and fodder crops and the conservation of fodder. This will enable students to advise users on establishment and utilization of planted pastures species as well as farmers on the production, conservation and optimum use of fodder. This will also form a basis for further research on planted pastures.

### Advanced pasture science 450 (WDE 450)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScAgric Animal Science](#)  
[BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** WDE 320

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

The production potential and quality of pastures as influenced by botanical composition, vegetation cover, livestock grazing and browsing potential, soil chemical, physical and biological conditions in addition to other important environmental processes are addressed. Pasture selection for different purposes and the importance of pasture management requirements within a planned livestock fodder flow system are taught. Monitoring pastures (both natural and cultivated) in different biomes of Southern Africa, through different assessment techniques to understand the health, production potential and quality thereof is explained. The different utilisation methods of pastures, as influenced by the livestock factor and their effects on the pastures regrowth potential, in addition to soil quality aspects are important principles that determine the value of pastures. The evaluation of grasses and other vegetation types in terms of adaptation, acceptability and adaptability to environmental and management conditions are important to an integrated and adaptive pasture and livestock production system.

## Range management in wildlife systems 701 (WDE 701)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 10.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Wildlife Management](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 5 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Range evaluation and utilisation with the emphasis on aspects important in wildlife production, and integrated wildlife/livestock production systems.

## Environmental resource assessment and management 750 (WDE 750)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 14.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Department of Plant and Soil Sciences

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Determining resource potential of land on the basis of botanical composition, vegetation cover, animal grazing and browsing potential, water quality, soil quality, chemical, physical and biological soil degradation, soil erosion and other important environmental processes. These are essential for integrated agricultural land use practices. Evaluation of grasses and other vegetation types in terms of environmental adaptation, acceptability and adaptability to a sustainable utilisation system and the management requirements of an integrated and adaptive management system.

### Rangeland management 781 (WDE 781)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgricHons Crop Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

The development of rangeland management strategies integrating ecological and physiological principles with economic and sociological constraints to achieve desired objectives whilst ensuring the conservation, and where necessary, the recuperation of natural resources.

### Pasture science 782 (WDE 782)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgricHons Crop Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

The identification of adapted pasture and fodder species (including grasses, legumes, fodder trees and drought tolerant crops) for different agro-ecological areas. The establishment, fertilization and irrigation requirements of different pastures. The management requirements when utilized as green grazing, standing hay or conserved feed.



## Integrated plant and animal production 783 (WDE 783)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	14.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

The role of crop rotations and ley crops in marginal cropping conditions to ensure sustained production. The integration of pastures and silvicultural/ horticultural crops (eg. Agro-forestry) to produce timber, firewood, fruits/nuts and livestock products. Provision of feed requirements for both commercial and communal livestock enterprises by combining livestock requirements and feed supply in a process of economic optimization and emphasizing the importance of records and responses in the process of implementation.

## Advanced coursework 801 (WDE 801)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	120.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Any module and/or assignment(s) at the advanced level chosen in consultation with the head of department.

## Dissertation: Pasture science 890 (WDE 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MScAgric Pasture Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year





## Module content

This module involves the development, presentation and approval of a research proposal, the execution of the research project, and the writing up and presentation of the research results. In addition to the dissertation, the student is also expected to compile a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed UP accredited scientific journal.

### Mini-dissertation: Pasture science 891 (WDE 891)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	120.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

Each candidate must write a mini-dissertation on his/her research project in Pasture Science and at least prepare a concept research paper for publication in a peer-reviewed scientific journal.

### Thesis: Pasture science 990 (WDE 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Pasture Science</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Department of Plant and Soil Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

This module involves the development, presentation and approval of a research proposal, the execution of the research project, and the writing up and presenting of the research results. In addition to the thesis, the student is also expected to publish at least one research paper in a peer-reviewed, UP accredited scientific journal. An oral examination covering Pasture Science and other fields related to the thesis will be conducted after the thesis has been accepted by examiners. A candidate needs to pass both the written thesis and oral examination to qualify for the degree.

### Dissertation Mathematics 890 (WIS 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Mathematics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.



---

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Thesis: Mathematics 990 (WIS 990)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">PhD Mathematical Sciences</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Atmospheric structure and processes 155 (WKD 155)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	16.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Chemistry</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>

<b>Prerequisites</b>	At least 50% for mathematics in grade 12.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

\*Students are not allowed to earn credits for WKD 155 and WKD 164

Introduction to weather and climate. Climate of South Africa. Urban and rural climate. Meteorological instruments. Motion of the earth. Atmospheric mass and pressure. Energy and heat budget. Moisture in the atmosphere. Cloud development. Climate change. ENSO. Electromagnetic spectrum and remote sensing in meteorology. Synoptic weather systems of South Africa.

### Programming in meteorology 254 (WKD 254)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>

<b>Prerequisites</b>	WKD 261. Limited to BSc (Meteorology) students or permission from the HOD.
----------------------	--



---

<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Meteorological data acquisition. Manipulation of multidimensional meteorological data sets. Spatial representation and interpretation of weather data. Introduction to statistical and numerical methods. Introduction to atmospheric cloud models.

### Physical meteorology 261 (WKD 261)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Environmental Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 114 or WTW 158 or WTW 134 or WTW 165.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 2

#### Module content

Conservative forces and conservation laws. Basic thermodynamic laws for dry and humid air. The equation of state. Adiabatic processes and temperature lapse rates. The Clausius-Clapeyron equation. Calculation of the wet adiabat. Radiative transfer. The physical basis of climate change.

### Introduction to dynamic meteorology 263 (WKD 263)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Geography</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 126 and WTW 128 (students should simultaneously be enrolled for WTW 218).
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 2



## Module content

Vector algebra, curl of a vector, total and partial derivatives, second law of motion. Spherical coordinates Acceleration in rotating co-ordinates, fundamental forces, momentum equation. Three dimensional flow balance, conservation of mass, heat equation, thermodynamic energy equation. Introduction to finite difference methods. Numerical estimation of the geostrophic wind, vorticity and divergence. Advection of temperature. Development of a two-dimensional temperature advection model.

## Atmospheric balance laws 351 (WKD 351)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 258 GS or WTW 218 and WTW 248, WTW 256 or WTW 264 or WTW 286 and WKD 261.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 1

## Module content

Vector algebra, curl of a vector, total and partial derivatives, second law of motion. Spherical coordinates. Acceleration in rotating co-ordinates, fundamental forces, momentum equation. Three dimensional flow balance, conservation of mass, thermodynamic energy equation.

## Atmospheric vorticity and divergence 352 (WKD 352)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WKD 261 and WKD 351.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 2

## Module content

Scale analyses and simplification of the basic equations. The geostrophic, thermal and gradient wind. The vorticity equation and divergence. Potential vorticity. Vertical motion and surface pressure tendency. Vorticity in barotropic fluids. Vorticity and divergence fields in a present and future climate

## Quasi-geostrophic analysis 361 (WKD 361)



---

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WKD 352 and WKD 254
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 3

#### Module content

Tendency and Omega equations. Model of a baroclinic system. Introduction to numerical models. Application in meteorological display and analysis software. Ascending and subsiding motion in a present and future climate.

### Fundamentals of weather forecasting 366 (WKD 366)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	36.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WKD 155, WKD 261, WKD 254 (students should simultaneously be enrolled for WKD 361)
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Integration of information to describe the current state of the atmosphere and to predict a future state of the atmosphere. Weather forecasting techniques. Applications of remote sensing in weather forecasting. Aerological diagrams and codes. Weather forecasting software and application to numerical weather prediction. Climate change and synoptic circulation.

### Seasonal and climate modelling 703 (WKD 703)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English

---



**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Fundamentals of seasonal forecasting. The El Niño/Southern Oscillation. Empirical orthogonal functions. Canonical correlation analysis. Empirical forecast models practical. Sea-surface temperature models. Fully coupled and two-tiered general circulation modelling. Dynamical and empirical downscaling techniques. Significance testing using Monte Carlo techniques. Modelling pitfalls. User application forecasting. Projections of decadal and multi decadal climate anomalies.

## Numerical modelling: applications 704 (WKD 704)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Initial atmospheric state, observation network, data assimilation, initialization, parameterisation, post-processing. Ensemble methods, probability forecasting, forecast verification. Global circulation models, limited-area and mesoscale models, variable resolution models, dispersion models. Seamless prediction. Practical applications.

## Dynamic meteorology 706 (WKD 706)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week, 1 practical per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Atmospheric oscillations: Linear perturbation theory (shallow water gravity waves, inertia gravity waves, Rossby waves). Baroclinic instability. Two-layer model. Energetics of Baroclinic waves. Zonally averaged circulation. Angular momentum budget. Lorenz energy cycle. Programming in meteorology.



## Radars meteorology 707 (WKD 707)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Basic principles and characteristics of the weather radar. The influence of the atmosphere on the propagation of electro-magnetic waves. Weather radar equation. The influence of attenuation on observations. The measurement of precipitation with a radar. Doppler Radar. Convective storm analysis with radar.

## Boundary layer meteorology 719 (WKD 719)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Introduction to, and the importance of the boundary layer. Structure of the boundary layer. Transfer of heat (molecular and turbulent). Impacts of the turbulent nature of the boundary layer on the dynamics of atmospheric motions. Closure and boundary layer parameterisation. Applications to air pollution dispersion.

## Overview of tropical and mid-latitude meteorology 731 (WKD 731)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Meteorology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology



**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

An overview of the weather and climate of the tropics and the mid-latitudes. Air masses. Instability and cloud formation. Weather systems of the tropics and mid-latitudes. Analysis of weather systems by utilising remote sensed data.

## Satellite meteorology 733 (WKD 733)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Overview of the basic principles of satellite imagery. Types of meteorological satellites. Basic principles of radiation. The different images available, their resolution and the advantages and limitations of each image. Image interpretation.

## Mesoscale meteorology 734 (WKD 734)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

An introduction to mesoscale meteorology. Surface mesoscale features, instability, severe storm classification and thunderstorms, flooding and flash flooding events.

## Selected themes 736 (WKD 736)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.





**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

A module on an aspect or aspects of meteorology not covered in the existing options with special emphasis in Cloud microphysics and Basic concepts of numerical modelling.

## Research project 763 (WKD 763)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 35.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Introduction to the philosophy of scientific research. Hypothesis testing. Reporting of scientific research. Identification of an appropriate research project. Compilation of a research proposal. Literature survey. Acquisition and manipulation of information. Introduction to innovative strategy and research management. Preparation of a research report (or paper). Presentation of research findings.

## Cloud dynamics 781 (WKD 781)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Meteorology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Geography Geoinformatics and Meteorology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Scaling and interpretation of equations of motion for mesoscale processes. The role of stability and other trigger actions on initial cloud formation and the evolution of clouds. Shallow and deep convective processes. Tropical and mid-latitude cloud generation processes and characteristics. Cloud splitting. Parameterisation of radiation and heat in atmospheric models. Microphysics parameterisations in numerical models.



## Wildlife science 420 (WKE 420)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VGE 320
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

Introductory aspects of wildlife conservation, habitat management, wildlife nutrition and keeping wildlife in zoological gardens.

## Wool science 800 (WLK 800)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 discussion class per week, 1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Animal and Wildlife Sciences
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### Module content

Discussions and literature studies on advanced subjects concerning wool and fibre. Factors influencing wool and mohair production. The influence of environment, nutrition and breeding on the chemical and physical composition of wool and mohair. Factors influencing classing, processing and marketing of wool. Discussions and seminars on techniques in quantifying physical and chemical characteristics of wool and mohair, relevant literature and research techniques. Evaluation of variation in skin and fibre.

## Mini-dissertation: Wildlife health, ecology and management 890 (WLS 890)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	90.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Wildlife Health, Ecology and Management (Coursework)</a>
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	VRM 813
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Production Animal Studies



**Period of presentation** Year

## Mathematical statistics 111 (WST 111)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Computer Science
- BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Meteorology
- BSc Physics

**Service modules**

- Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
- Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
- Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** At least 5 (60-69%) in Mathematics in the Grade 12 examination

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Characterisation of a set of measurements: Graphical and numerical methods. Random sampling. Probability theory. Discrete and continuous random variables. Probability distributions. Generating functions and moments.

## Mathematical statistics 121 (WST 121)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom</a> <a href="#">BCom Econometrics</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Applied Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Computer Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Information and Knowledge Systems</a> <a href="#">BSc Mathematical Statistics</a> <a href="#">BSc Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Meteorology</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	WST 111 GS or WST 133, 143 and 153
----------------------	------------------------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week
---------------------	---

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Statistics
-------------------	------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

Sampling distributions and the central limit theorem. Statistical inference: Point and interval estimation. Hypothesis testing with applications in one and two-sample cases. Introductory methods for: Linear regression and correlation, analysis of variance, categorical data analysis and non-parametric statistics. Identification, use, evaluation and interpretation of statistical computer packages and statistical techniques.

## Mathematical statistics 133 (WST 133)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
-----------------------	------

<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom Extended programme</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences</a> <a href="#">BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences</a>
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	At least 4 (50-59%) in Mathematics in the Grade 12 examination; BSc and BCom numeric stream students must be take WTW 133 concurrently.
----------------------	---

<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 tutorials per week, 4 lectures per week, Foundation Course
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Statistics
-------------------	------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------



## Module content

Descriptive statistics – Univariate:

The role of Statistics, various types of data. Sampling, probability and non-probability sampling techniques and the collection of data. Frequency, relative and cumulative distributions and graphical representations. Additional concepts relating to data processing: sigma notation, factorial notation. Descriptive measures of location, dispersion and symmetry. Exploratory data analysis.

Probability:

Introductory probability theory and applications. Set theory and probability laws. Introduction to random variables. Assigning probabilities, probability distributions, expected value and variance in general. Specific discrete probability distributions (Uniform, Binomial). Report writing and presentation. Identification, use, evaluation and interpretation of statistical computer packages and statistical techniques.

## Mathematical statistics 143 (WST 143)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BCom Extended programme](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** BSc and BCom numeric students: WST 133 and WTW 133 and must be taken concurrently with WTW 143.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 tutorials per week, 4 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Probability and inference:

Probability theory and theoretical distributions for continuous random variables (Uniform, Normal and t).

Sampling distributions (means and proportions). Estimation theory and hypothesis testing of sampling averages and proportions (one- and two-sample cases).

Optimisation techniques with economic applications:

Applications of differentiation in statistic and economic related problems. Integration. Applications of integration in statistic and economic related problems. Systems of equations in equilibrium. The area under a curve and applications of definite integrals in Statistics and Economics. Report writing and presentation. Identification, use, evaluation and interpretation of statistical computer packages and statistical techniques.

## Mathematical statistics 153 (WST 153)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)



<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WST 133 and WST143 and WTW 143. Must be taken concurrently with WTW 153.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 tutorials per week, 4 lectures per week, Foundation Course
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Probability distributions:

Introductory distribution theory and special statistical distributions (Binomial, Geometric, Hypergeometric, Poisson, Uniform, Normal, Gamma). Generating functions and moments. Bivariate probability distributions. Identification, use, evaluation and interpretation of statistical computer packages and statistical techniques.

### Mathematical statistics 211 (WST 211)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	24.00

**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Meteorology
- BSc Physics

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WST 111, WST 121, WTW 114 GS and WTW 124 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Statistics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



## Module content

Set theory. Probability measure functions. Random variables. Distribution functions. Probability mass functions. Density functions. Expected values. Moments. Moment generating functions. Special probability distributions: Bernoulli, binomial, hypergeometric, geometric, negative binomial, Poisson, Poisson process, discrete uniform, uniform, gamma, exponential, Weibull, Pareto, normal. Joint distributions: Multinomial, extended hypergeometric, joint continuous distributions. Marginal distributions. Independent random variables. Conditional distributions. Covariance, correlation. Conditional expected values. Transformation of random variables: Convolution formula. Order statistics. Stochastic convergence: Convergence in distribution. Central limit theorem. Practical applications. Practical statistical modelling and analysis using statistical computer packages and the interpretation of the output.

## Applications in data science 212 (WST 212)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes** [BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Prerequisites** WST 111, WST 121 or STK 110, STC 122

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Introductory machine learning concepts. Data base design and use. Data preparation and extraction. Statistical modelling using data base structures. Statistical concepts are demonstrated and interpreted through practical coding and simulation within a data science framework.

## Mathematical statistics 221 (WST 221)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 24.00

**Programmes** [BCom](#)  
[BCom Econometrics](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 211 GS



**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Stochastic convergence: Asymptotic normal distributions, convergence in probability. Statistics and sampling distributions: Chi-squared distribution. Distribution of the sample mean and sample variance for random samples from a normal population. T-distribution. F-distribution. Beta distribution. Point estimation: Method of moments. Maximum likelihood estimation. Unbiased estimators. Uniform minimum variance unbiased estimators. Cramer-Rao inequality. Efficiency. Consistency. Asymptotic relative efficiency. Bayes estimators. Sufficient statistics. Completeness. The exponential class. Confidence intervals. Test of statistical hypotheses. Reliability and survival distributions. Practical applications. Practical statistical modelling and analysis using statistical computer packages and the interpretation of the output.

## Multivariate analysis 311 (WST 311)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Econometrics  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 211, WST 221, WTW 211 GS and WTW 218 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1





## Module content

Multivariate statistical distributions: Moments of a distribution, moment generating functions, independence. Multivariate normal distribution: Conditional distributions, partial and multiple correlations. Distribution of quadratic forms in normal variables. Multivariate normal samples: Estimation of the mean vector and covariance matrix, estimation of correlation coefficients, distribution of the sample mean, sample covariance matrix. Principal component analysis. The linear model: Models of full rank, least squares estimators, test of hypotheses. The generalised linear model: Exponential family mean and variance, link functions, deviance and residual analysis, test statistics, log-linear and logit models. Practical applications: Practical statistical modelling and analysis using statistical computer packages and interpretation of the output.

## Stochastic processes 312 (WST 312)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Econometrics  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 211, WST 221, WTW 211 GS and WTW 218 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Definition of a stochastic process. Stationarity. Covariance stationary. Markov property. Random walk. Brownian motion. Markov chains. Chapman-Kolmogorov equations. Recurrent and transient states. First passage time. Occupation times. Markov jump processes. Poisson process. Birth and death processes. Structures of processes. Structure of the time-homogeneous Markov jump process. Applications in insurance. Practical statistical modelling, analysis and simulation using statistical computer packages and the interpretation of the output.

## Time-series analysis 321 (WST 321)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00



**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Computer Science
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Meteorology
- BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 211, WST 221, WTW 211 GS and WTW 218 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

**Note: Only one of the modules WST 321 or STK 320 may be included in any study programme.**

Stationary and non-stationary univariate time-series. Properties of autoregressive moving average (ARMA) and autoregressive integrated moving average (ARIMA) processes. Identification, estimation and diagnostic testing of a time-series model. Forecasting. Multivariate time-series. Practical statistical modelling and analysis using statistical computer packages, including that of social responsibility phenomena.

**Actuarial statistics 322 (WST 322)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Computer Science
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 211, WST 221, WTW 211 GS and WTW 218 GS

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics



**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Bayes estimation. Loss distributions. Reinsurance. Risk models. Ruin theory. Credibility theory. Extreme value theory. Copulas. Practical statistical modelling and analysis using statistical computer packages.

## Research report: Mathematical statistics 795 (WST 795)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Prerequisites** WST 311, WST 312, WST 321

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 and Semester 2

### Module content

Refer to the document: Criteria for the research management process and the assessment of the honours essays, available on the web: [www.up.ac.za](http://www.up.ac.za) under the Department of Statistics: postgraduate study.

## Cyber analytics 802 (WST 802)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 20.00

**Programmes** [MCom Advanced Data Analytics \(Coursework\)](#)  
[MSc Advanced Data Analytics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Reviewing, from a statistical perspective, the cyber-infrastructure ecosystem including distributed computing, multi node and distributed file eco systems, such as Amazon Web Services. Structured and unstructured data sources, including social media data and image data. Setting up of large data structures for analysis. Algorithms and techniques for computing statistics and statistical models on distributed data. Software to be used include, Hadoop, Map reduce, SAS, SAS Data loader for Hadoop.

## Mini-dissertation: Mathematical statistics 895 (WST 895)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 100.00



**Programmes** [MSc Advanced Data Analytics \(Coursework\)](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Mathematical statistics 990 (WST 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Mathematical Statistics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Natural and Agricultural Sciences

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Statistics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Calculus 114 (WTW 114)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes** [BCom](#)  
[BCom Econometrics](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Computer Science](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Humanities

**Prerequisites** 60% for Mathematics in Grade 12

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

\*This module serves as preparation for students majoring in Mathematics (including all students who intend to enrol for WTW 218 and WTW 220). Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 114, WTW 158, WTW 134, WTW 165.

Functions, limits and continuity. Differential calculus of single variable functions, rate of change, graph sketching, applications. The mean value theorem, the rule of L'Hospital. Definite and indefinite integrals, evaluating definite integrals using anti-derivatives, the substitution rule.

## Discrete structures 115 (WTW 115)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

### Programmes

BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences  
BSc Information and Knowledge Systems  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** 50% for Mathematics in Grade 12

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Propositional logic: truth tables, logical equivalence, implication, arguments. Mathematical induction and well-ordering principle. Introduction to set theory. Counting techniques: elementary probability, multiplication and addition rules, permutations and combinations, binomial theorem, inclusion-exclusion rule.

## Numerical analysis 123 (WTW 123)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00



**Programmes**

- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences
- BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences
- BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** WTW 114

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

Non-linear equations, numerical integration, initial value problems for differential equations, systems of linear equations. Algorithms for elementary numerical techniques are derived and implemented in computer programmes. Error estimates and convergence results are treated.

**Mathematics 124 (WTW 124)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Chemistry
- BSc Computer Science
- BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences
- BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WTW 114

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English



**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree:

WTW 124, WTW 146, WTW 148 and WTW 164. This module serves as preparation for students majoring in Mathematics (including all students who intend to enrol for WTW 218, WTW 211 and WTW 220).

The vector space  $R^n$ , vector algebra with applications to lines and planes, matrix algebra, systems of linear equations, determinants. Complex numbers and factorisation of polynomials. Integration techniques and applications of integration. The formal definition of a limit. The fundamental theorem of Calculus and applications. Vector functions and quadratic curves.

## Precalculus 133 (WTW 133)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

### Programmes

[BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching](#)  
[BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

### Prerequisites

BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences: 60% for Mathematics in Grade 12  
Other BSc Extended programmes: 50% for Mathematics Grade 12  
BCom Extended programme: 40% for Mathematics in Grade 12  
BEd programmes: 50% for Mathematics Grade 12

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Real numbers, elementary set notation, exponents and radicals. Algebraic expressions, fractional expressions, linear and quadratic equations, inequalities. Coordinate geometry: lines, circles. Functions: definition, notation, piecewise defined functions, domain and range, graphs, transformations of functions, symmetry, even and odd functions, combining functions, one-to-one functions and inverses, polynomial functions and zeros.

Sequences, summation notation, arithmetic, geometric sequences, infinite geometric series, annuities and instalments. Degrees and radians, unit circle, trigonometric functions, fundamental identities, trigonometric graphs, trigonometric identities, double-angle, half-angle formulae, trigonometric equations, applications.

This module is offered at the Mamelodi Campus to students from the BSc and BCom Extended programmes. At the Groenkloof Campus it is offered to BEd students.



## Mathematics 134 (WTW 134)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Economics
- BCom Statistics
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BSc Biochemistry
- BSc Biological Sciences
- BSc Biotechnology
- BSc Computer Science
- BSc Construction Management
- BSc Culinary Science
- BSc Ecology
- BSc Entomology
- BSc Environmental Sciences
- BSc Food Science
- BSc Genetics
- BSc Geography
- BSc Geoinformatics
- BSc Human Genetics
- BSc Human Physiology
- BSc Human Physiology, Genetics and Psychology
- BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
- BSc Medical Sciences
- BSc Microbiology
- BSc Nutrition
- BSc Plant Science
- BSc Quantity Surveying
- BSc Real Estate
- BSc Zoology
- BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management
- BScAgric Animal Science
- BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences
- BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** 50% for Mathematics in Grade 12

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1





## Module content

\*Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 134, WTW 165, WTW 114, WTW 158. WTW 134 does not lead to admission to Mathematics at 200 level and is intended for students who require Mathematics at 100 level only. WTW 134 is offered as WTW 165 in the second semester only to students who have applied in the first semester of the current year for the approximately 65 MBChB, or the 5-6 BChD places becoming available in the second semester and who were therefore enrolled for MGW 112 in the first semester of the current year.

Functions, derivatives, interpretation of the derivative, rules of differentiation, applications of differentiation, integration, interpretation of the definite integral, applications of integration. Matrices, solutions of systems of equations. All topics are studied in the context of applications.

## Calculus 143 (WTW 143)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BEd Intermediate Phase Teaching](#)  
[BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** BSc Extended programme and BEd programmes: WTW 133 BCom Extended programme: Students with WST 133 concurrently with WTW 143: WTW 133. Students with STK 133 concurrently with WTW 143: at least 65% for WTW 133.

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

## Module content

Functions: exponential and logarithmic functions, natural exponential and logarithmic functions, exponential and logarithmic laws, exponential and logarithmic equations, compound interest. Limits: concept of a limit, finding limits numerically and graphically, finding limits algebraically, limit laws without proofs, squeeze theorem without proof, one-sided limits, infinite limits, limits at infinity, vertical, horizontal and slant asymptotes, substitution rule, continuity, laws for continuity without proofs. Differentiation: average and instantaneous change, definition of derivative, differentiation rules without proofs, derivatives of polynomials, chain rule for differentiation, derivatives of trigonometric, exponential and logarithmic functions, applications of differentiation: extreme values, critical numbers, monotone functions, first derivative test, optimisation.

## Mathematics 144 (WTW 144)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00



**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** WTW 133

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Functions: Rate of change, exponential functions, the natural logarithm, exponential growth and decay, proportionality, power functions, fitting formulas to data. Rates of change and the derivative: Instantaneous rate of change, the derivative function, interpretations of the derivative, the second derivative.

Differentiation: Formulas and rules, applications, extremes of a function. All topics are studied in the context of applications.

## Linear algebra 146 (WTW 146)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BCom](#)  
[BCom Economics](#)  
[BCom Statistics](#)  
[BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Computer Science](#)  
[BSc Geoinformatics](#)  
[BSc Information and Knowledge Systems](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** 50% for Mathematics in Grade 12

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree:

WTW 124, WTW 146 and WTW 164. The module WTW 146 is designed for students who require Mathematics at 100 level only and does not lead to admission to Mathematics at 200 level.

Vector algebra, lines and planes, matrix algebra, solution of systems of equations, determinants. Complex numbers and polynomial equations. All topics are studied in the context of applications.

## Calculus 148 (WTW 148)



<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BCom BCom Economics BCom Statistics BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching BSc Computer Science BSc Geoinformatics BSc Information and Knowledge Systems
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 114 GS or WTW 134 GS
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

\*Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 124, WTW 148 and WTW 164. The module WTW 148 is designed for students who require Mathematics at 100 level only and does not lead to admission to Mathematics at 200 level.

Integration techniques. Modelling with differential equations. Functions of several variables, partial derivatives, optimisation. Numerical techniques. All topics are studied in the context of applications.

## Mathematical modelling 152 (WTW 152)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	8.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Computer Science BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences BSc Information and Knowledge Systems BSc Mathematical Statistics BSc Mathematics BSc Meteorology BSc Physics
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	50% for Mathematics in Grade 12
<b>Contact time</b>	1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The module serves as an introduction to computer programming as used in science. Modelling of dynamical processes using difference equations; curve fitting and linear programming are studied. Applications are drawn from real-life situations in, among others, finance, economics and ecology.

## Calculus 153 (WTW 153)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences](#)  
[BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WTW 143

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Differential calculus of a single variable with proofs and applications. The mean value theorem, the rule of L'Hospital. Upper and lower sums, definite and indefinite integrals, the Fundamental theorem of Calculus, the mean value theorem for integrals, integration techniques, with some proofs.

## Mathematics 154 (WTW 154)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** [BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences](#)

**Prerequisites** WTW 144

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 3 lectures per week, Foundation Course

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



### Module content

Integration: Accumulated change, the definite integral, anti-derivatives, the definite integral as an area, interpretations of the definite integral.

Matrices and systems of linear equations: Matrix addition and scalar multiplication, matrix multiplication, systems of linear equations. All topics are studied in the context of applications.

### Calculus 158 (WTW 158)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

BEng Chemical Engineering  
BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Civil Engineering  
BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electrical Engineering  
BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electronic Engineering  
BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Industrial Engineering  
BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mechanical Engineering  
BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mining Engineering  
BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Geology

### Programmes

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** 60% for Mathematics in Grade 12

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

\*This module is designed for first-year engineering students. Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 158, WTW 114, WTW 134, WTW 165.

Introduction to vector algebra. Functions, limits and continuity. Differential calculus of single variable functions, rate of change, graph sketching, applications. The mean value theorem, the rule of L'Hospital. Indefinite integrals, integration.



## Dynamical processes 162 (WTW 162)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

**Programmes** BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Extended programme - Mathematical Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** WTW 114

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 162 and WTW 264.

Introduction to the modelling of dynamical processes using elementary differential equations. Solution methods for first order differential equations and analysis of properties of solutions (graphs). Applications to real life situations.

## Mathematics 164 (WTW 164)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



## Programmes

BEng Chemical Engineering  
BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Civil Engineering  
BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electrical Engineering  
BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electronic Engineering  
BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Industrial Engineering  
BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mechanical Engineering  
BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mining Engineering  
BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Extended programme - Physical Sciences  
BSc Geology  
BSc Meteorology

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** WTW 114 or WTW 158

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*This module is designed for first-year engineering students. Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 146, WTW 148 and WTW 124,

Vector algebra with applications to lines and planes in space, matrix algebra, systems of linear equations, determinants, complex numbers, factorisation of polynomials and conic sections. Integration techniques, improper integrals. The definite integral, fundamental theorem of Calculus. Applications of integration. Elementary power series and Taylor's theorem. Vector functions, space curves and arc lengths. Quadratic surfaces and multivariable functions.

## Mathematics 165 (WTW 165)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00



**Programmes**  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Medical Sciences  
BSc Microbiology  
BVSc

**Service modules**  
Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** 50% for Mathematics in Grade 12 and MGW 112# or registered for BVSc

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 134, WTW 165, WTW 114, WTW 158. WTW 165 does not lead to Mathematics at 200 level and is intended for students who require Mathematics at 100 level only. WTW 165 is offered in English in the second semester only to students who have applied in the first semester of the current year for the approximately 65 MBChB, or the 5-6 BChD places becoming available in the second semester and who were therefore enrolled for MGW 112 in the first semester of the current year.

Functions, derivatives, interpretation of the derivative, rules of differentiation, applications of differentiation, integration, interpretation of the definite integral, applications of integration, matrices, solutions of systems of equations. All topics are studied in the context of applications.

### Linear algebra 211 (WTW 211)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00





**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Chemistry
- BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology
- BSc Geology
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Meteorology
- BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WTW 124

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

**Module content**

This is an introduction to linear algebra on  $R^n$ . Matrices and linear equations, linear combinations and spans, linear independence, subspaces, basis and dimension, eigenvalues, eigenvectors, similarity and diagonalisation of matrices, linear transformations.

**Calculus 218 (WTW 218)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Econometrics
- BCom Statistics
- BCom Statistics and Data Science
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics
- BSc Applied Mathematics
- BSc Chemistry
- BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology
- BSc Geology
- BSc Mathematical Statistics
- BSc Mathematics
- BSc Physics



**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WTW 114 and WTW 124

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Calculus of multivariable functions, directional derivatives. Extrema and Lagrange multipliers. Multiple integrals, polar, cylindrical and spherical coordinates.

## Analysis 220 (WTW 220)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WTW 114 and WTW 124, WTW 211 and WTW 218

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

\*This module is recommended as an elective only for students who intend to enrol for WTW 310 and/or WTW 320. Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 220 and WTW 224.

Properties of real numbers. Analysis of sequences and series of real numbers. Power series and theorems of convergence. The Bolzano-Weierstrass theorem. The intermediate value theorem and analysis of real-valued functions on an interval. The Riemann integral: Existence and properties of the interval.

## Linear algebra 221 (WTW 221)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BCom  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

### Service modules

Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WTW 211 and WTW 218

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Abstract vector spaces, change of basis, matrix representation of linear transformations, orthogonality, diagonalisability of symmetric matrices, some applications.

## Techniques of analysis 224 (WTW 224)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



**Programmes**

- BCom
- BCom Statistics
- BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching
- BSc Chemistry
- BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology
- BSc Environmental Sciences
- BSc Geology

**Prerequisites** WTW 124 and WTW 211 GS and WTW 218 GS

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

**Module content**

\*This module does not lead to admission to WTW 310 or WTW 320. Students will not be credited for more than one of the following modules for their degree: WTW 220 and WTW 224.

Sequences of real numbers: convergence and monotone sequences. Series of real numbers: convergence, integral test, comparison tests, alternating series, absolute convergence, ratio and root tests. Power series: representation of functions as power series, Taylor and Maclaurin series. Application to series solutions of differential equations.

**Mathematics 238 (WTW 238)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 16.00

**Programmes**

- BEng Chemical Engineering
- BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE
- BEng Civil Engineering
- BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE
- BEng Computer Engineering
- BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE
- BEng Electrical Engineering
- BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE
- BEng Electronic Engineering
- BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE
- BEng Industrial Engineering
- BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE
- BEng Mechanical Engineering
- BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE
- BEng Metallurgical Engineering
- BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE
- BEng Mining Engineering
- BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** WTW 256 and WTW 258 GS



**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Linear algebra, eigenvalues and eigenvectors with applications to first and second order systems of differential equations. Sequences and series, convergence tests. Power series with applications to ordinary differential equations with variable coefficients. Fourier series with applications to partial differential equations such as potential, heat and wave equations.

## Vector analysis 248 (WTW 248)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** WTW 218

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Vectors and geometry. Calculus of vector functions with applications to differential geometry, kinematics and dynamics. Vector analysis, including vector fields, line integrals of scalar and vector fields, conservative vector fields, surfaces and surface integrals, the Theorems of Green, Gauss and Stokes with applications.

## Differential equations 256 (WTW 256)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00



## Programmes

BEng Chemical Engineering  
BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Civil Engineering  
BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electrical Engineering  
BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electronic Engineering  
BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Industrial Engineering  
BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mechanical Engineering  
BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mining Engineering  
BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** WTW 158 and WTW 164

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Theory and solution methods for linear differential equations as well as for systems of linear differential equations. Theory and solution methods for first order non-linear differential equations. The Laplace transform with application to differential equations. Application of differential equations to modelling problems.

## Calculus 258 (WTW 258)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00



## Programmes

BEng Chemical Engineering  
BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Civil Engineering  
BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electrical Engineering  
BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electronic Engineering  
BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Industrial Engineering  
BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mechanical Engineering  
BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mining Engineering  
BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** WTW 158 and WTW 164

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Calculus of multivariable functions, directional derivatives. Extrema. Multiple integrals, polar, cylindrical and spherical coordinates. Line integrals and the theorem of Green. Surface integrals and the theorems of Gauss and Stokes.

## Numerical methods 263 (WTW 263)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00



BEng Chemical Engineering  
BEng Chemical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Civil Engineering  
BEng Civil Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Computer Engineering  
BEng Computer Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electrical Engineering  
BEng Electrical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Electronic Engineering  
BEng Electronic Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Industrial Engineering  
BEng Industrial Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mechanical Engineering  
BEng Mechanical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering  
BEng Metallurgical Engineering ENGAGE  
BEng Mining Engineering  
BEng Mining Engineering ENGAGE  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology

**Programmes**

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 164
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

**Module content**

Numerical integration. Numerical methods to approximate the solution of non-linear equations, systems of equations (linear and non-linear), differential equations and systems of differential equations. Direct methods to solve linear systems of equations.

**Differential equations 264 (WTW 264)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	12.00

BCom  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Engineering and Environmental Geology  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Meteorology

**Programmes**

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
------------------------	---





<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 114 and WTW 124
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

\*Students will not be credited for both WTW 162 and WTW 264 or both WTW 264 and WTW 286 for their degree.

Theory and solution methods for ordinary differential equations and initial value problems: separable and linear first order equations, linear equations of higher order, systems of linear equations. Laplace transform.

## Discrete structures 285 (WTW 285)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Computer Science](#)  
[BSc Information and Knowledge Systems](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology

**Prerequisites** WTW 115

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Setting up and solving recurrence relations. Equivalence and partial order relations. Graphs: paths, cycles, trees, isomorphism. Graph algorithms: Kruskal, Prim, Fleury. Finite state automata.

## Differential equations 286 (WTW 286)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BCom BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Chemistry BSc Mathematical Statistics BSc Mathematics BSc Meteorology BSc Physics
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 114, WTW 124 and WTW 162
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

\*Students will not be credited for more than one of the modules for their degree: WTW 264, WTW 286  
Theory and solution methods for ordinary differential equations and initial value problems: separable and linear first-order equations, linear equations of higher order, systems of linear equations. Application to mathematical models. Numerical methods applied to nonlinear systems. Qualitative analysis of linear systems.

### Analysis 310 (WTW 310)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
<b>Programmes</b>	BCom BCom Statistics BCom Statistics and Data Science BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics BSc Applied Mathematics BSc Geology BSc Mathematical Statistics BSc Mathematics BSc Physics
<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Education Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences Faculty of Humanities
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 220
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1



### Module content

Topology of finite dimensional spaces: Open and closed sets, compactness, connectedness and completeness. Theorems of Bolzano-Weierstrass and Heine-Borel. Properties of continuous functions and applications. Integration theory for functions of one real variable. Sequences of functions.

## Complex analysis 320 (WTW 320)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** WTW 218 and WTW 220

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Series of functions, power series and Taylor series. Complex functions, Cauchy- Riemann equations, Cauchy's theorem and integral formulas. Laurent series, residue theorem and calculation of real integrals using residues.

## Financial engineering 354 (WTW 354)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BCom  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 211, WTW 211 and WTW 218

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week



**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Mean variance portfolio theory. Market equilibrium models such as the capital asset pricing model. Factor models and arbitrage pricing theory. Measures of investment risk. Efficient market hypothesis. Stochastic models of security prices

## Financial engineering 364 (WTW 364)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences

**Prerequisites** WST 211, WTW 124, WTW 218 and WTW 286/264

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Discrete time financial models: Arbitrage and hedging; the binomial model. Continuous time financial models: The Black-Scholes formula; pricing of options and the other derivatives; interest rate models; numerical procedures.

## Algebra 381 (WTW 381)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BCom](#)  
[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Computer Science](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)



<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences Faculty of Humanities
------------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 114 and WTW 211
----------------------	---------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
----------------------------	---

<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
-------------------	-------------------------------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

Group theory: Definition, examples, elementary properties, subgroups, permutation groups, isomorphism, order, cyclic groups, homomorphisms, factor groups. Ring theory: Definition, examples, elementary properties, ideals, homomorphisms, factor rings, polynomial rings, factorisation of polynomials. Field extensions, applications to straight-edge and compass constructions.

## Dynamical systems 382 (WTW 382)

<b>Qualification</b>	Undergraduate
----------------------	---------------

<b>Module credits</b>	18.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BCom</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics</a> <a href="#">BCom Statistics and Data Science</a> <a href="#">BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Applied Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Geology</a> <a href="#">BSc Mathematical Statistics</a> <a href="#">BSc Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BSc Physics</a>
-------------------	---

<b>Service modules</b>	Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology Faculty of Education Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences
------------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 218 and WTW 286/264
----------------------	-------------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
---------------------	--

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
----------------------------	---

<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
-------------------	-------------------------------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

Matrix exponential function: homogeneous and non-homogeneous linear systems of differential equations. Qualitative analysis of systems: phase portraits, stability, linearisation, energy method and Liapunov's method. Introduction to chaotic systems. Application to real life problems.



## Numerical analysis 383 (WTW 383)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BCom  
BCom Statistics  
BCom Statistics and Data Science  
BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Computer Science  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Economic and Management Sciences  
Faculty of Humanities

**Prerequisites** WTW 114, WTW 123 WTW 124 and WTW 211

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Direct methods for the numerical solution of systems of linear equations, pivoting strategies. Iterative methods for solving systems of linear equations and eigenvalue problems. Iterative methods for solving systems of nonlinear equations. Introduction to optimization. Algorithms for the considered numerical methods are derived and implemented in computer programmes. Complexity of computation is investigated. Error estimates and convergence results are proved.

## Partial differential equations 386 (WTW 386)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Actuarial and Financial Mathematics  
BSc Applied Mathematics  
BSc Geology  
BSc Mathematical Statistics  
BSc Mathematics  
BSc Meteorology  
BSc Physics

**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education



---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 248 and WTW 286/264
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Conservation laws and modelling. Fourier analysis. Heat equation, wave equation and Laplace's equation. Solution methods including Fourier series. Energy and other qualitative methods.

### Continuum mechanics 387 (WTW 387)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

#### Programmes

[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Meteorology](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)

<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 248 and WTW 286/264
<b>Contact time</b>	1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Afrikaans and English are used in one class
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Kinematics of a continuum: Configurations, spatial and material description of motion. Conservation laws. Analysis of stress, strain and rate of deformation. Linear constitutive equations. Applications: Vibration of beams, equilibrium problems in elasticity and special cases of fluid motion.

### Geometry 389 (WTW 389)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

#### Programmes

[BCom Statistics and Data Science](#)  
[BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching](#)  
[BSc Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Chemistry](#)  
[BSc Computer Science](#)  
[BSc Geology](#)  
[BSc Mathematical Statistics](#)  
[BSc Mathematics](#)  
[BSc Physics](#)



**Service modules** Faculty of Engineering, Built Environment and Information Technology  
Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Humanities

**Prerequisites** WTW 211

**Contact time** 1 tutorial per week, 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Afrikaans and English are used in one class

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Axiomatic development of neutral, Euclidean and hyperbolic geometry. Using models of geometries to show that the parallel postulate is independent of the other postulates of Euclid.

## Functional analysis 710 (WTW 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

**Prerequisites** Real analysis on third-year level

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

An introduction to the basic mathematical objects of linear functional analysis will be presented. These include metric spaces, Hilbert spaces and Banach spaces. Subspaces, linear operators and functionals will be discussed in detail. The fundamental theorems for normed spaces: The Hahn-Banach theorem, Banach-Steinhaus theorem, open mapping theorem and closed graph theorem. Hilbert space theory: Riesz' theorem, the basics of projections and orthonormal sets.

## Modern portfolio theory 712 (WTW 712)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Financial Engineering](#)

**Prerequisites** Enrolment for WTW 732 required.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week





**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

An introduction to Markowitz portfolio theory and the capital asset pricing model. Analysis of the deficiencies in these methods. Sensitivity based risk management. Standard methods for Value-at-Risk calculations. RiskMetrics, delta-normal methods, Monte Carlo simulations, back and stress testing.

## Axiomatic set theory and mathematical logic 724 (WTW 724)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Axiomatic set theory, ordinals, transfinite induction and recursion, ordinal arithmetic, the axiom of choice, cardinal arithmetic, the continuum hypothesis. Propositional and first order logic. The completeness and compactness theorems. Decidability, Gödel's incompleteness theorems.

## Special topics 727 (WTW 727)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling](#)

**Prerequisites** As required by specific topical content.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

A selection of special topics will be presented that reflects the expertise of researchers in the Department. The presentation of a specific topic is contingent on student numbers. Consult the website of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics for more details.

### Algebra 731 (WTW 731)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)

**Prerequisites** Algebra on third-year level

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

The following topics will be covered: Galois theory and solving equations by radicals, introduction to the theory of R-modules, direct sums and products, projectivity and injectivity, finitely generated modules over Euclidean domains, primary factorisation, applications to Jordan and rational canonical forms of matrices.

### Mathematical models of financial engineering 732 (WTW 732)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Financial Engineering](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Introduction to markets and instruments. Futures and options trading strategies, exotic options, arbitrage relationships, binomial option pricing method, mean variance hedging, volatility and the Greeks, volatility smiles, Black-Scholes PDE and solutions, derivative disasters.

### Numerical analysis 733 (WTW 733)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00



<b>Programmes</b>	BScHons Applied Mathematics BScHons Financial Engineering BScHons Mathematics BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling BScHons Mathematics of Finance
-------------------	---

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

An analysis as well as an implementation (including computer programs) of methods are covered. Numerical linear algebra: Direct and iterative methods for linear systems and matrix eigenvalue problems: Iterative methods for nonlinear systems of equations. Finite difference method for partial differential equations: Linear elliptic, parabolic, hyperbolic and eigenvalue problems. Introduction to nonlinear problems. Numerical stability, error estimates and convergence are dealt with.

## Measure theory and probability 734 (WTW 734)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

<b>Programmes</b>	BScHons Applied Mathematics BScHons Mathematics BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling BScHons Mathematics of Finance
-------------------	--

**Prerequisites** Real analysis on third-year level

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

Measure and integration theory: The Caratheodory extension procedure for measures defined on a ring, measurable functions, integration with respect to a measure on a  $\sigma$ -ring, in particular the Lebesgue integral, convergence theorems and Fubini's theorem.

Probability theory: Measure theoretic modelling, random variables, expectation values and independence, the Borel-Cantelli lemmas, the law of large numbers.  $L^1$ -theory,  $L^2$ -theory and the geometry of Hilbert space, Fourier series and the Fourier transform as an operator on  $L^2$ , applications of Fourier analysis to random walks, the central limit theorem.

## Main principles of analysis in application 735 (WTW 735)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Financial Engineering](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling](#)

**Prerequisites** Calculus at 2nd-year level (eg WTW 218) and one 3rd-year level module on analysis or applications of analysis (eg WTW 310, WTW 382, WTW 383 or WTW 386)

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

Study of main principles of analysis in the context of their applications to modelling, differential equations and numerical computation. Specific principles to be considered are those related to mathematical biology, continuum mechanics and mathematical physics as presented in the modules WTW 772, WTW 787 and WTW 776, respectively.

## Mathematical optimisation 750 (WTW 750)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Financial Engineering](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

**Prerequisites** Multivariate Calculus on 2nd-year level; Linear Algebra on 2nd-year level



<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Classical optimisation: Necessary and sufficient conditions for local minima. Equality constraints and Lagrange multipliers. Inequality constraints and the Kuhn-Tucker conditions. Application of saddle point theorems to the solutions of the dual problem. One-dimensional search techniques. Gradient methods for unconstrained optimisation. Quadratically terminating search algorithms. The conjugate gradient method. Fletcher-Reeves. Second order variable metric methods: DFP and BFGS. Boundary following and penalty function methods for constrained problems. Modern multiplier methods and sequential quadratic programming methods. Practical design optimisation project.

### Mathematical models of financial engineering 762 (WTW 762)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Financial Engineering</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics of Finance</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 732 or WTW 364
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

Exotic options, arbitrage relationships, Black-Scholes PDE and solutions, hedging and the Miller-Modigliani theory, static hedging, numerical methods, interest rate derivatives, BDT model, Vasicek and Hull-White models, complete markets, stochastic differential equations, equivalent Martingale measures.

### Finite element method 763 (WTW 763)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Applied Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BScHons Financial Engineering</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics of Finance</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 733 is strongly recommended



---

<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

An analysis as well as an implementation (including computer programs) of methods is covered. Introduction to the theory of Sobolev spaces. Variational and weak formulation of elliptic, parabolic, hyperbolic and eigenvalue problems. Finite element approximation of problems in variational form, interpolation theory in Sobolev spaces, convergence and error estimates.

### Stochastic calculus 764 (WTW 764)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------

<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
-----------------------	-------

#### Programmes

[BScHons Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 734 or WTW 735
----------------------	--------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
---------------------	---------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
-------------------	-------------------------------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
-------------------------------	------------

#### Module content

Mathematical modelling of Random walk. Conditional expectation and Martingales. Brownian motion and other Lévy processes. Stochastic integration. Ito's Lemma. Stochastic differential equations. Application to finance.

### Mathematical methods and models 772 (WTW 772)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------

<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
-----------------------	-------

#### Programmes

[BScHons Applied Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling](#)  
[BScHons Mathematics of Finance](#)

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
----------------------	-------------------



<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

This module aims at using advanced undergraduate mathematics and rigorously applying mathematical methods to concrete problems in various areas of natural science and engineering. The module will be taught by several lecturers from UP, industry and public sector. The content of the module may vary from year to year and is determined by relevant focus areas within the Department. The list of areas from which topics to be covered will be selected, includes: Systems of differential equations; dynamical systems; discrete structures; Fourier analysis; methods of optimisation; numerical methods; mathematical models in biology, finance, physics, etc.

## Partial differential equations of mathematical physics 776 (WTW 776)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------

<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Applied Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics of Finance</a>
-------------------	--

<b>Prerequisites</b>	WTW 710 or WTW 735
----------------------	--------------------

<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
---------------------	---------------------

<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
----------------------------	--------------------------------

<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
-------------------	-------------------------------------

<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2
-------------------------------	------------

### Module content

Field-theoretic and material models of mathematical physics. The Friedrichs-Sobolev spaces. Energy methods and Hilbert spaces, weak solutions – existence and uniqueness. Separation of variables, Laplace transform, eigenvalue problems and eigenfunction expansions. The regularity theorems for elliptic forms (without proofs) and their applications. Weak solutions for the heat/diffusion and related equations.

## Dynamical systems 782 (WTW 782)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------

<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
-----------------------	-------

<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Applied Mathematics</a>
-------------------	---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
----------------------	-------------------



---

<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

#### Module content

Introduction to the general theory of dynamical systems and to the theory of dynamical systems represented via systems of ODEs. Quantitative and qualitative analyses of linear systems. Qualitative analysis of nonlinear systems: domain, invariant sets, stability of equilibria, Hartman-Grobman theorem, centre manifold theorem, Lyapunov method. Structural stability and bifurcation. Bifurcation of equilibria. Hopf bifurcation. Applications: population models, chemical reactions, circuits.

### Topology 790 (WTW 790)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	15.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Mathematics</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Real analysis on third-year level
<b>Contact time</b>	2 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

#### Module content

General topology: Concepts such as convergence, compactness, connectedness, separation axioms and continuity are introduced in topological spaces. Their basic properties are treated. Important topologies like the product topology and the quotient topology are discussed.  
Algebraic topology: Homotopy, the fundamental group, covering spaces, homotopy type.

### Project 792 (WTW 792)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	30.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Financial Engineering</a> <a href="#">BScHons Mathematics of Finance</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

#### Module content

Consult Department.





## Project 795 (WTW 795)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Programmes** BScHons Applied Mathematics  
BScHons Mathematics  
BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Algebra and Analysis  
BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Applied Analysis  
BScHons Mathematics and Mathematics Education Differential Equations and Modelling  
BScHons Mathematics of Finance

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Consult Department.

## Convergence spaces 812 (WTW 812)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Topology, Measure Theory and Functional Analysis on honours level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Filters. Convergence of filters, sequences and nets in a topological space. Convergence structures, basic properties and constructs. Continuous convergence,  $c$ -embedded convergence spaces. Order convergence on lattices and posets. Convergence vector spaces and completions. Continuous convergence and duality on locally convex spaces. The Hahn-Banach theorem in convergence spaces.

## Mathematical morphology 820 (WTW 820)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Measure Theory and Functional Analysis on honours level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Mathematical morphology – a theory for the analysis of special structures and a powerful methodology for the extraction of useful information from images. Morphological operators and their properties: erosion, dilation, opening, closing, granulometries. Applications to noise removal, filtering, extraction of features, edge detection, etc. LULU operators - properties and applications. Partial differential equations for morphological operators.

## Mathematical and computational finance 831 (WTW 831)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Financial Engineering on honours level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Stochastic Calculus: Multidimensional Itô formula, correlated Wiener processes, the infinitesimal operator, SDE's, PDE's, the Kolmogorov equations, martingales, stochastic integral representations and Gisanov's theorem. The martingale approach to arbitrage theory. Bonds and interest rates: Martingale models, standard models, the Heath-Jarrow-Morton framework. Monte Carlo methods. Finite difference methods.

## Advanced methods of financial engineering 832 (WTW 832)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Financial Engineering on honours level

**Contact time** 3 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Year



## Module content

\*Consult with the head of the department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Interest rate derivatives. Stochastic volatility models. Models to improve on the flaws in the Black-Scholes model. Principles of deal structuring. Principles of mathematical models. Specialised methods for interest rate and exotic derivatives. Application of numerical methods to relevant practical problems.

## Quantitative risk management 833 (WTW 833)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	0.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Financial Engineering on honours level
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

## Module content

\*Consult with the head of the department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Risk in perspective. Traditional RiskMetrics. Methods to calculate VaR. Designing scenario analyses and stress analysis. Risk measures based on loss distributions. Aggregate risk measures which include coherent risk measures. Extreme value theory. Correlation, copulas and dependence. Credit risk management.

## Homogenisation of partial differential equations 836 (WTW 836)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	0.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Functional Analysis, Measure Theory, Partial Differential Equations at honours level
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

## Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Review of functional analysis, Sobolev spaces and variational problems; rapidly oscillating function; periodic composite materials; homogenisation of elliptic problems; multiple scale method; two-scale convergence and applications.

## Special functions and approximation theory 840 (WTW 840)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
----------------------	--------------



<b>Module credits</b>	0.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Complex Analysis at 3rd-year level; Advanced Calculus and Ordinary Differential equations (ODEs)
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

The Gamma and Beta functions, the hypergeometric function, orthogonal polynomials and their properties, classical orthogonal polynomials such as Chebychev, Hermite, Laguerre, Ultraspherical and Jacobi polynomials, Padé approximation, applications of zeros of orthogonal polynomials to convergence of Padé approximants.

### Stochastic partial differential equations 846 (WTW 846)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	0.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Functional analysis, Measure theory, Partial differential equations at honours level. Knowledge of Probability theory is advised but not required
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

#### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Generalities on probability theory (random variables, conditional expectations); Martingales; stochastic integrals; Markov processes; existence and uniqueness results for ordinary stochastic differential equations; Sobolev spaces, Aubin-Dubinsky-Simon compactness theorem; convergence of probability measures: Prokhorov and Skorokhod theorems; existence and uniqueness of solutions of stochastic parabolic equations in divergence form: The Galerkin scheme; idea of renormalization group theory in turbulent flows modelled by Navier-Stokes equations with random forcing.

### Mathematical epidemiology 850 (WTW 850)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	0.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Dynamical systems, Ordinary differential equations (ODEs)
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

The spread of infections is modelled via dynamical systems defined by sets of differential equations. Compartmental models of the spread of contagious infection (e.g. MSEIR) and models of vector borne diseases are considered. Methods of analysis of the local and global asymptotic stability of the disease free and endemic equilibria and their characterization in terms of the basic reproduction number. Reliable numerical simulations and sensitivity analysis with respect to the parameters of the models.

## Introduction to categories and sheaves 851 (WTW 851)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Algebra at 3rd-year and honours levels

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

The language of categories; limits; additive and abelian categories; abelian sheaves; cohomology of sheaves; homotopy and fundamental groupoid.

## Lattice theory 855 (WTW 855)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Algebra at 3rd-year level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2



## Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

The following topics will be studied: Ordered sets; down-sets of ordered sets; lattices and complete lattices; modular, distributive and Boolean lattices (as algebras and as ordered sets); the representation of lattices by collections of sets; the lattice of congruences of a lattice; complete partially ordered sets and fixed point theorems and maximality principles.

## Finite element analysis 863 (WTW 863)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Finite element method and Functional analysis at honours level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

## Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Finite element interpolation theory. Finite element approximation of elliptic boundary value problems and eigenvalue problems. Finite element approximation of parabolic and hyperbolic initial value problems. Applications in a project.

## Graph theory 865 (WTW 865)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Discrete structures at 3rd-year level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

## Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

The basics (including a variety of topics); matchings; connectivity; planarity; colourings and generalised colourings and hereditary properties of graphs.

## Hyperbolic systems of partial differential equations 866 (WTW 866)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



<b>Module credits</b>	0.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Partial differential equations at 3rd-year and hons level; Advanced calculus and Linear algebra
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Systems of first order partial differential equations and their relationship to wave phenomena. The course will show that the traditional wave equation is over-rated as study material. More detailed contents: Hyperbolicity of first order systems (linear and nonlinear); characteristic curves and surfaces; domains of influence and dependence; well-posedness of initial and boundary value problems; shock phenomena; numerical calculation of solutions; application to the equations of compressible gas dynamics and Maxwell's equations for electromagnetism.

## Differential geometry 869 (WTW 869)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	0.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Linear algebra, Differential and Integral calculus, Partial differential equations at hons level
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Differentiable manifolds; multilinear algebra; exterior differential calculus; integration of differential forms and De Rham cohomology; connections on frame bundles; Riemannian manifolds and submanifolds; second fundamental form; harmonic mappings between Riemannian manifolds.

## Sobolev spaces 880 (WTW 880)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	0.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	Measure theory, Differential equations and Functional analysis on honours level
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's course in a particular year.

Mathematics about the availability of this masters module in a particular year. The module focuses on the Hilbertion Sobolev spaces as well as to their applications to elliptic boundary value problems. Topics to be discussed include: Distributions; Sobolev spaces of positive and negative integer orders; Sobolev spaces of traces; Embeddings of Sobolev spaces; Boundary value problems.

### Abstract analysis 881 (WTW 881)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Measure Theory and Functional Analysis on honours level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Capita selecta from the following: Duality theory. Weak and Weak\* topologies. The Krein- Milman theorem. The Stone-Weierstrass theorem. Fixed point theorems. Banach Algebras and the Gelfand transform. C\*-algebras and their representations. Semigroups of operators. Functional analysis applied to probability theory and stochastics.

### Advanced measure theory 884 (WTW 884)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Measure Theory and Functional Analysis on honours level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 2





## Module content

Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Lebesgue integral in a general measure space: Basic properties, convergence theorems, convergence in measure. Lebesgue spaces: Completeness, approximation by continuous functions. Complex measures: Absolute continuity, Random-Nikodym Theorem, representation of bounded linear functionals on Lebesgue spaces, Riesz Representation Theorem for bounded linear functionals on the space of continuous functions on a locally convergent Hausdorff space where  $X$  is a locally compact Hausdorff space. Applications to probability.

## Mathematics 886 (WTW 886)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

## Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Refer to the Department regarding the module content.

## Dynamical systems 887 (WTW 887)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** Functional Analysis, Partial Differential Equations and Finite Element Method on honours level

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1



## Module content

\*Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Finite dimensional dynamical systems: Autonomous and non-autonomous systems of differential equations, dynamical systems, linear and nonlinear systems, existence and uniqueness of solutions, extension of solutions, maximal solution and maximal interval of existence, phase space and phase portrait. Stability theory for equilibria and periodic orbits using linear approximation, Liapunov's method and other energy methods and discrete dynamical systems (Poincarè map). Introduction to strange attractors. Application to mechanics and population models. Infinite dimensional dynamical systems: Semigroups, first and second order abstract differential equations, Sobolev spaces, finite dimensional approximation. Application to heat conduction and mechanical vibration. Examples of nonlinear systems.

## Special topics in mathematics 888 (WTW 888)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Content will vary from time to time depending on the availability of expertise in the Department.

## Mathematics 889 (WTW 889)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 0.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 lecture per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Consult with the Head of the Department of Mathematics and Applied Mathematics about the availability of this master's module in a particular year.

Refer to the Department regarding the module content.

## Dissertation: Mathematics of finance 892 (WTW 892)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



---

<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Mathematics of Finance</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### **Dissertation: Mathematics education 893 (WTW 893)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Mathematics Education</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### **Dissertation: Financial engineering 894 (WTW 894)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	180.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">MSc Financial Engineering</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### **Doctoral Oral 990 (WTW 990)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Mathematics and Applied Mathematics
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Year

### **Thesis: Mathematics Education 993 (WTW 993)**

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	360.00



**Programmes** PhD Science and Mathematics Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Mathematics and Applied Mathematics

**Period of presentation** Year

### Animal diversity 161 (ZEN 161)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 8.00

#### Programmes

BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biological Sciences  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Chemistry  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Extended programme - Biological and Agricultural Sciences  
BSc Food Science  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology  
BScAgric Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management  
BScAgric Animal Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology  
BVSc

**Service modules** Faculty of Education  
Faculty of Veterinary Science

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 lectures per week, fortnightly practicals

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2



## Module content

Animal classification, phylogeny organisation and terminology. Evolution of the various animal phyla, morphological characteristics and life cycles of parasitic and non-parasitic animals. Structure and function of reproductive, respiratory, excretory, circulatory and digestive systems in various animal phyla. In-class discussion will address the sustainable development goals #3, 12, 13, 14 and 15 (Good Health and Well-being, Responsible Consumption and Production, Climate Action, Life Below Water, Life on Land).

## Invertebrate biology 251 (ZEN 251)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00

### Programmes

BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** ZEN 161 GS.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1

## Module content

Origin and extent of modern invertebrate diversity; parasites of man and domestic animals; biology and medical importance of arachnids and insects; insect life styles; the influence of the environment on insect life histories; insect herbivory; predation and parasitism; insect chemical, visual, and auditory communication. Examples used in the module are relevant to the sustainable development goals of Life on Land and Good Health and Well-being.

## African vertebrates 261 (ZEN 261)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 12.00



BEd Senior Phase and Further Education and Training Teaching  
BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Biotechnology  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Human Physiology  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology

**Programmes**

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** ZEN 161 GS.

**Contact time** 1 practical per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

**Module content**

Introduction to general vertebrate diversity; African vertebrate diversity; vertebrate structure and function; vertebrate evolution; vertebrate relationships; aquatic vertebrates; terrestrial ectotherms; terrestrial endotherms; vertebrate characteristics; classification; structural adaptations; habits; habitats; conservation problems; impact of humans on other vertebrates. The module addresses the sustainable development goals of Life below Water and Life on Land.

**Population ecology 351 (ZEN 351)**

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes**  
BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Zoology

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1



## Module content

Scientific approach to ecology; evolution and ecology; the individual and its environment; population characteristics and demography; competition; predation; plant-herbivore interactions; regulation of populations; population manipulation, human population. Examples throughout the module are relevant to the sustainable development goals of Life on Land and Good Health and Well-being.

## Mammalogy 352 (ZEN 352)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Biochemistry](#)  
[BSc Genetics](#)  
[BSc Zoology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 1

## Module content

Mammalian origins and their characteristics: evolution of African mammals; structure and function: integument, support and movement; foods and feeding; environmental adaptations; reproduction; behaviour; ecology and biogeography; social behaviour; sexual selection; parental care and mating systems; community ecology; zoogeography. Special topics: parasites and diseases; domestication and domesticated mammals; conservation. The module addresses the sustainable development goals of Life on Land and Good Health and Well-being.

## Community ecology 353 (ZEN 353)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Ecology](#)  
[BSc Entomology](#)  
[BSc Environmental Sciences](#)  
[BSc Zoology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** ZEN 351 GS OR BOT 358 GS.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 4



## Module content

The scientific approach; characteristics of the community; the community as a superorganism; community changes; competition as a factor determining community structure; disturbance as a determinant of community structure; community stability; macroecological environmental gradients and communities. A field trip will be conducted during the September vacation to the Sani Pass region of the Maloti- Drakensberg Mountains. The module addresses the sustainable development goals Good Health and Well-being, Sustainable Cities and Communities, Climate Action and Life on Land.

## Evolutionary physiology 354 (ZEN 354)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Zoology

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 2

## Module content

This module focuses on the integration of physiological systems in the context of animal form and function, and the ways in which evolution shapes the physiological processes that determine the energy, water and nutrient fluxes between animals and their environments. Topics covered include: (i) circulation, gas exchange and excretion; (ii) nutritional ecology; (iii) osmoregulation and thermoregulation; and (iv) reproductive physiology. The major focus of this module is to understand the major sources of physiological diversity, namely scaling, phylogenetic inertia, adaptation and phenotypic plasticity, and applying this knowledge to conceptually link physiological processes at the cellular level to macrophysiological patterns at a global scale. Many examples used in this module are directly relevant to the sustainable development goals of Good Health and Well-being, Sustainable Cities and Communities, Climate Action and Life on Land.

## Insect diversity 355 (ZEN 355)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Entomology  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science

**Service modules** Faculty of Education





---

<b>Prerequisites</b>	ZEN 251 GS.
<b>Contact time</b>	2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Quarter 1

### Module content

The extent and significance of insect diversity. Functional insect morphology. The basic principles of taxonomy and the classification of taxa within the Insecta. Insect orders and economically and ecologically important Southern African insect families. Identification of insect orders and families using distinguishing characteristics. General biological and behavioural characteristics of each group. Grouping of insects into similar life-styles and habitats. Examples used in this module are directly relevant to the sustainable development goals of Good Health and Well-being, Sustainable Cities and Communities, Climate Action and Life on Land.

## Physiological processes 361 (ZEN 361)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** [BSc Biochemistry](#)  
[BSc Ecology](#)  
[BSc Entomology](#)  
[BSc Genetics](#)  
[BSc Zoology](#)

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

### Module content

This module focuses on the means by which animals can sense and respond to the external and internal environment. Topics covered include: (i) the structure and function of biological membranes; (ii) neurons and nervous systems; (iii) sensing the environment; (iv) glands, hormones and regulation of development and growth; (v) muscles and animal movement and (vi) the initiation and control of behaviour. In line with UN sustainable development goals, the implications of these physiological processes for animal conservation and management will be emphasised. A comparative approach will be adopted throughout the module to highlight the commonalities as well as the ways in which animal lineages have achieved similar functional outcomes from different structural adaptations.

## Evolution and phylogeny 362 (ZEN 362)

**Qualification** Undergraduate



**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Zoology

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 3

### Module content

This module focuses on micro and macro-evolutionary processes and patterns, from the population level (selection, drift, general population genetics) to clines, subspecies and species. Phylogeography, phylogenetic reconstruction, taxonomy and the genetic and developmental constraints operating at the different levels, are addressed. This module forms the basis for understanding and attaining sustainable development goals 14 and 15 (protection/conservation of aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems), and acknowledges the importance of biodiversity for the sustainability of our own species.

## Behavioural ecology 363 (ZEN 363)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Biochemistry  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Zoology

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 4

### Module content

The history of behavioural ecology. A causal, developmental, evolutionary and adaptive approach. Sensory systems and communication. Sexual selection, mate choice and sperm competition. Kin selection and group living. Special reference to social insects. The behavioural ecology of humans. Phylogenetic basis of behavioural analysis. The role of behavioural ecology in conservation planning. The module covers sustainable development goals 1-10 and 12-15.



## Conservation ecology 364 (ZEN 364)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Ecology  
BSc Entomology  
BSc Environmental Sciences  
BSc Plant Science  
BSc Zoology

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 2

### Module content

This module is intended to provide students with the skills and knowledge that are essential for the conservation of biodiversity. The module focuses on conservation theory and practice (e.g. endangered species, habitat loss, overexploitation, climate change), and has a practical component. In addition, students will generate a multi-media project designed to inform the general public about a key conservation issue. Over the course of the module, students will be exposed to a number of issues that link directly to sustainable development goals Clean Water and Sanitation, Affordable and Clean Energy, Sustainable Cities and Communities, Responsible Consumption and Production, Climate Action, Life Below Water & Life on Land, and gain valuable theoretical and practical experience in the field of conservation biology.

## Applied entomology 365 (ZEN 365)

**Qualification** Undergraduate

**Module credits** 18.00

**Programmes** BSc Entomology  
BSc Genetics  
BSc Microbiology  
BSc Plant Science  
BScAgric Applied Plant and Soil Sciences  
BScAgric Plant Pathology

**Service modules** Faculty of Education

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 2 practicals per week, 4 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Quarter 4



## Module content

Impact of insects on economies, human health and well-being. Protection of crops from insect herbivores through monitoring, forecasting and application of the principles of integrated pest management; epidemiology and modern developments in the control of insect vectors of human and animal diseases; insects as a tool in forensic investigations; ecological and economic significance of insect pollinators and current threats to their survival and health. Lectures will be complemented by practical experiences that provide students with skills in the design, analysis, interpretation and reporting of applied entomological research. Examples used in this module are directly relevant to the sustainable development goals of Life on Land, No Poverty, Zero Hunger and Good Health and Well-being.

## Research project 701 (ZEN 701)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 68.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Entomology](#)  
[BScHons Zoology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Research project

## Systematics, evolution and biogeography 703 (ZEN 703)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 13.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Entomology](#)  
[BScHons Zoology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 20 lectures per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The object of this module is to introduce students to several contemporary problem areas in systematics, evolutionary theory and biogeography, and to use this as a basis for exploring current approaches and methods in systematics.

## Environmental physiology 704 (ZEN 704)

**Qualification** Postgraduate



---

<b>Module credits</b>	13.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Entomology</a> <a href="#">BScHons Zoology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

Photoperiodism and chronobiology – the ability of animals to measure daylength, the concept of circadian rhythm and the nature of the clock which drives such processes. Water availability and temperature – physiological responses of animals to changing water availability and temperature in the context of global climate change. Regulation of reproduction – physiological mechanisms which couple reproduction to external and internal environmental factors.

## Principles in applied ecology 705 (ZEN 705)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	13.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Entomology</a> <a href="#">BScHons Zoology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1

### Module content

The module focuses on forces that drive population and community patterns and processes across temporal and spatial scales. Attention is given to the scientific application of ecological and macro-ecological principles that relate to short- and long-term population and community responses to environmental change. Group discussions based on current literature provide opportunities to apply theoretical principles to problem solving.

## Integrated pest management in Africa 707 (ZEN 707)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	13.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Entomology</a> <a href="#">BScHons Zoology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.



**Contact time** 1 discussion class per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

Pest outbreaks and the practice of integrated pest management using different control methods; philosophy of IPM; socio-economic implications; politics and legislation; pest models; decision tools and techniques.

## Mammal ecology 710 (ZEN 710)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 13.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Entomology](#)  
[BScHons Zoology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Contemporary issues in mammal ecology; the focus will be on current understanding at individual, population, community and ecosystem levels.

## Behavioural ecology 712 (ZEN 712)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 13.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Entomology](#)  
[BScHons Zoology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

The use of ecological and evolutionary processes to explain the occurrence and adaptive significance of behaviour patterns. Empirical, comparative analyses relating behaviour to environment will be addressed, including the use of behavioural processes to predict ecological patterns.



## Research methods and scientific communication 713 (ZEN 713)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	13.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Entomology</a> <a href="#">BScHons Zoology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 1 or Semester 2

### Module content

Basic skills in philosophy of science; research planning; scientific writing; scientific public speaking; an essay, two oral presentations, prescribed reading and an oral exam.

## Insect-plant interactions 782 (ZEN 782)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	13.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Entomology</a> <a href="#">BScHons Zoology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	4 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English
<b>Department</b>	Zoology and Entomology
<b>Period of presentation</b>	Semester 2

### Module content

An overview of the complex world of insect-plant interactions. Insects and plants have co-occurred and co-evolved on this planet for at least 400 million years, and in many systems insects are the primary consumers of plant tissue. The diverse strategies and counter-strategies that have evolved at the interface between herbivory and plant defences will be examined, using case studies and applying unifying theory wherever possible.

## Global climate change and biodiversity 783 (ZEN 783)

<b>Qualification</b>	Postgraduate
<b>Module credits</b>	13.00
<b>Programmes</b>	<a href="#">BScHons Entomology</a> <a href="#">BScHons Zoology</a>
<b>Prerequisites</b>	No prerequisites.
<b>Contact time</b>	1 lecture per week, 3 discussion classes per week
<b>Language of tuition</b>	Module is presented in English



**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 1

### Module content

The module aims to provide students with an understanding of global climate change and its impact on the conservation of biodiversity.

## Contemporary research techniques 784 (ZEN 784)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 13.00

**Programmes** [BScHons Entomology](#)  
[BScHons Zoology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Semester 2

### Module content

Stable isotope ecology – applications of stable isotope-based techniques in zoological research, including (i) tracking animal movements, (ii) dietary reconstruction, (iii) delineation of trophic levels, (iv) tracing nutrient allocation to reproduction, (v) forensic applications, and (vi) doubly-labelled water and water tracer applications. Stress hormones – the spectrum of stress molecules, how they are regulated, what their impacts are, and how they are measured to reflect acute and chronic stress. Photogrammetry – (i) appropriate equipment for photogrammetry, (ii) photographic techniques for photogrammetric use, (iii) photogrammetry software, (iv) building three-dimensional models, (v) measuring models. Applications of molecular biology to conservation genetics, infectious disease epidemiology and ecology, forensics (host and pathogen-based) and diagnostics.

## Conservation planning and monitoring 808 (ZEN 808)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year





## Module content

Biodiversity survey techniques; data and information management; data assessment; principles of data extrapolation; inventories; biodiversity risk assessment (PHVA, small and declining population paradigms, prioritisation); principles of reserve selection; surrogacy; reserve design; integrated land-use planning. Landscape theories and models (hierarchy, percolation, metapopulation, source-sink); scaling patterns and processes across landscapes (patches, corridors, mosaics and flows); emerging patterns and processes; principles of landscape dynamics; principles of landscape conservation, management and design (transformation, fragmentation); methods in landscape ecology (numerical and spatial data processing, fractal geometry approach, GIS, remote sensing, GPS, spatially explicit population models). Skills: GradSect, Access, Excel, Visual Basic, GIS (Arc View) reserve selection algorithms.

## Biogeography and macro-ecology 809 (ZEN 809)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 15.00

**Programmes** [MA Environment and Society \(Coursework\)](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Biogeographic consequences of plate tectonics, Pleistocene southern African climatic, geological, edaphic and geomorphological patterns. Reconstructing biogeographic histories (speciation, extinction, dispersal, vicariance, endemism, provincialism and disjunction); phytogeographical patterns, biomes, vegetation types. Methodological issues in macro-ecology; patterns of body size, abundance and energetics; geographic range sizes; species dynamics in landscapes; implications of macro-ecological patterns to ecology; biogeography and evolution; macro-ecological perspectives on conservation: species richness, hierarchical diversity, hotspots, spatial and temporal patterns in diversity (genetic, taxonomic, functional); causal mechanisms, species diversity, biodiversity and global change.

## Conservation and development 811 (ZEN 811)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year



### Module content

An international perspective on human resource utilisation and its global effects. The problems of implementing conservation measures in the face of human development. Conservation as an economic process.

## Populations and communities: Spatial and temporal variability 872 (ZEN 872)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 4 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Demography with emphasis on forces affecting population growth rate and regulation; competition and facilitation within and between populations; risk and risk assessment; temporal trends and extinction; management, harvesting and control with emphasis on illustrating principles using studies conducted in Africa. Structure, composition and function of communities with emphasis on factors affecting resilience, resistance and persistence; temporal variability with emphasis on the influences of foodwebs structure and environmental variability; spatial pattern analysis; species-abundance relations; species affinities; community classification.

## Conservation in practice 875 (ZEN 875)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 30.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Contact time** 1 other contact session per week, 4 discussion classes per week

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Conceptual issues in the management of small populations; captive propagation; control of invasive species; control of problem populations; restoration of species and communities; conservation education, and involvement of local communities in conservation programmes; monitoring techniques and data handling; design and interpretation of laboratory and field experiments to solve ecological and conservation problems.

## Research Project 891 (ZEN 891)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 120.00

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.



**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Module content

Research projects may be based either on fieldwork, laboratory work, experiments or the analysis of existing data sets. This decision must be taken in consultation with the candidate's designated project supervisor. The choice of project topic will be determined to a very large extent by the time available for data collection and analysis.

Students should select and approach a potential supervisor based on their own interests and that of the supervisors. A list of projects may be made available, although the students may choose their own project as long as a supervisor agrees to it. Joint supervision of projects by more than one person at the University, or one person from outside the University, is also possible.

The purpose of the research project is to provide students with a thorough grounding in the planning, execution, analysis and scientific writing stages of a research project. Students must complete the background reading, design the objectives and perform the observations and/or experiments pertaining to the chosen project, as well as the analysis and compilation of the results and discussion in the form of a scientific publication. The project should be formatted for submission to a scientific journal.

### Dissertation: Zoology 890 (ZOO 890)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 180.00

**Programmes** [MSc Zoology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

### Thesis: Zoology 990 (ZOO 990)

**Qualification** Postgraduate

**Module credits** 360.00

**Programmes** [PhD Zoology](#)

**Prerequisites** No prerequisites.

**Language of tuition** Module is presented in English

**Department** Zoology and Entomology

**Period of presentation** Year

The information published here is subject to change and may be amended after the publication of this information. The [General Regulations \(G Regulations\)](#) apply to all faculties of the University of Pretoria. It is expected of students to



familiarise themselves well with these regulations as well as with the information contained in the [General Rules](#) section. Ignorance concerning these regulations and rules will not be accepted as an excuse for any transgression.